This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Digitized by Google

27414

XF 596

W. A. Raleigh.

XF 596

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD
ENGLISH FACULTY LIBRARY

This book is confined to the Library

ENGLISH FACULTY LIBRARY OXFORD UNIV.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE *BRITISH* HISTORY,

Translated into *ENGLISH* From the *LATIN* of

Jeffrey of *Monmouth.*

With a large Preface concerning the Authority of the History.

By AARON THOMPSON, *late of* Queen's College, Oxon.

Datur hæc venia antiquitati, ut miscendo humana divinis, primordia urbium augustiora faciat. Liv.

LONDON:

Printed for *J. Bowyer* at the *Rose* in *Ludgate-Street*, *H. Clements* at the *Half-Moon*, and *W.* and *J. Innys* at the *Princes-Arms* in St. *Paul's Church-Yard.* MDCCXVIII.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE PREFACE.

THE moſt ancient Hiſtorians, thoſe eſpecially that treat of the Original of any Nation, will always preſerve their juſt Value among the Curious, however ſimple and void of Ornament their Relations of Matters may be. And though modern Writers may deliver the ſame Accounts, with greater Accuracy of Judgment, and ſuch Politeneſs of Stile, as is more agreeable to the Taſte of their own Times; yet in all Matters of Teſtimony, the Original and moſt ancient Hiſtorians will conſtantly be eſteemed and referred to as moſt authentick. The moſt ancient Writer now extant of the Affairs of this Nation is undoubtedly *Cæſar*, who wanted no Qualifications that form a perfect Hiſtorian, and eſpecially with Reſpect

Digitized by Google

of the Majesty, Politeness and Simplicity of his Stile, is not inferiour to any Author whatsoever, whether ancient or modern. But as he only relates one particular Transaction in the Course of our Affairs, *viz.* His attempt to reduce this Island under the *Roman* Power, and says nothing of any Occurrences here before his own Time, nor of the Original of our People, unless from such uncertain Reports and Conjectures as are not to be depended on, we must look elsewhere for Satisfaction in these Particulars, which indeed most of all excite our Curiosity.

II. The ancientest Book now extant, that pretends to give any regular and continued Account of these Matters, is the History before us; which though writ at a Time when polite Learning did but very little flourish, is notwithstanding entertaining enough, both for the Manner of relating Things, and the Importance of the Matters treated of. And yet for Reasons which I shall hereafter consider, very few *English* Historians of the last Century, which are now most esteemed and read, have given any Account of the Matters related in it. It is true that from the Time this Book was first published, which is near six hundred Years ago, till about the Beginning of the last Century, all or most of our Writers, not excepting *Polydore Virgil* himself a great Adversary to this History, who have

Digitized by Google

have undertaken to trace our Affairs from the first peopling of this Island, have interwoven the Subject of this Book with what Collections they could make from other Authors, in Order to compleat their Histories. But these by Reason of their obsolete Stile, or too great Voluminousness, are now but little looked into by the Generality of Readers. And as for the last Century, no *English* Historian of any Note, (the *Welsh* I do not here consider,) has condescended to give any Account of these Affairs, especially of what happened before *Cæsar*'s Coming, excepting *Milton*, *Tyrrel*, and Sir *Bulstrode Whitlock*; and they too so very short, and with such Reflections upon the History itself, as rather serves to raise than satisfy ones Curiosity of knowing what it contains. But the Book is now grown so very scarce, that many who have a Desire to read it, cannot; besides that the Stile of the *Latin* Translation of it by *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*, which is the only one yet published, is barbarous and in many Places obscure. So that excepting our Antiquaries, very few have any Knowledge; of this Book which yet for the most Part is a pleasant, and in many Places a true History of a very brave People, for about two thousand Years together, that is, during the whole Time they were able to maintain their Authority and Government in this Kingdom;

Digitized by Google

and ſo far it is properly a Part of the general Hiſtory of *England*.

III. Upon theſe Conſiderations was the following Tranſlation of it made ſome Years ago, to gratify ſome particular Friends at whoſe Requeſt I firſt undertook it. In the compoſing of which I made uſe of two Editions of *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*'s *Latin* Tranſlation; one of which was publiſhed in *Quarto* by *Aſcenſius* at *Paris*, *A. D.* 1517, and abounds with Abbreviations of Words which ſometimes render their Reading ambiguous; the other in *Folio* by (*a*) *Commeline* at *Heidelberg*, *A. D.* 1587, which is much the fairer and correcter Edition, and to which is annexed the Abridgment of the firſt ſix Books of this Hiſtory by *Ponticus Virunnius*, together with *Gildas*, *Bede*, and ſome other of our ancient Hiſtorians. Theſe two, which were printed from different Manuſcripts, and are the only Editions that I can find have yet been made, I compared together, that I might better judge of the Errors of each, eſpecially in the Orthography of Perſons and Places. And in this Point I found a great Diverſity both between the two Editions, and alſo the ſeveral ancient Abridgers of this Hiſtory, *viz.* *Alfred* of *Beverley*, *Radulphus de Diceto*, *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*, *Higden*, *Ponticus Virunnius*, and others; but have

(*a*) See *Rerum Britannicarum Scriptores vetuſtiores & præcipui.*

Digitized by Google

have for the moſt Part followed *Commelines* Edition, and ſuppreſſed the Variations I at firſt noted between them, as thinking them not material. The firſt Edition divides the whole Hiſtory into ſeven Books, the other into twelve, though perhaps neither of them truly according to the Original Copy, if (*b*) *Leland*, (*c*) *Pitts* and (*d*) *Voſſius* inform us right. However judging this Nicety of no great Conſequence, ſo long as the Hiſtory is entire, I have followed *Commelines* Edition in the Diviſion both of the Books and Chapters; and that eſpecially becauſe I found it warranted by ſeveral ancient Manuſcripts I have ſeen of this Hiſtory in the *Cottonian* and other Libraries, and alſo by the Abridgment of *Ponticus Virunnius*. Whereas the former Edition was (as *Commeline* obſerves) mangled and changed at the Editors Pleaſure.

IV. *Merlins* Propheſy, for the Nonſenſe and unintelligible Jargon it contains, ſhould have been omitted, but that *Jeffrey* has ſo connected it with the Hiſtory, that the Thred of the Story would not be entire without it. This Propheſy had ſometimes a conſiderable Influence upon the Counſels of the ancient *Britains*; and we are told, (*e*) the final Subjection of the Principality of *Wales* to the Crown of *England* was partly

(*b*) *Comment. de Script. Britan.* (*c*) *De illuſtr. Angl. Scriptor.* (*d*) *De Hiſt. Lat.* L. II. *Cap.* 52. (*e*) *Daniels* Hiſtory of *England*.

Digitized by Google

owing to it; since *Lewellin* the last Prince of *Wales* was, by the Conceit of a Passage in it, *viz.* that he should be Crowned with the Diadem of *Brutus*, encouraged to carry on a War against King *Edward* the first to his own Destruction. The *Latin* Translation of it by *Jeffrey* was published not only with this History, but also that of *Matthew* of *Westminster*. *Alanus de Insulis*, who was in his Time a very famous *German* Divine, dignified by the Schoolmen with the Title of *Doctor universalis*, published it also with a learned Commentary; (*f*) and indeed has given as much Light to it as so dark a Subject seems capable of. His Explication was at least of some Use to me in the Translating of it, since it served to Correct some Errors in the other Editions.

V. I am not unsensible that I expose my self to the Censures of some Persons, by publishing this Translation of a Book, which they think had better been suppressed and buried in Oblivion, as being at present generally exploded for a groundless and fabulous Story, such as our modern Historians think not worthy relating, or at least mention with Contempt. And though it is true, several Men, and those of Learning too, censure this Book who have but little considered it, and whose Studies no ways qualify

(*f*) In *Octavo* at *Frankfort*. A. D. 1603.

Digitized by Google

qualify them to judge of it; yet I own this Conſideration has for a long Time deterred me from publiſhing it; and I ſhould not at laſt have been able to ſurmount this Difficulty, without the Importunity and Encouragement of others, to whom I owe a ſingular Regard. I had indeed *before* I entred upon the Work peruſed the principal Writers both for and againſt this Hiſtory, the Effect of which upon my own Judgment, as to the Swaying it to the one Side more than the other, was but very ſmall; and I muſt confeſs, that I find the moſt learned Antiquaries the moſt modeſt in their Opinions concerning it, and that it ſeems to me to be a Piece of great *Raſhneſs*, to judge peremptorily upon a Matter, whereof at this great Diſtance of Time there are no competent Witneſſes on either Side. At leaſt I cannot but think it a ſufficient Apology for my publiſhing this Book, to conſider only, That though it ſeems to ſuffer under a general Prejudice at preſent, yet it has not long done ſo; but that upon its firſt appearing in the World, it met with an univerſal Approbation, and that too from thoſe who had better Opportunities of examining the Truth of it, as there were then more Monuments extant, and the Traditions more freſh and uncorrupted concerning the ancient *Britiſh* Affairs, than any Criticks of the preſent Age can

Digitized by Google

pretend to; That it had no Adverſary before *William* of *Newburgh* about the End of the Reign of *Richard* the Firſt, whoſe virulent Invective againſt it, we are told, proceeded from a Revenge he thought he owed the *Welſh* for an Affront they had given him; That his Oppoſition was far from ſhaking the Credit of it with our ſucceeding Hiſtorians, who have moſt of them, till the Beginning of the laſt Century, confirmed it with their Teſtimonies, and copyed after it, as often as they had Occaſion to treat of the ſame Affairs; That its Authority was alledged by King *Edward* the Firſt and all the Nobility of the Kingdom, in a Controverſy of the greateſt Importance, before *Boniface* the Eighth; That even in this Learned Age, that is ſo induſtrious to detect any Impoſtures, which through the Credulity of former Times had paſſed upon the World, the Arguments againſt this Hiſtory are not thought ſo convincing, but that ſeveral Men of equal Reputation for Learning and Judgment with its Adverſaries, have written in Favour of it; That very few have at laſt ſpoken deciſſively againſt it, or abſolutely condemned it; And that it is ſtill moſt frequently quoted by our moſt Learned Hiſtorians and Antiquaries. All theſe Conſiderations, I ſay, if they do not amount to an Apology for the Hiſtory itſelf, ſhew at leaſt that it deſerves to be better known than

Digitized by Google

than at preſent it is; which is ſufficient to juſtify my undertaking the publiſhing of it.

VI. I will venture to ſay farther, that we ſee in this Hiſtory the Traces of venerable Antiquity, obſcured indeed and perplexed with a Mixture of Fable, as are all the profane *Hiſtories* of thoſe ancient Times. But where we want ſufficient Light to Diſtinguiſh Truth from Fiction, the Reverence due to one ſhould make us bear with the other, and it can be no warrantable Zeal that would deſtroy both together. We ſee here what our Anceſtors eſteemed a great Glory to this Nation, that it can recount the Series of its Affairs from ſo high an *Epocha*; that it can boaſt ſuch a long and uninterrupted Succeſſion of Glorious Kings; that it produced Hero's in thoſe early Times of Antiquity, whoſe great Actions intitle them to the higheſt Place in the Liſt of Fame; and that it can derive its Original from a People as noble and famous as any in ancient Story. But ſome of our modern Criticks would allow it no ſhare of this Glory; but endeavour to vilify and extinguiſh its moſt ancient Traditions and Records; make a blank Table in Chronology of all that paſſed here in that vaſt Tract of Time before the coming of *Cæſar*; and inſtead of that Heroick Beginning which this Hiſtory aſcribes to the *Britiſh* Nation, are better contented

Digitized by Google

contented to have their own Conjectures pass concerning it; which yet are as opposite to one another, as they are destitute of any solid Foundation in ancient History. So that they leave their Readers in Perplexity or an absolute Uncertainty about this Matter.

VII. For as to this particular Point concerning the Origin of the *British* Nation, which is the Thing in this History that is now most of all controverted, it is most certain that whatever Account has been given of it, different from what this History relates, has no other Grounds at best than probable Conjecture; and that will never weigh in the Balance against an Historical Account of it, where there is a greater Probability to support that History. And could we but, as *Camden* (*g*) himself also observes, be once satisfied that the History of *Brutus* were true, there would be no Occasion for any laborious Search into Antiquity after the Original of the *British* Nation. Now whatever new Light the present Age may boast of, it must be owned our Historians for several Ages together, before the Beginning of the last Century, thought themselves eased of the Trouble of this Enquiry, by acquiescing in, and as much as they were able corroborating this Account.

(*g*) *Britannia* published by *Gibson*. p. VI.

Digitized by Google

count. Even *William* of *Newburgh*, the first and greatest Adversary of this History, makes no Objection on this Score. *Giraldus Cambrensis*, who was very learned in the *British* Antiquities, though upon other Accounts he calls this the fabulous History of *Jeffrey*, yet every where allows the Story of *Brutus*, and the Descent of the *Britains* from the *Trojans*. It was not opposed by any Body in *England* before (*b*). *John* of *Wethamstede*, an obscure Writer of the fifteenth Century; and as for any Reflections foreign Writers formerly made upon it, it cannot be supposed their Knowledge of our Affairs should be equal to that of our own Antiquaries; and perhaps too some little Emulation with Respect to National Glory was the true Ground of their Censures. For indeed the famous *Polydore Virgils* contempt of it has been (*i*) shewn to proceed from his Vanity in extolling his Countrymen the *Romans*, whom he would by no means allow the *Britains* to rival either in Valour or Nobility of Descent. And as for *Buchanans* Objections, they only shew his Ignorance of the Story he undertakes to confute; though where it makes for the Glory of his own Nation, he can allow some Truth in some other Parts

(*b*) *Nicolsons English* Hist. Library. 2d. Edition Part. I. ch. 5. (*i*) *Prisci Defensio Hist. Britan.*

Digitized by Google

Parts of this Hiſtory, which are notwithſtanding by others equally doubted of.

VIII. Now we cannot reaſonably object either Ignorance or Credulity to our own Hiſtorians and Antiquaries, of thoſe Times, that aſſert this Story. Every one muſt readily acknowledge the great Induſtry, Learning and Judgment of *Leland*, as well as the ſingular Opportunities he had by the Encouragement of his Patron King *Henry* the Eighth, towards ſetting this and all other Parts of our Hiſtory and Antiquities in a clear Light: Not to mention *Humfrey Lhwyd*, Sir *John Price*, Dr. *Caius*, Dr. *Powel*, and many other grave and learned Men, all ſtrenuous Aſſertors of this Story. Since then its Credit had been for ſo many Ages and ſo well eſtabliſhed, how comes it that our modern Antiquaries tire themſelves in the Labyrinth of Antiquity, with tracing out the Original of the *Britains*, when they have here a copious, regular, Hiſtorical, and not a broken and conjectural Account of it? How comes it that a Story which in former Ages met with ſo general an Approbation, is now ſo much condemned and exploded?

IX. This Revolution in Opinion, one would expect, ſhould be owing, not to a bare Suſpicion of the Story, but ſuch an evident Detection of its Falſity as is inconteſtable. And yet among the many modern Writers that expreſs their Contempt of it, one

Digitized by Google

one ſhall find but little ſaid by them by Way of Argument to diſprove it: And I have Reaſon to believe, not a few have run it down without Examination, as thinking themſelves ſecure in following the Opinion that is moſt in Vogue. The moſt ſpecious Reaſons againſt it, that I can meet with, are offered by (*k*) *Camden*, and that with a Candour becoming ſo great a Man. For he declares for his own Part, that he is ſo far from labouring to diſcredit this Hiſtory, that he aſſures us he has often ſtrained his Invention to the utmoſt to ſupport it; and that abſolutely to reject it would be to make War againſt Time, and to fight againſt a received Opinion. And therefore the Arguments he propoſes are not his own, but ſuch as, *he* ſays, other Learned and Judicious Men attacked him with, to invalidate this Relation, when he offered to defend it. And at laſt he even Apologizes, for having laid before Us the Obſervations and Opinions of other Men towards impairing its Credit. Men of *Camden* or (*l*) *Seldens* Pitch of Learning, muſt be contented to deliver their Sentiments humbly and modeſtly concerning it; and it is only for the profounder Judgment of a *Dutch* (*m*) Antiquary to pronounce it peremptorily,

(*k*) *Britan.* P. VI. (*l*) Notes on *Draytons Polyolbion.* (*m*) *Sebriverij Amiqu. Batavie* cited by *Sheringham de Anglorum Orig.* Cap. I.

Digitized by Google

peremptorily, a *great, heavy, long, thick, palpable, and moſt impudent Lie, and that ſo manifeſt as to need no Proof*; or for a great Statesman (*n*) to ſay, *That it is a Tale forged at pleaſure, by the Wit or Folly of its firſt Author, and not to be regarded.*

X. At the ſame Time it muſt be owned, that as *Camden* has not given any Anſwers himſelf to the Objections he mentions againſt this Hiſtory, but rather thought them of that Force, as to be Ground enough for him to propoſe a new (*o*) Conjecture of his own, concerning the Original of the *Britiſh* Nation, which indeed he has ſupported with great Learning, we are not to reckon him in the Number of its Advocates. On the contrary, it is more probable, that his ſpeaking of it with ſuch Indifference, has by Reaſon of the Deference paid to his great Learning and Judgment in theſe Affairs, been the chief Reaſon of its loſing its former Credit, and of the preſent general Prejudice againſt it. And as this Hiſtory was the great Obſtruction in his Way, to the promoting his own Conjecture, we need not much doubt, but that, notwithſtanding his Modeſty, the Arguments againſt it were ſuch as he approved of, and that he has preſented in all its ſtrength the Sum of what can be ſaid to invalidate

(*n*) *Temple's* Introduction to the Hiſtory of *England*. (*o*) *Britan* p. X, &c.

Digitized by Google

invalidate this History. Now the Regard that is due to Truth and the Veneration paid to ancient History, may I hope serve for my Apology, if I take upon me to offer some Observations upon the principal Objections against this Story, especially those made Use of by this Learned and Judicious Antiquary. My Design in which is not to thwart the general Opinion of this Age concerning it, but only, for the Sake of Truth, candidly and impartially to represent the Substance of what may be said as well for it as against it. The Sum of what is said to invalidate this Account concerning the Original of the *Britains*, is that this Book wherein it is delivered, is as to the main of it very fabulous; and that there is Reason to believe, the whole to be nothing else but the Forgery of *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*, the pretended Translator of it. And the regular Method of proceeding in this Dissertation is, First, To examine upon what Grounds *Jeffrey* is charged with Forgery or Imposture in this Matter; And Secondly, admitting his Innocence, that is, admitting there was a History extant before his Time, giving a regular Account of the Succession of the *British* Kings from *Brutus* to *Cadwallader*, to examine whether that History is altogether so fabulous, as it is now commonly esteemed.

XI. Before

Digitized by Google

XI. Before I proceed to consider the Objections against *Jeffrey*'s Integrity, it will be requisite for the Readers Information, to relate what he himself and his Advocates say concerning the Publication of this History, which has, in this last Age especially, occasioned so much Controversy among Learned Men. Now the Story as collected from himself, *Leland*, *Bale*, and *Pitts* is, That *Walter Mapæus*, *alias Calenius*, Archdeacon of *Oxford*, who flourished in the Reign of *Henry* I. and of whom *Henry* of *Huntington* and other Historians as well as *Jeffrey* himself make honourable mention, being a Man very curious in the Study of Antiquity, and a diligent Searcher into ancient Libraries, and especially after the Works of ancient Authors, happened while he was in *Armorica* to light upon a History of *Britain*, writ in the *British* Tongue, and carrying Marks of great Antiquity. And being overjoy'd at it, as if he had found a vast Treasure, he in a short Time after came over to *England*; where enquiring for a proper Person to translate this curious but hitherto unknown Book, he very opportunely met with *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*, a Man profoundly versed in the History and Antiquities of *Britain*, excellently skilled in the *British* Tongue, and withal (considering the Time) an elegant Writer both in Verse and Prose; and so recommended this Task

Digitized by Google

Task to him. Accordingly *Jeffrey* being incredibly delighted with this ancient Book, undertook the Tranſlating of it into *Latin*, which he performed with great Diligence, approving himſelf, according to *Matthew Paris*, a faithful Tranſlator. At firſt he divided it into four Books, writ in a plain ſimple Stile, and dedicated it to *Robert* Earl of *Glouceſter*, a Copy whereof is *(p)* ſaid to be at *Bennet* College in *Cambridge*, which was never yet publiſhed; but afterwards he made ſome Alterations, and divided it into eight Books, to which he added the Book of *Merlin*'s Propheſies, which he had alſo tranſlated from *Britiſh* Verſe into *Latin* Proſe, prefixing to it a Preface, and a Letter to *Alexander* Biſhop of *Lincoln*. A great many fabulous and trifling Stories were inſerted in the Hiſtory: But that was not his Fault; his Buſineſs as a Tranſlator was to deliver them faithfully ſuch as they were, and leave them to the Judgment of the Learned to be diſcuſſed.

XII. To prove the Truth of this Relation, and to anſwer at once all Objections againſt *Jeffrey*'s Integrity, one need no other Argument than an Aſſurance, that the Original Manuſcript which *Jeffrey* tranſlated, of whoſe Antiquity the Curious are able to

(p) Pitts & Voſſ. in loc. ſupra citatis.

Digitized by Google

judge in a great Measure by the Character, or any ancient and authentick Copy of it, is yet extant. And indeed Archbishop *(q) Usher* mentions an old *Welsh* Chronicle in the *Cottonian* Library, that formerly was in the Possession of that learned Antiquary *Humfrey Lhwyd*, which he says is thought to be that which *Jeffrey* translated. But if that is the Original Manuscript, it must be acknowledg'd *Jeffrey* was not meerly a Translator, but made some Additions of his own; since as that most learned Prelate informs us, the Account that we have in this History of the *British Flamens*, and *Arch-flamens*, is no where to be found in it. But besides this there are several Copies of it in the *Welsh* Tongue, mentioned by the late Ingenious and Learned Mr. *Lhwyd* in his *Archæologia Britannica*. And I my self have met with a Manuscript History of our *British* Affairs, writ above a hundred Years ago by Mr. *John Lewis*, and shortly to be published, wherein the Author says, That he had the Original of the *British* History in Parchment written in the *British* Tongue before *Jeffrey*'s Time, as he concludes from this Circumstance, that in his Book *Jeffrey*'s Preface was wanting, and the Preface to his Book was the second Chapter of that published

(q) *Britan. Eccles. primordia, Cap.* 5.

Digitized by Google

publiſhed by *Jeffrey*. My Ignorance of the *Welſh* Tongue renders me unqualified for making any Search into theſe Matters; and and though the Search ſhould be attended with never ſo much Satisfaction, to thoſe who are able to judge of the Antiquity of Manuſcripts; yet to the Generality of Readers other Arguments would perhaps be more convincing.

XIII. Were it true, that *Alfred* of *Beverley* made his Abridgment of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, from a Copy of it which was different from that publiſhed by *Jeffrey*, and extant before his Time; that alone would be an unanſwerable Proof of *Jeffrey*'s Integrity. Mr. *Hearne*, in his Preface to *Alfred*'s Annals by him lately publiſhed, favours this Opinion; for the ſupport of which he alledges, that *Alfred* never once mentions *Jeffrey*'s Name, but diſtinguiſhes the Author of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory by the feigned Name of *Britannicus*, and that *Jeffrey* was a later Writer than he. As to *Jeffrey*'s being a later Writer, that ſeems grounded upon a Miſtake, *Camden* and other learned Men have run into, concerning the Time of *Jeffrey*'s publiſhing this Hiſtory, which I ſhall hereafter endeavour to rectify. And as to *Alfred*'s Silence of *Jeffrey*'s Name, one can ſafely conclude no more from that than this, that he perhaps thought him of leſs Regard, as being not the Author, but only

Digitized by Google

the Tranſlator of the Hiſtory. To me the common Opinion of learned Men, *viz.* that *Alfred*'s Annals were chiefly *Galfredi Deflorationes*, ſeems much better ſupported. For before *Jeffrey*'s Tranſlation appeared, the *Britiſh* Hiſtory was wholly unknown to the World, there being no Copy of it extant but in the *Britiſh* Tongue, and that too but lately diſcovered; ſo that *Jeffrey* (r) forbids his Contemporaries, *William* of *Malmeſbury*, and *Henry* of *Huntington*, to treat of the ancient *Britiſh* Kings, for want of the Book which *Walter* brought over from *Armorica*, and whereof he now publiſhed the Tranſlation. But *Alfred* ſays nothing of its being writ in the *Britiſh* Tongue, nor of its being ſo ſcarce a Book. On the contrary he (ſ) ſpeaks of it as a Book ſo well known, that it was in his Time eſteemed a Mark of ruſtick Ignorance not to be acquainted with it, and that he himſelf was aſhamed till he had read this Hiſtory which others had even got by Heart. If therefore the *Britiſh* Hiſtory which *Alfred* abridged, was different from this publiſhed by *Jeffrey*, and yet was ſo generally well known at that Time; one might very well ask, what became of it? What Author has made the leaſt Mention of it? Or in what Language

(r) *Britiſh Hiſt.* B. XII. Ch. 20. (ſ) *Alured Beverl. Annal.* p. 2.

Digitized by Google

Language was it written? If it was in *Britiſh*, it could not have been ſo generally underſtood by *Engliſhmen*, nor in all Probability by *Alfred* himſelf, who yet mentions his Deſire of tranſcribing it: If in *Latin*, then the Queſtion is, wherein did that Hiſtory and *Jeffrey*'s pretended Tranſlation differ? For I obſerve that wherever *Alfred* does not abridge, but quote the very Words of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, he does it *Verbatim* according to *Jeffrey*'s Tranſlation. Nor does his Abridgment in the leaſt differ from *Jeffrey*'s larger Hiſtory of the Times before the Coming of *Cæſar*, ſaving in the Orthography of ſome Perſons and Places, wherein ſcarce any Writers ſince his Time have perfectly agreed, and in a Quotation (*t*) which he has added out of another Author, concerning the High-ways of *Belinus*; nor yet in the Times after the Coming of *Cæſar*, ſaving in ſome Additions he made to it, as he himſelf (*u*) owns, out of the *Roman*, *Engliſh*, and other Hiſtorians.

XIV. Deſpairing therefore of clearing *Jeffrey*'s Integrity by this Argument, let us try whether it may not be done, by the Conſideration of other Circumſtances, and the Anſwers that may be given to the Objections of his Adverſaries. And in the firſt

(*t*) *Alured. Beverl. Annales.* p. 17. (*u*) *Ibid.* L. II. p. 25.

Digitized by Google

Place it has been thought by *Jeffrey*'s Advocates a very great Hardſhip, that he has not the Privilege of being believed upon his own Word, *viz.* That he was only the Tranſlator of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, who was in his own Time of that Credit and Eſteem, as to be promoted afterwards to the Biſhoprick of St. *Aſaph*, and as (*x*) ſome relate (though I believe on no good Grounds) to the Dignity of a *Cardinal* alſo: When other Authors, who have intermixed with their Hiſtories as groſs Fables as any that are here to be found, are yet allowed that Privilege in Matters of greater Importance. And they think this Treatment of him the more injurious, ſince the Learned Men of his own Time, who had the beſt Opportunity, and wanted no Abilities to expoſe the Forgery, had it really been ſo, were far from queſtioning his Veracity in this Point. Now as (*y*) Sir *John Price* with great Zeal for *Jeffrey*'s Cauſe urges, no humane Argument is ſo ſtrong a Support to the Faith of the Goſpel as this, that when it was firſt publiſhed to the World, none of its Adverſaries were found ſo impudent, as to endeavour deſtroying the Belief of the Facts it relates. And ſo, ſays he, ought it to be an Argument for our Purpoſe, that there

(*x*) Sir *Winſtone Churchil's Divi Britannici* from *Alphonſ. di Gatto de Giſtis Pontif.* (*y*) *Defenſ. Hiſt. Britan.* p. 29.

Digitized by Google

there was no Body, when this Hiſtory was firſt publiſhed, that attempted to diſprove it, or aſſert it to be the Forgery, inſtead of the Tranſlation of *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*. On the contrary, it was received with general Approbation, and was no ſooner publiſhed, than Abridgments and Tranſlations were made of it into other Languages.

XV. For *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, whom *Jeffrey* mentions as his contemporary Hiſtorian, though he had treated of the Original of the *Britains*, and of *Brutus* the Founder of their Race, in the Hiſtory he had publiſhed before he had ſeen the *Britiſh* Hiſtory; yet afterwards happening, as he (z) ſays, to light upon *Jeffrey*'s Tranſlation at the Abbey of *Bec* in *Normandy*, he, to compleat his Account of the ancient *Britiſh* Affairs, and as it were to teſtify to the World his Eſteem for the *Britiſh* Hiſtory when publiſhed, made an Abſtract of it, which he ſubjoined as an Appendix to his former Hiſtory. About the ſame Time alſo *Alfred* of *Beverley*, whom I mention'd before, and now aſſert to be a later Writer than *Jeffrey*, ſhew'd himſelf ſo well ſatisfied that the *Britiſh* Hiſtory was genuine, that in his Abridgment of it he has omitted mentioning *Jeffrey*'s Name; which, as

(z) *Epiſt. 2da. ad Warinum. M. S. in Bibliotheca Harleyana.*

Digitized by Google

I have already obſerved, he in all Probability did for no other Reaſon, than that he thought him leſs worthy his Regard, as being no farther concerned in the Work than in the Tranſlating of it; though the Author of it, as being unknown, he calls by the feigned Name of *Britannicus*. Much about the ſame Time alſo *Walter Mapæus*, who firſt diſcovered the Book, and gave it to *Jeffrey* to tranſlate, did himſelf tranſlate it out of *Britiſh* into *Latin*, and in his latter Days out of *Latin* into *Britiſh* again, that is, as I ſuppoſe, into more modern *Welſh* that it might be more generally underſtood. And this *Walter* himſelf teſtifies at the Concluſion of his Book, which is ſtill to be ſeen in the Archives (*a*) of *Jeſus* Colledge Library in *Oxford*. Mr. *Lhuyd* (*b*) ſays, that after comparing theſe Tranſlations with that which was made by *Jeffrey*, he found *Jeffrey*'s Hiſtory more elegant and perfect than the other. There are alſo ſeveral other Manuſcript Copies of this Hiſtory tranſlated into *Welſh*, but of what Antiquity, or whether all done by the ſame Hand I have not yet been able to inform my ſelf. And the Learned Biſhop of *Carliſle* (*c*) mentions an old *Engliſh* Tranſlation of it made by one *Lazimon* or *Lazamon*, a Prieſt

(*a*) *Wynne*'s Preface to the Hiſt. of *Wales*. (*b*) *Archæol. Britan.* p. 263. (*c*) *Engl.* Hiſt. Libr. Part I. ch. 3.

Digitized by Google

a Prieſt born at *Ernlere* on the *Severn*, the Copy of which being yet extant in the *Cottonian* Library, he conjectures muſt be near as ancient as *Jeffrey*'s Time. And though the Tranſlator pretends to have had the Original from its prime Author, one *Wate*, (or *Walter*) a *French* Clergyman, who, as he ſays, firſt preſented his *Latin* Compoſure to Queen *Eleanor*, King *Henry* the Second's Conſort; yet, ſays my Lord of *Carliſle*, the Truth is, as Mr. *Wanley* has made it very plain to us, this *Lazimon*'s Book, and *Monmouth*'s are the very ſame; and the former ſeems only to have tranſlated *Jeffrey*'s Book into *Norman Engliſh*, in which Condition we have it twice in the *Cottonian* Library. It would be tedious to recount that long Catalogue of *Engliſh* Hiſtorians, who ſucceeded from the Twelfth to the Sixteenth Century, and that have either abridged or enlarged upon the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, without any Suſpicion of Forgery on *Jeffrey*'s Part, wherewith he now commonly ſtands charged.

XVI. But beſides the general Approbation this Book met with at its firſt appearing abroad, and which it ſo long preſerved, it may be alledged farther, that there is all the Imbrobability of any Cheat on *Jeffrey*'s Part that can be imagined. For he produces for a Voucher of his Sincerity *Walter* Archdeacon of *Oxford*, from whom he profeſſes

Digitized by Google

ſelfes to have received the Copy of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory; and at the ſame Time clears *Walter* of Forgery, by mentioning the Antiquity of the Book. But admitting they were both jointly concerned in this Contrivance, which is all that can be objected in this Caſe, it is hardly credible that *Jeffrey* would hazard the expoſing of his Character ſo far, as to publiſh to the World ſo groſs a Forgery, and preſume to dedicate it to a Perſon ſo celebrated for his Learning, and withal of ſo great Eminence and Authority in the Kingdom, as was at that Time *Robert* Earl of *Glouceſter*, the Natural Son of King *Henry* the Firſt. He had juſt Reaſon to fear, that a Perſon of ſuch eminent Quality, and ſo curious in Matters of Learning, and eſpecially that which ſo much concerned a Stateſman, the Hiſtory of this Kingdom, would not bear ſuch a ſcandalous Impoſition with his Name at the Head of it, if by any Enquiries made into it he could have been detected. But beſides the Earl of *Glouceſter*, he had the Confidence alſo to venture impoſing upon the Credulity of *Alexander* Biſhop of *Lincoln*, to whom he dedicates *Merlin*'s Propheſies, and mentions his Tranſlation of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory. This Prelate is alſo celebrated by *Henry* of *Huntington*, and other Hiſtorians, as well as *Jeffrey* himſelf, for the greateſt Patron of Learned Men in that Time, and for being himſelf a great Scholar

Digitized by Google

Scholar and Stateſman. And if he had any Concern either for Truth or for his own Honour, we cannot doubt but he was well ſatisfied of *Jeffrey*'s Integrity, when he deſired him to tranſlate *Merlins* Propheſies, (as *Jeffrey* ſays he did,) and had the Opportunity of Diſcourſing him about the Copy of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, the Tranſlation whereof he publiſhed at the ſame Time with them. But farther, let it even be granted, that not only *Walter* was a Partner in this Contrivance, but alſo that the Earl of *Glouceſter* and the Biſhop of *Lincoln* were both ſo regardleſs of their Honour, as to ſuffer their Names at the Head of a Tranſlation, without any Scruple or Enquiry whether it was real or pretended; yet it can never with any Reaſon be thought, but that a Hiſtory, which gave ſo ſurprizing an Account of the ancient *Britiſh* Affairs, and which (as *Alfred* of *Beverley* tells us,) was at the Time of its firſt Appearance very much the Subject of publick Diſcourſe, ſo that it was then eſteemed a Mark of ruſtick Ignorance for any Perſon to be unacquainted with it, could have paſſed without Cenſure from other Learned Men, had there been the leaſt Grounds for it. And yet, as I have already obſerved, it paſſed current with all the Writers of Note in our Country till *Camden*'s Time; and met with no Oppoſition excepting from *William* of *Newburgh*,

Digitized by Google

burgh, who may very well be thought too diſtant in Time, too much ſway'd by Reſentment and Prejudice, too full of abſurd Stories himſelf, and to have too little Appearance of Reaſon on his Side, to be capable of doing it any Injury with an impartial and conſiderate Reader.

XVII. Notwithſtanding both *(d) Polydore Virgil*, and *(e) Camden* object the Authority of this Writer, as an Argument againſt *Jeffrey*'s Integrity, and that too of the greateſt Weight of any that they offer upon this Point, which makes it the more worthy our Conſideration. *Camden*, or which is much the ſame Thing, the learned and judicious Men who attacked him with their Objections, introduces the Argument with great Force, by aſſerting, that *William* of *Newburgh*, in this rough Language, fixed the Charge of Forgery upon *Jeffrey*, the Compiler of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, as ſoon as ever he had publiſhed it. " A certain " Writer ſtarted up in our Days, who hath " deviſed ſtrange and ridiculous Tales con- " cerning the *Britains*, and with a ſort of " impudent Vanity, hath extolled their " Gallantry above that of the *Macedonians* " or *Romans*. His Name is *Jeffrey*, &c. " From the Manner in which *Camden* allows theſe

(d) Hiſt. Angl. L. I. *(e) Britannia* p. VIII.

Digitized by Google

theſe learned Men to propoſe their Objection, a Reader would hardly imagin that *Newburgh* delay'd making this Charge againſt *Jeffrey*, till above forty Years after the *Britiſh* Hiſtory was publiſhed; and yet ſo much it was at leaſt according to the moſt favourable Suppoſition: That is, allowing *Jeffrey* to be living at the Beginning of *Henry* the Second's Reign, or the Year 1155. For in his Reign *Camden* (*f*) ſays *Jeffrey* publiſhed this Hiſtory, and it was at leaſt 1197, before *Newburgh* publiſhed his Invective, his Hiſtory not ending before that Year. But indeed the Miſtake is yet much greater. For by ſome Accounts, I find *Jeffrey* died two Years before *Henry* the Second began his Reign; at leaſt it is certain (*g*) he was made Biſhop of St. *Aſaph* in 1151, and that his two Patrons *Robert* Earl of *Glouceſter* and *Alexander* Biſhop of *Lincoln*, (to the former of which he dedicates the Hiſtory he Tranſlated, to the other *Merlins* Prophefies,) died the one in the Year 1146, the other the Year following: And it is equally certain, that *Jeffrey* publiſhed his Book before he was made a Biſhop, and alſo before the Death of either of his Patrons. As to the exact Time when this Book was publiſhed I cannot be poſitive; though moſt probably

(*f*) *Britain.* p. V. (*g*) *Mat. Paris Hiſt. maj. ad An.* 1151.

Digitized by Google

probably it was between the Year 1123, in which *Alexander* was made Biſhop of *Lincoln*, and 1128 when *Alfred* of *Beverly* the Abridger of the Hiſtory (*b*) is thought to have died. *Langhorn* ſays in his (*i*) *Antiquitates Albionenſes* that *Henry* of *Huntington* ſaw this Hiſtory at the Abbey of *Bec* in *Normandy*. *A. D.* 1109. But this certainly is a Miſtake, as might be made appear from ſeveral Circumſtances. *Huntingtons* Second Letter to *Warin*, which *Langhorn* quotes on this Occaſion, was (as far as I can find) never yet Printed; and the M S. which I ſaw of it in the *Harleyan* Library, ſays only, that *Huntington* had met with *Jeffrey*'s Hiſtory in his Journey to *Rome hoc anno*: But the Letter has no Date. However one may very juſtly reckon at leaſt ſeventy Years between the Publication of this Hiſtory, and the Appearance of *Newburghs* Charge againſt it. And this is ſuch a Diſtance of Time, that it can hardly be preſumed he could be a competent Witneſs of the Forgery, unleſs he had given better Reaſons for it than he has done.

XVIII. But *Jeffrey*'s Advocates ſay farther, that *Newburgh* was far from being ſincere and impartial in his Charge. It is certain his Accuſation made no Impreſſion on any of our own Writers, till near the Beginning of the

(*b*) *Hearne Præf. ad Alured. Annales.* p. 28. (*i*) p. 39.

Digitized by Google

the laſt Century. It was in a ſhort Time anſwered by one (*k*) *Grey*, who according to *Pitts* was Biſhop of *Norwich* and Elect of *Canterbury*, and dy'd *A. D.* 1217. and has been generally rejected as a groundleſs Calumny; ſo much Virulence, eſpecially againſt a Perſon of ſo venerable a Character as that of a Biſhop, not being thought to proceed from any other Cauſe than Paſſion and Prejudice. And accordingly (*l*) ſome *Welſh* Authors diſcover to Us the true ſecret Reaſon of this Bitterneſs, by telling us from their own authentick Hiſtories, That this *William Petit*, *alias Neubrigenſis*, whom the *Britains* call *Guillim. Bach*, did after the Deceaſe of *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*, make Suit to *David ap Owen Gwyned* Prince of *North-Wales*, to ſucceed in the Biſhoprick of St. *Aſaph*; and receiving the Repuſe with ſome Diſgrace, had no other Way to vent his fooliſh Paſſion and Reſentment, than by railing moſt ſcurrilouſly againſt the deceaſed Biſhop, as if he had been the Author of a Book, of which he was only the Tranſlator, and decrying the Hiſtory and Antiquities of the *Britains*, to revenge himſelf on the *Welſh* their Deſcendants. So that *Leland* ſays truly of him, (*m*) *Gallofridum Arturium Monumetenſem tam petulanter*

(*k*) *Nicolſons Engl. Hiſt.* Lib. Part. I. ch. 3. (*l*) *Powel in Epiſt. ded. ad Pontic. Virunn. & Joh. Lewis Hiſt. in M S.* (*m*) *Comment de Britan. Script.*

Digitized by Google

petulanter laceſſit, tam invidis morſibus lacerat, ut conductum ad id facile putes: cujus judiciam ſecutus Polydorus, *& ſæpe & libenter* Gallofridum *vellicat, alieni operis interpretem. Quare mihi uterque ad partes merito vocandus, niſi eſſent ex æquo penitioris antiquitatis* Britanniæ *ignari.*

XIX. They think alſo his Prejudice the more apparent, in that he confidently objects as a Falſity in this Hiſtory, what they aſſert to be a moſt notorious Truth. For he would have the Account here given of the three ancient Metropolitan Sees of the *Britains*, *viz. London*, *York*, and *Legions*, paſs for an inconteſtable Proof of the Falſity of the Hiſtory, affirming there were no Archbiſhops in this Iſland before *Auguſtin* the Monk. And indeed that this is a more confident than true Aſſertion, any one may be convinced from Arch-Biſhop *Uſhers Primordia*, who has moſt learnedly diſcuſſed this Point, and ſhewn all the Authorities that corroborate *Jeffrey*'s Account of the Eſtabliſhment and Succeſſion of the *Britiſh* Archbiſhops, from the Time of K. *Lucius* till *Auguſtins* Arrival. But beſides they wonder with what Face he could reproach *Jeffrey* with fabulous Stories, who himſelf abounds with Falſities and Abſurdities rather more groſs and incredible. For ſome Liberty has been always allow'd to Antiquity in theſe Matters: But this Hiſtori-

an

Digitized by Google

an makes a Romance of the Hiſtory of his own Time, and among many other monſtrous Stories, tells us one which nothing in this Book, not the Birth of *Merlin*, nor the Transformation of *Uther Pendragon*, nor the moſt Romantick Exploit of K. *Arthur*, nor *Cadwallo*'s Repaſt in the Iſland of *Garnareia*, will come up to; and will ſerve very well to ſhew that this Authors Indignation againſt *Jeffrey*, did not proceed from his Averſion to Fables. He ſays, *(n)* That in K. *Stephen*'s Time at a Place now called *Wolpit* near St. *Edmunds-Bury* in *Suffolk*, two green Children, a Male and Female, in ſtrange Habits, came out of the Wolfpitts adjoining, and wandred up and down in the Field in Aſtoniſhment, till they were ſeized by ſome Reapers, and carried to the Village, whither a great Multitude of People ran together to ſee them. There they were detained ſome Days, and refuſed all manner of Suſtenance that was offered them, till at laſt when near famiſhed they greedily laid hold on ſome Beans that were accidentally brought them, and lived upon this Food for ſome Months till they had learned to eat Bread. Their green Colour gradually changed, ſo that they became in Complexion like other People, learned our

(n) *Neubrig Rerum Angl. L. 1. Cap. 27.*

Digitized by Google

Language, and were baptized. The Boy, who ſeemed the younger, died a little while after; but the Girl ſurvived a long Time, and married a Man at *Lynn*. Being asked about their Country and the Manner of their coming hither; they anſwered, That they came from St. *Martins* Land, which according to their Deſcription, was a Subterraneous Country that had no Sun, but a Light like our Twilight, where notwithſtanding the *Chriſtian* Faith was profeſſed: And that they were convey'd from thence to this upper Region in a ſort of Extaſy, occaſioned by hearing a Sound like that of a Bell, while they were feeding their Fathers Cattle in the Field. An Author that could relate this Story for a Truth, was a very improper Perſon to cenſure *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth's Britiſh* Hiſtory.

XX. Since then neither the Time when *Newburgh* publiſhed this Charge, nor the Impartiality, nor the Credit of the Witneſs, may be thought to render his Evidence valid; nothing remains to ſupport this heinous Accuſation, but the ſtrong Reaſons he gives for it. But here they ſay we are moſt of all diſappointed; for he gives no Reaſons at all. The whole Accuſation is nothing but ſcurrilous Railing, without the leaſt Offer of a Proof. He calls *Jeffrey* (*o*) a Writer of ridiculous Fictions, who with

(*o*) *Neubrig. Proemium Hiſt.*

Digitized by Google

with an impudent Vanity extolled the Valour of the *Britains* above that of the *Macedonians* and *Romans*; had publiſhed for a true Hiſtory the old *Britiſh* Fables of K. *Arthur*, with an Addition of his own; had yet with greater Impudence publiſhed *Merlin*'s lying Propheſies, very much alſo enlarged from his own Stock, as true and authentick; and in his whole *Britiſh* Hiſtory lyes every where ſaucily and impudently. He alſo calls thoſe either *Jeffrey*'s or other Peoples Fictions, which he relates concerning the great Exploits of the ancient *Britains* before *Ceſars* Arrival; as alſo from *Ceſars* Time, till the Reign of the Emperour *Honorius*; and will not allow one Word to be true concerning the ſucceeding *Britiſh* and *Saxon* Kings, that is inconſiſtent with *Bedes* account of them; and in ſhort affirms the whole Story of *Arthur* and his Succeſſors is a bare-faced Lie, either of his own or other Peoples making. And in this Language do's he proceed to inveigh againſt him more largely, in Relation to the Exploits of *Arthur*, his three pretended Archiepiſcopal Sees, and the Prophet *Merlin*; and at laſt concludes that this Liar with his Fables ought to be forthwith rejected by all. But he do's not at laſt offer to prove, nor ſo much as to ſay, that there was no ſuch ancient Hiſtory ever extant as *Jeffrey* pretended to tranſlate; nor that *Walter* Archdeacon of

Digitized by Google

Oxford never delivered any such Book to him; nor that there was a Combination between *Walter* and *Jeffrey* to impose a Forgery upon the World; nor that any Body had detected, or so much as suspected any such Thing. And yet without some Proof of this kind, *Jeffrey*, notwithstanding all *Newburghs* ill-manner'd Railing, might be a very innocent Man. But to make his Malice yet more apparent, one might very well ask, To what End was all this bitter Invective? Or which way was it pertinent to his Purpose? For *Newburghs* History begins with *William* the Conquerer, and has nothing to do with the Affairs of those Times whereof the *British* History treats. If that had been his Subject, he had been somewhat more excusable, as preparing his Readers to reject the Errours of that History. Whereas he now goes out of his way to vent his Malice against, and endeavour to ruin the Credit of a Prelate of the Church, who had been a long Time dead, who had hitherto enjoy'd a fair Character, and (which is the greatest Aggravation) had never that I can find done him the least Injury.

XXI. This is the Man upon whose single Testimony (p) *Polydore Virgil* grounds his calumnious Reflections on *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*

(p) *Hist. Ang.* L. 1.

Digitized by Google

mouth, and which ſome of our modern Writers have countenanced ſo far, as to place him in the infamous Claſs with *Annius Viterbienſis* and other Impoſtors. And yet at laſt *Newburgh* does not ſay that *Jeffrey* forged the Hiſtory, but only added to it what he calls doting Tales and Fictions. And this is what *Jeffreys* Advocates do not deny, and what he himſelf ſeems to have the Ingenuity to own. For he *(q)* owns the Addition of *Merlins* Propheſy; and perhaps the Connexion of it with the Hiſtory, by the Addition of *Merlins* Diſcourſe with *Vortegirn*, (which is almoſt taken *verbatim* from *Nennius)* muſt be imply'd. He *(r)* owns alſo ſome Additions to the Story of K. *Arthur*, and therefore does not pretend to have ty'd himſelf up to a ſtrict Tranſlation. And accordingly beſides the Story of the *Flamens* and *Archflamens*, which Archbiſhop *Uſher (ſ)* ſays was wanting in that which he ſuppoſed to be the Original MS; Dr. *Powel (t)* ſays he had ſeen other Copies, wherein were alſo wanting thoſe wonderful Tranſformations of *Gorlois* and his Confidents, beſides ſome other Romantick Tales; which indeed might be Traditions among the *Welſh*, and ſuch as *Jeffrey* might think entertaining Stories for the Credulity of thoſe Times.

(q) *Brit.* Hiſt. B. VII. Ch. 2. (r) *Ibid.* B. XI. Ch. 1. (ſ) *Primordia. Cap.* 5. (t.) *Epiſt. de Hiſt. Brit. rectè intelligenda apud Camdeni Angl. Norman.*

Digitized by Google

I must not leave this Point, without observing also, (what I have already hinted at) that among all the Lies and Fables *Newburgh* charges *Jeffrey* with, he makes not the least mention of the Story of *Brutus*, or the Descent of the *Britains* from the *Trojans*. It seems this Particular, which was the most material of all, was so well established in his Time, that he did not venture to oppose it: For one would hardly think any other Reason hindred him from mentioning it. To what Purpose therefore does *Camden* produce *Newburghs* Testimony against the *British* History, as long as the Story of *Brutus* is not injured by it? For let the rest of the History be true or false, his Concern was chiefly about this Part of it, as being repugnant to the Conjecture he was going to propose, concerning the first Inhabitants of this Island.

XXI. It is true, he uses also other Arguments which I proceed to consider; Though his Quotation out of *Giraldus Cambrensis* I cannot think was intended by him for a Proof of *Jeffrey*'s Forgery, but only in some Measure to weaken the Authority of the *British* History. As he was very conversant in the Works of this Author, and had published a Part of them, he had certainly more Ingenuity than to wrest the Sense of one particular Passage, contrary to the Tenour and Scope of all *Giraldus*'s Wri-

Digitized by Google

Writings. For though *Giraldus* is ſo ſevere with *Jeffrey*, about the Opinions he delivers concerning the Etymology of *Wales*, as to paſs this blunt Reflection, *(u) Sicut Fabuloſa Gaufredi Arthuri mentitur Hiſtoria*, which are the Words *Camden* quotes; yet it is certain he never intended to charge *Jeffrey* with Forgery or Impoſture by them. So far from that, that his Teſtimonies ſerve as the greateſt Support to this Hiſtory, in the moſt material Parts of it. As he was himſelf a *Welſhman*, and withal very learned in the Hiſtory and Antiquities of the *Britains*, contemporary with *Jeffrey* himſelf, and an intimate Acquaintance of *Walter* Archdeacon of *Oxford*, he had the beſt Opportunity of any Writer of that Time, for detecting *Jeffrey*'s Impoſture: And had he had the leaſt Suſpicion, that under Pretence of Tranſlating an ancient *Britiſh* Book, he impoſed a Forgery upon the World, he that was ſo ſevere upon him for ſuch a Trifle as the Etymology of a Word, would never have conceal'd it. But according to the Opinion of Sir *John Price*, *(w) Giraldus* ſaw the very original Book from whence *Jeffrey* made his Tranſlation; (ſo far was he from ſuſpecting him) and only quarrell'd with him about this particular Paſ-

(u) *Giraldi Cambriæ Deſcriptio*, Cap. 7. *apud Camdeni Ang. Norman.* (w) *Hiſt. Britan Defenſio*, p. 61.

Digitized by Google

ſage, as being one of *Jeffrey*'s Additions. Whereas in the other Parts of his Writings, he has not only approved, but much corroborated the Authority of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, as we ſhall ſee in its proper Place.

XXIII. To proceed therefore to that which is really deſigned by *Camden* as an Argument againſt *Jeffrey*'s Integrity; he makes his Learned Men aſſert, *(x)* "That "*Jeffrey ap Arthur* of *Monmouth* was the firſt "Perſon, that gratified the *Britains* with "*Brutus* for the Founder of their Race, "and feign'd him not only of a *Trojan*, "but alſo of a Divine Extraction: Before "which Time, there was never any the "leaſt Mention made of ſuch a Man as *Bru-* "*tus*." Now this, though it were true, is far from being a direct Argument againſt *Jeffrey*'s Integrity: Becauſe there might have been a Hiſtory that lay concealed for ſome Ages before his Time, containing this new and ſurprizing Account of the ancient *Britains*, which it might be his Fortune firſt to publiſh. But there is no Occaſion to anſwer the Argument in this Manner: For the Advocates of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory acquit not only *Jeffrey*, but alſo his Author, from Forgery with Reſpect to this Point, by aſſerting

(x) *Britannia*, p. VII.

Digitized by Google

asserting in direct Contradiction to *Camden*, That there had been frequent Mention made of *Brutus* the Founder of the *British* Race, by Authors extant long before *Jeffrey*'s Time; and that there had been a constant Tradition either oral or written concerning him, especially among the *Britains*, even from the first Beginning of the *British* Nation. And this *Camden* himself, who was so learned in Antiquity, could not be ignorant of, whatever groundless Objections he suffers his learned Men to offer. For Sir *John Price*'s learned and elegant Defence of the *British* History was published in *Camden*'s Time, and could hardly avoid being perused by a Person of so great Curiosity in these Affairs. And this Author had sufficiently answer'd this Objection before ever it appear'd in *Camden*'s *Britannia*.

XXIV. It is certain in the first Place, that *Henry* of *Huntington* had published in the Beginning of his History a short Account of *Brutus*, and made the *Britains* the Descendants of the *Trojans*, before he knew any Thing of *Jeffrey*'s *British* History; as may be gathered from what he says in the above-mention'd second Epistle to *Warin*, from what *Jeffrey* himself says at the Conclusion of this History, where he mentions *Henry* of *Huntington*, as his contemporary Historian, and also from the different

Digitized by Google

different Relations of the Story it self in some Circumstances: And it is also observable, that he professes to have had this Account from various Authors. Give me Leave to insert the whole Passage in his own Words. (y) *Nunc a quibus & quo tempore inhabitata fuerit* (Britannia) *dicendum est; quod in* Beda *non inventum in aliis authoribus reperi; scripserunt enim a* Dardano *principium emanasse* Britonum. Dardanus *autem pater fuit* Troij, Troius *autem pater* Priami *&* Anchisæ, Anchises *Pater* Æneæ, Æneas *pater* Ascanii, Ascanius *pater* Sylvii. Sylvius *autem cum uxorem duxisset, & ea prægnans esset, prædixit magus quidam filium unde prægnans erat interfecturum patrem suum. Occiso igitur mago pro vaticinatione illa, natus est filius & vocatus est* Bruto. *Post multum vero intervallum dum ipse luderet cum pueris, ictu sagittæ occidit patrem non industria sed casu. Quamobrem expulsus ab* Italia *pervenit in* Galliam, *ibique condita civitate* Turonorum, *quæ vocatur* Turonis, *invasit tractum* Armoricanum. *De tractu autem* Armoricano *hac advenies sibi partes insula ingentis vindicavit, & ex nomine suo* Britanniam *vocavit. Dicunt autem illi authores, quod quando* Bruto *regnabat in* Britannia, Heli *Sacerdos judicabat* Israel, *&* Post-

humus

(y) *Henry Huntington. Hist.* L. 1.

Digitized by Google

humus *ſive* Sylvius *filius* Æneæ *regnabat apud* Latinos, *cujus nepos erat* Bruto. But though as *Huntington* obſerves, *Bede* makes no expreſs Mention of *Brutus*, it cannot be concluded he was ignorant of his Story; it being Foreign from his Purpoſe to relate it, ſince he was to write the Eccleſiaſtical and not the Civil Hiſtory of this Country. Notwithſtanding it is thought by ſome, that he hints at the Paſſage of the *Trojans* or *Britains* through *Gaul*, when he ſays, (*z*) *In primis hac inſula* Britones *ſolum, a quibus nomen accepit, incolas habuit; qui de tractu* Armoricano, *ut fertur*, Britanniam *advecti, auſtrales ſibi partes illius vindicarunt.* For as Sir (*a*) *John Price* and (*b*) *Sheringham* remark, it is evident from this Teſtimony, that the ancient *Britains* did not inhabit *Gaul*, but only arrived there in their Paſſage to *Britain*, agreeable to what the *Britiſh* Hiſtory relates. For if the *Britains* had been a People of *Gaul*, and had given their Name to the Iſland at their Arrival here, they muſt have bore this Name firſt in *Gaul*. But the Name of *Britains* is much more ancient in this Iſland than in *Gaul*, they having been ſo called long before *Cæſar*'s Arrival; whereas it was long after *Cæſar*'s Time that *Armorica*

(*z*) *Beda Hiſt. Eccleſ.* L. 1. Cap. 1. (*a*) *Hiſt. Brit. Def.* p. 46. (*b*) *De Angl. Gent. Orig.* Cap. 1.

Digitized by Google

rica came to be called *Britain*. And that we ought to underſtand *Bede* in this Senſe is very reaſonable, if we conſider farther, that it ſeems to have been the received Tradition of his Countrymen the *Saxons*, when they firſt arrived here, that the *Britains* were originally *Trojans*; though by Reaſon of the long Confuſion and Diſtraction of their Affairs, the Ignorance of the Times, and eſpecially the Neglect of the Hiſtory of Foreign Nations, (among whom they eſteem'd the *Welſh*,) when indeed they have hardly deliver'd that of ther own, we cannot expect much Mention made of it by them in thoſe early Days. Notwithſtanding the *Saxon* Verſes *Wheloc* (*c*) cites out of an ancient Manuſcript at *Trinity* College in *Cambridge*, are an Inſtance of the Antiquity of this Notion among them, which I will here add according to his *Latin* Tranſlation.

Hæc unica fœmina prima
Ante omnes ſevit Troiani *ſemina belli.*
Hanc Britones *dixere* Helenam, *ſed* Dardanus, *ille*
Excelſus Bruti *pater extitit, unde* Britanni
Heroum ſumſere genus, fortiſſimus idem
Hunc orbem primus regere & dominarier auſus.

To

(*c*) *Comment. in Bed. Hiſt. Eccleſ.* L. 1. Cap. 1.

Digitized by Google

To which he immediately ſubjoyns from another Place,

Inſula dicta fuit Brutannia *nomine* Bruti.

XXV. But we have a much fuller Teſtimony concerning *Brutus* from *Sigibertus Gemblacenſis*, (*d*) a *Freneh* Author ſomewhat more early than *Jeffrey* or *Henry* of *Huntington*; for he died, according to *Bellarmine*, in the Year 1112, to which Year he alſo brings down his *Chronographia*. The whole Paſſage is too long to be cited here; but the Sum of it is, That according to the Relations given in the Hiſtory of the *Britains*, *Aſcanius* the Son of *Æneas* had by his Son *Sylvius* a Grandſon named *Brutus*, who occaſion'd his Mother's Death by his Birth, and his Father's in Hunting; that being baniſhed into *Greece* he headed the exiled *Trojans*, conquered *Pandraſus*, married his Daughter, and departing from *Greece* came to the *Tyrrhenian* Shore, where he joined Company with *Corineus*, aud then made War upon the *Gauls*, and built the City of *Tours*, where his Nephew *Turonus* was killed: That from hence he ſailed to *Britain* called then *Albion*, and inhabited by Giants, and called the People and Country after his

(*d*) *Chronographia apud Vet. Germania Script. per Piſtorium.*

Digitized by Google

his Name, and at last left three Sons to succeed him, after he had reigned twenty four Years. And so he passes summarily over the Affairs of the *Britains*, agreeable to the *British* History, till they were driven into *Wales* by the *Saxons*. I am not ignorant that this whole Passage in *Sigibertus* concerning the ancient *Britains*, is suspected by some Learned Men, as an Interpolation of some later Writer, who might take it from the *British History*. But this seems to be a Surmise, grounded rather upon their Prejudice to the *British* History, than any sufficient Reason. The Author, for an Introduction to his *Chronographia*, professes to treat of the Original of nine Nations, *viz.* the *Romans*, *Persians*, *Franks*, *Britains*, *&c.* and accordingly having dispatched the first three, delivers the Original of the *Britains* in the Manner I have related. And why this Particular should be an Interoplation more than any of the rest, they ought to shew some better Reason than their Suspicion, or the Omission of it in some one Manuscript, when perhaps all the rest have it. But we need not much insist upon this single Testimony, when there are others more ancient and authentick.

XXVI. For *Nennius* Abbot of the famous Monastery of *Banchor* near *Chester*, who flourished according to some Accounts in

Digitized by Google

in the ſeventh Century, or however without all Diſpute ſome Hundreds of Years before *Jeffrey*'s Time, has writ very copiouſly concerning *Brutus*; recounting his Genealogy from the Patriarch *Noah*, and relating the Sum of his Adventures, in a Manner that differs but in a few Circumſtances from the *Britiſh* Hiſtory. And not not only ſo, but indeed the principal Materials of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, where it is not warranted by the *Roman* Authors, or what we have now remaining of *Gildas*, are taken from this Author's Treatiſe, and only related in a more elegant Manner, and augmented with more Circumſtances: And we cannot reject the moſt conſiderable Part of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, without rejecting *Nennius* alſo. But to ſhew from whence he compiled his Account take his own Words. *(e) Partim majorum traditionibus, partim ſcriptis, partim etiam monumentis veterum* Britanniæ *incolarum, partim & de annalibus* Romanorum; *inſuper & de Chronicis ſanctorum Patrum, ſcil.* Jeronymi, Proſperi, Euſebii; *necnon & de hiſtoriis* Scotorum Saxonumque, *licet inimicorum, non ut volui ſed ut potui, meorum obtemperans juſſionibus ſeniorum, unam hanc hiſtoriunculam undecunque collectam balbutiendo congeſſi.* This Paſſage may partly ſerve to account for the different Relati-

ons

(e) *Nennii Procm. ad Hiſt. Britonum.*

Digitized by Google

ons he gives concerning *Brutus*, making him in (*a*) one Place a *Roman* Conſul; in (*b*) another the Son of *Hiſſaion*, who was the Grandſon of *Rhea Sylvia*, and therefore ſtill a Deſcendent from *Æneas*, though in a remoter Degree; and in another the ſame with the common Account, which he moſt largely inſiſts upon as the moſt authentick. At the ſame Time it may be doubted, whether the two former Accounts were not added by his Interpolator *Samuel Britannus*, the Copies we have remaining of this Author being very imperfect, and inconſiſtent with one another, and ſo acknowledged by (*c*) Dr. *Gale* the firſt Editor of this ſmall Hiſtory. At leaſt theſe different Accounts, as they are mention'd by no Author now extant ancienter than this, and by him but tranſiently too, ought not (as they are by *(d) Camden)* to be urged as any material Objection againſt the more known, the more generally received, and the much better grounded Tradition, which the *Britiſh* Hiſtory has delivered concerning *Brutus*. For if an eſtabliſh'd Tradition is to be rejected upon theſe Grounds, there is very little in ancient Hiſtory, that ought to be received: And even *Romulus* muſt quit his Pretenſions of being the Founder of

(*a*) *Hiſt. Brit.* Cap. 2. (*b*) *Ibid.* Cap. 12. (*c*) *Hiſt. Britan. Scriptores* 15. p. 133. (*d*) *Britannia* P. IX.

Digitized by Google

of *Rome*, becauſe the Levity of ſome Writers have aſcribed this Honour to the *Trojans* at their firſt Arrival in *Italy*, of others, to *Evander* King of *Arcadia*. But now ſince theſe different Accounts concerning *Brutus* were firſt delivered by *Nennius*, and ſince he's quoted by (*e*) *Camden* (though very unfairly) in this very Diſcourſe concerning *Brutus*, it is hardly conſiſtent with *Camden*'s profeſſed Ingenuity, that he ſhould let this paſs as an Objection, that before *Jeffrey*'s Time there was never the leaſt Mention made of any ſuch Man. Inſtead of ſtraining his Invention to the utmoſt to defend the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, as he pretends to have done; I leave the Reader to judge whether this Conduct does not ſhew, that he has rather done ſo to diſparage it.

XXVII. But he needed not to have made any profound Search for the Name of *Brutus* before *Jeffrey*'s Time, ſince it occurs in *Merlin*'s Propheſy, publiſhed with this Hiſtory, which is of much greater Antiquity than *Nennius*'s Time, ſince he was contemporary with *Vortegirn*. Whether there were two nearly contemporary Writers of this Name, the one ſurnamed *Ambroſius*, the other *Caledonius*, as moſt Authors agree; or but one, according to

(*e*) *Ibid.* P. VII.

Digitized by Google

the Opinion of the Learned (*f*) Biſhop of *Carliſle*; is not my Buſineſs to enquire. It is ſufficient for me to ſhew, that this *Merlin Ambroſius*, whom *Nennius* calls alſo (*g*) *Embreis Gleutic*, has been repreſented by a judicious Author, (*h*) as a Perſon of extraordinary Wiſdom and Learning for the Time he lived in, and that for his Skill in the Mathematicks, many Fables were invented of him, by the Vulgar, ſome of which are recorded in *Nennius*, and in the *Britiſh* Hiſtory. However, as his Compoſitions were in great Requeſt among the *Britains*, and eſpecially this Propheſy, one may ſee from thence the Antiquity of the Name of *Brutus*, and of the Notion that this Iſland derived its Name from him. Sir *John Price*, who underſtood the *Welſh* Language, and had peruſed the moſt ancient Writers now extant of that Country, informs us, (*i*) that they have alſo ſome Verſes yet extant of that ancient and (according to his Character) moſt ſublime *Britiſh* Bard *Thalieſſin*, calling the *Britains* the Remainder of the *Trojans*, and the Deſcendents of *Brutus*. But long before all theſe, and even contemporary with *Claudius* the Emperor, flouriſhed *Gildas* the Poet, diſtinguiſhed

(*f*) *Engl.* Hiſt. Library. Part I. Ch. 3. (*g*) *Hiſt. Brit.* Cap. 44. (*h*) *Humph. Lhwyd Com. Brit. Deſcript.* (*i*) *Priſci Hiſt. Britan. Defenſ.* p. 59.

Digitized by Google

guiſhed from the Hiſtorian by the Surname of *Cambricus*, who according to *Ponticus Virunnius*, tranſlated from *Greek* into *Latin*, the Verſes at the Beginning of this (*k*) Hiſtory, which contain the Prayer of *Brutus* to *Diana*, and her Anſwer to him, and wherein *Brutus* is expreſly named. And though there are not now remaining among us any Copies of the Poems of this Author, yet I ſee no great Reaſon to doubt that ſome of them were preſerved in *Italy*, ſince *Ponticus Virunnius* (*l*) mentions his Poem, entituled *Cambreis*, and quotes a Verſe out of the fifth Book of his Epigrams, as the genuine Works of *Gildas*. He is alſo mention'd by *Lilius Gregorius Gyraldus*, out of whoſe fifth Dialogue *De Poetarum Hiſtoria Leland* (*m*) quotes this Paſſage; Gildam *etiam memini me legere* Britannicum *Poetam, his ut puto longe antiquiorem, cujus tum mihi Elegiacum carmen mirâ facilitate conſcriptum viſum fuit, nec adeo aſpernabile; quem poſtea etiam citatum reperi in pervetere* Britannicâ *Hiſtoriâ*. But whatever may be the Judgment of Learned Men concerning this Point, *Leland*, who was himſelf no contemptible Poet, is very poſitive theſe Verſes were none of *Jeffrey*'s Compoſition:

(*k*) B. I. Ch. 12. (*l*) *Virun. Britannicæ Hiſt.* L. IV. (*m*) *Comment. de Scriptor. Brit.*

Digitized by Google

Referunt enim, says he, *(n) aureâ fluentes venâ antiquitatis inimitabilem quandam cùm eloquentiam, tum majestatem, qualem* Gallofridus *poeta suo tempore minimè malus, —— cum admiratione facilius potuit suspicere quam feliciùs exprimere.* And *Milton*, a Poet of much greater Name than he, *(o)* owns, "That the *Latin* Verses are much better "than for the Age of *Jeffrey ap Arthur*, "unless perhaps *Joseph* of *Exeter*, the only "smoth Poet of those Times befriended "him." But here *Milton* was out in his Chronology; for *Joseph* of *Exeter* did not flourish before the Reign of *Richard* the First, which was long after *Jeffrey*'s Death. Admitting then these Verses to carry in them a Vein of Antiquity, too elegant and smooth for any Monkish Production, as they certainly do, I see no great Reason to question *Viruvnius*'s Account of them, nor consequently to doubt that the Name of *Brutus*, the Founder of the *British* Race, was known in this Island at least a Thousand Years before *Jeffrey*'s Time.

XXVIII. The Testimonies I have already produced are I think sufficient to confute the Argument of *Camden*'s Learned Men, that the Name of *Brutus* was entirely the Invention of *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*.

Time

(n) *Vide Sheringham. de Angl. gentis Orig.* p. 387. (o) *Milton*'s Hist. of *Britain*, B. I.

Digitized by Google

Time has made such Destruction of Books and the Records of Antiquity, that I know it will be thought ridiculous to pretend, that any Author before the Time of *Claudius* mentions the Name of *Brutus*. It will be in vain therefore to alledge from *Pitts*, (*p*) that *Nennius* the Brother of *Cassibellaun*, upon Occasion of a Quarrel between him and *Lud* mention'd in this (*q*) History, for Fear the Memory of *Troy* should be lost in this Island, composed a Book in the Language of his Country, which the above-mention'd *Nennius* Abbot of *Bangor* translated into *Latin*, wherein he largely described the Actions of the *Britains*, and their first Entrance into this Island. And to as little Purpose did the Learned *Caius*, Founder of *Caius* College at *Cambridge*, shew from *Stow* and *Lanquet*, (*r*) that *Gurguntius* the *British* King, did above three hundred Years before *Christ*, compose his *Deflorationes historiæ* Britannicæ, from which *Jeffrey*'s History was partly compiled. The learned Men of the sixteenth Century might have Credulity enough to deliver such Stories: But it seems some of our more modern Criticks, who have discovered more of Antiquity by their own Sagacity, than

(*p*) *De illustr. Script. Britan.* (*q*) P. I. Ch. 17. (*r*) Caius *de antiqu.* Cantabr. L. 1.

Digitized by Google

than our learned Anceſtors were able to do by Records and Monuments, laugh at theſe as idle Inventions. Notwithſtanding there is no Man can pretend to juſtify the Catalogue of *Britiſh* Writers and Books which *Bale* and *Pitts* give us, before the Times of the *Romans*. *Pitts* begins with *Brutus* himſelf for an Author, becauſe of his Epiſtle to *Pandraſus*, which is inſerted in this Hiſtory: But as for his Epiſtles to the baniſhed *Trojans*, exhorting them to ſeek ſome new Place of Settlement, which were pretended to have been tranſlated by *Gildas* the Poet, from *Greek* into *Latin*, and reported to be yet extant in a Manuſcript at *Baliol* College in *Oxford*, that upon Enquiry is found to be a Miſtake. For a learned Friend, whom I deſired to make the Enquiry, has inform'd me, That there is indeed a very fine Manuſcript of *Brutus*'s Epiſtles in *Latin*; but if the Original of them was not altogether ſpurious, and the Fiction of ſome *Greek* Sophiſt, they muſt have been written by the *Roman* and not the *Trojan Brutus*; the Matter of them ſhewing, that they were written to the People of *Pergamos*, to beg their Aſſiſtance towards maintaining the Wars in *Italy*. But what Ruin ſoever Time may have made of Books, it has not yet been able to deſtroy the Traditions concerning thoſe ancient Times, and eſpecially concerning the

Digitized by Google

the Memory of this great Founder of the *Britiſh* Nation; as is evident from the general and certain Knowledge the *Welſh* are ſtill famous for in the Genealogies of their great Families, which they deduce in a continual Series from the moſt ancient to the preſent Times. And that this univerſal Tradition of the *Welſh*, has a higher Original than the Hiſtory publiſhed by *Jeffrey*, is evident from *Giraldus Cambrenſis*; who, though contemporary with *Jeffrey*, ſays, (ſ) "That in his Time the "*Welſh* Bards and Singers could repeat by "Heart from their ancient and authentick "Books, the Genealogy of their Princes "from *Roderic* the Great to *Belin* the "Great, and from him to *Sylvius*, *Aſca-* "*nius*, and *Æneas*, and from *Æneas* lineally "carry up their Pedegree to *Adam*." And accordingly Mr. *Wynne* in the *Appendix* to his Hiſtory of *Wales*, has given us the Pedegree of King *Henry* VII, as drawn by the Commiſſioners appointed by this Prince for that Purpoſe; wherein they make him the Deſcendent of *Brutus*, in the Hundredth Degree, and reckon in the Line of Deſcent moſt of the ancient *Britiſh* Kings mention'd in this Hiſtory, though

(ſ) *Gyrald. deſcript. Camb.* Cap. 3. *apud Camdeni Angl. Norman.*

Digitized by Google

not taken from hence, but (as they profeſs) from the old Chronicles of *Wales*.

XXIX. All theſe Authorities being conſidered, together with what yet remains to be ſaid concerning the *Britiſh* Hiſtory it ſelf, will render it needleſs to ſay much concerning another Allegation *Camden*'s learned Men offer againſt *Jeffrey*'s Integrity, *viz.* (*t*) That he ſeems to have contrived this Founder of the *Britiſh* Nation, in Imitation of *Hunnibaldus*, a fooliſh Writer, who in a barbarous and ignorant Age feigned his *Francio* a *Trojan*, and Son of *Priamus*, to be the Founder of the *French* Nation. And this they think the more probable, becauſe about the ſame Time that *Brutus* was firſt named, which according to them was not before *Jeffrey*'s Time, other Nations, that they might rival each other in Glory, invented their counterfeit Hero's for their ſeveral Founders. For of this, though a ſpecious Allegation to captivate the Reader, it is a ſufficient Confutation, to have ſhewn already that the Name of *Brutus* the *Britiſh* Founder, was well known and recorded in Books extant ſeveral Hundreds of Years before the Time either of *Jeffrey* or *Hunnibaldus*. The Objection in ſhort is no more than this, That

(*t*) *Britan.* P. VII.

Digitized by Google

That as of old, Nations had Recourſe to *Hercules*, in latter Ages to the *Trojans* for their Originals, and ſeveral of them falſly; therefore none of them truly: And I do not ſee why the *Romans* may not be deny'd their Pretenſions for the ſame Reaſon. It might perhaps have been more juſtly ſaid, that the Fiction of *Hunnibaldus*'s Hero, and of the other counterfeit Hero's *Camden* mentions, was made in Imitation of what the *Britains* related concerning their Founder. But it would be entring upon too large a Field of Antiquity, and too much digreſſing from our Subject, to conſider this particularly. This however may be truly ſaid, that the Notion of *Brutus* has been received with general Approbation in this Iſland for many Ages together, and but of late queſtioned, and even yet maintained by ſeveral of our moſt learned Men: Whereas the Fiction of *Hunnibaldus* was too groſs, and carried too many palpable Marks of Forgery, ever to be received by the judicious. And in like Manner if other Nations for Want of Grounds to ſupport their pretended Founders, are now aſhamed of them; this is no Reaſon why the *Britains* ſhould deſpiſe and deſtroy their moſt ancient Records, and give up what their Anceſtors eſteem'd the Honour of their Nation in a meer Compliment to Foreigners. And ſuch were

Digitized by Google

were all the learned Men *Camden* (*u*) mentions as Enemies to our *Britiſh* Founder, *viz. Boccatius, Vives, Hadrianus Junius, Polydore, Buchanan, Vignier, Genebrardus, Molinæus, Bodinus*: But of the Writers of our own Nation, whoſe Authority in this Point would have been much more conſiderable, he had none to produce but *John* of *Wethamſtede*. And he too, notwithſtanding his Obſcurity in the learned World, yet being the firſt Perſon that could raiſe Objections againſt the Story of *Brutus*, muſt be ſtiled a *Man of excellent Judgment*. I might take Notice alſo how much *Camden*'s learned Men are miſtaken in Chronology. For Inſtance, The Story of *Geythelus* and *Scota* Foundreſs of the *Scotch* Nation, may for ought I know be an Invention; but certainly of much ancienter Date than *Jeffrey*'s Time, ſince it is mentioned by ſo ancient a Writer as *Nennius*. (*x*) But theſe Things would lead me too far from my Subject.

XXX. If any one ſhall object againſt this Book's lying ſo long concealed, and think it a Ground for ſuſpecting *Jeffrey* guilty of Forgery, that ſo curious a Hiſtory of the *Britiſh* Affairs ſhould meet with no Body to publiſh it before *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*: Let it be

(*u*) *Britan.* P. VIII. (*x*) *Hiſtor. Britonum.* Cap. 9.

Digitized by Google

be conſidered, that it has been the Fortune of many valuable Books to lay a long Time concealed. One pertinent Inſtance of this we have in that moſt polite Hiſtorian *Quintus Curtius*, who was wholly unknown to the learned World, or at leaſt *(y)* mentioned by no Author, till near a thouſand Years after his own Time: And yet his Book is eſteemed both a genuine and faithful *Hiſtory* of the Actions of *Alexander* the Great. And all Circumſtances conſidered, it is no great Wonder, that the Hiſtory of the *Britains* lay ſo long concealed from the *Engliſh*, who till near the Time this Book was publiſhed, were ſo far from being curious about the Original or Hiſtory of the *Britains*, that they knew but very little of their own Anceſtors the *Saxons*, ſaving what they found in *Bede*. Let it be alſo conſidered, that this was an Interval of Time, wherein all kind of Learning was at the loweſt Ebb over all *Europe*; that the Affairs of *England* were in a very diſtracted Condition, by the continual Conteſts between the *Engliſh* and *Danes*; that the Univerſities were in the ſame low State by Reaſon of the *Daniſh* Fury and Barbarity, ſo that very few Writers appeared; and that upon the Settlement of Affairs after the Conqueſt, when

(y) Vide Præfat. in Q. Curt. per Tellier.

Digitized by Google

when the Study of Letters began ſomewhat to revive, the *Britiſh* Language was ſtill unknown, and among all thoſe Hiſtorians that then at once appeared, *viz. Florence* of *Worceſter*, *William* of *Malmesbury*, *Simeon Dunelmenſis*, *Alfred* of *Beverley*, *Henry* of *Huntington*, and others, not one of them underſtood the *Britiſh* Tongue, nor was conſequently capable of tranſlating and publiſhing the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, when at laſt it happened to be diſcovered, beſide *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*. And ſo far ought his Character to be from ſuffering upon this Score, that according to *Leland*, he was the only Perſon, who by his never to be enough commended Diligence, retrieved from Ruin a very conſiderable Part of the *Britiſh* Antiquity. And after all, though this Hiſtory might then ſeem a new Diſcovery to the *Engliſh*, it was not ſo to the *Welſh*, who knew the greateſt Part of it before.

XXXI. Upon conſidering all theſe Reaſons, I will venture to acknowledge it my Opinion, that one Part of the Charge againſt the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, *viz.* That it is wholly the Forgery of *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*, is entirely groundleſs; and that upon this Score his Character has been very injuriouſly treated by ſome late Writers. But in the remaing Part of this Diſſertation I will not pretend to engage as a Party. For to uſe

Digitized by Google

uſe *Camden*'s Words, (z) "Shall one of my "mean Capacity preſume to give Sentence "in a Point of ſo much Conſequence? I "refer the Controverſy entirely to the "whole Body of learned Antiquaries; and "leaving every Man freely to the Liberty "of his own Judgment, ſhall not be much "concerned at any ones Opinion." I only deſire with the ſame diſintereſted Freedom, to offer what has been or may be ſaid by Way of Apology for this Hiſtory, as he does the Reaſons of learned Men to invalidate it.

XXXII. And in the firſt Place, the profeſſed Advocates of this Hiſtory think it improbable, that the Author of it, whoever he was, intended to obtrude upon the World a Romance for an ancient Hiſtory, conſidering how much he has deviated from the *Roman* Hiſtorians, and that in ſeveral Particulars, wherein neither the Glory of his Country, nor the ſetting off and adorning his own Story, could tempt him to any ſuch Conduct. For though it is a very common Thing for Writers, out of Partiality to their Country, to relate Things in a quite different Manner, from what Foreigners, and eſpecially their Enemies (and ſuch were the *Romans* to the *Britains*) have done, yet in

(z) *Britan.* P. VI.

Digitized by Google

in Matters of Indifference this Disagreement is less common. Where the *Romans* or other Historians were silent there might be room for Invention; but elsewhere nothing could have added more Authority to a feigned History, than to have copied after Authors of established Credit, when there was no Temptation to swerve from them. And therefore this very Disagreement with *Roman* Authors, which is the chief Argument made Use of against the *British* History, is rather an Argument for it, that it was extracted more from *British* than from *Roman* Authors; which though now lost, were in all Probability extant when this History was compil'd. For if it had been compil'd out of *Roman* Authors, why should the Historian have varied from them in so indifferent a Matter as the Names of Persons? As *Androgeus* for *Mandubratius*, *Tenuantius* for *Immanuentius*, *Labienus* for *Laberius*, *Kymbellinus* for *Cunobellinus*, and the like; not to mention those Variations that are easily accounted for from the different Orthography and Pronunciation of the *Britains* and *Romans*; as *Cassivellaun* for *Cassibellaun*, and on the contrary *Trinovantum* for *Trinobantum*. Or why should the *British* Historian make *Tenuantius* or *Immanuentius* the Brother, whom *Cæsar* calls the Father of *Androgeus* or *Mandubratius*? As it is conjectured therefore that the Variation found in these minute

Digitized by Google

nute and indifferent Matters, was owing chiefly to the Authors copying after *British* Writers; so those that attempt to reconcile this History with the *Roman* Historians, make the Difference between the *British* and *Roman* Names of Persons and Places, the chief Foundation of their Conjectures towards it.

XXXIII. In other Places where the Difference is irreconcileable, they esteem it too great a Partiality to the *Roman* Writers, to think them always in the Right, or that whatever is related here inconsistent with their Accounts of Things, must needs be the Authors own Invention. For the chief Intention of the *Roman* Writers is to celebrate the Exploits of their own People; and that a Fondness for their own Glory has carried them sometimes beyond the Bounds of Truth, should be no difficult Concession. But especially about the Affairs of other Nations, wherein they themselves had no immediate Concerns, they may be allowed to write but very transiently, and often from remote and uncertain Relations. Indeed the Sum of the Story here and in the *Roman* Writers is the same, though they often vary in the Names, Circumstances, and sometimes Events of Things. Thus with Respect to *Cæsar*'s Attempt upon this Island, we find here the Substance of his own Story, *viz.* That he made a Descent upon

Digitized by Google

upon *Britain*; that *Caſſibellaun* was Commander in the War againſt him; that his firſt Expedition was unſucceſsful; that upon his Return again he found a great Army of the *Britains* drawn up upon the Banks of the *Thames*, at the Bottom whereof they had faſtened ſharp Stakes to render his Paſſage more difficult; that after this *Androgeus* deſired his Protection againſt *Caſſibellaun*; and in the Concluſion that *Caſſibellaun* moved by his Revolt offered to ſurrender, and make the Iſland tributary. Though in the Circumſtances of the Story, ſeveral Things are mentioned here which *Cæſar* has omitted; as the Exploits of *Nennius*, *Caſſibellaun*'s Sacrifice, the Quarrel between *Hirelglas* and *Evelinus*, the Occaſion of the Revolt of *Androgeus*, and his treacherous Conduct afterwards to his own Countrymen. Some of theſe he might omit through Ignorance, ſome as not pertinent to his Story, and others as not for his Honour to mention. But to ſay they are all feigned becauſe not mentioned by him, is rather an Effect of Prejudice than juſt Reaſoning. The *Roman* Writers themſelves are more impartial. *Aſinius Pollio*, *(a)* thought his Commentaries writ with little either of Diligence or Truth; and blamed his Credulity in moſt Things that were tranſacted

(a) Vide Sueton. de Vita. J. Cæſ. Cap. 56.

Digitized by Google

acted by others, and his erroneous Account, either through Design or Forgetfulness, of what he did himself. And *Lucan* (*b*) so far countenances our Author, as to say with him, that *Cæsar*'s first Departure from the Island was a downright Flight; a Thing which *Cæsar* himself thought very proper to conceal, and by a long Circuit of artful Words to substitute instead of it, (*c*) that he hastened his Return to *Gaul*, on Account of his Ships that had been shattered by a Tempest. And upon the whole Matter, that *Cæsar*'s Success in this Island was not near so great as he himself makes it, we have the Testimony of that grave and faithful Historian *Tacitus*, who says, (*d*) *That he did not conquer* Britain, *but only shew'd it to the* Romans.

XXXIV. But in some other Parts of the History, the Difference is much more wide, wherein the Authority of the *Roman* Historians is justly preferred. For Instance; what is here said concerning the Sons and Successors of *Kymbelinus*, *viz. Guiderius* and *Arviragus*, as also concerning *L. Hamo*, or of the Exploits of *Claudius* and his so long Continuance in this Island, or of *Arviragus* marrying *Genuissa* the Daughter of *Claudius*, and the like, ought not to be regarded so much

(*b*) *Pharsalia.* Lib. 2. (*c*) *Cæsar de bello Gallico.* L. IV. (*d*) *Vita Julij Agricolæ.*

Digitized by Google

as what the *Roman* Writers have delivered, who treat with much more Accuracy about the Transactions of those Times, with which these Accounts are hardly reconcileable. For the immediate Successors of *Cunobellinus* or *Kymbelinus*, were no doubt *Togodumnus* and *Caractacus*. And those that make *Togodumnus* the same with *Guiderius*, *Venusius* with *Arviragus*, and Queen *Cartismandua* with *Gemissa*, whom they suppose the adopted Daughter of *Claudius*, seem to be far from explaining this Difficulty. It is a more probable Conjecture, that these were other Sons of *Kymbelinus*, who might indeed succeed him in the Government, but not immediately, nor till after *Claudius* returned to *Rome*. So that there may be some Footsteps of Truth in this Story, but great Errors both in Chronology and other Circumstances mixt with it. But yet there is no Ground to censure all this for meer Invention; but rather such an irregular Account as the *Britains* were able to preserve of those Times of Distraction and Confusion. In the Reigns of the three following *British* Kings, *viz.* *Marius*, *Coilus*, and *Lucius*, our Author goes on undisturbed by the *Roman* Historians; this being an Interval of Time, wherein the little Knowledge we have remaining of *British* Affairs, is preserved by him alone. But yet so many Testimonies are given of this Account by other succeeding Writers, both

both of our own and other Countries, and such Hints of it by *Bede* and others, that may be supposed nearly Contemporary with our Author, as the Reader may see in Archbishop *Usher*'s *Primordia*, that there can be no great Reason to question the Truth of it. But only here, as in many other Points, Authors considerably differ in Chronology; and the most learned Prelate last mentioned (*e*) reckons up no less than twenty three Opinions, about that most remarkable Time when *Lucius* embraced the *Christian* Faith.

XXXV. But my Design being only to answer general Objections, I shall not attempt to enter into a Comparison of this with other Histories, or to shew particularly in what Instances it may be depended on, and in what not. This is too laborious and difficult a Work, and would make a large Volume; not to mention, that, according (*f*) Dr. *Powel*'s Opinion, it requires a perfect Knowledge of the *Welsh* Language: Besides that it has been already done in a great Measure in the Historical Collections made by our two most learned Antiquaries, (*g*) *Usher* and (*h*) *Stillingfleet*; to which if we add *Leland*'s (*i*) *Assertio Arthuri*, and what the Learned and Ingenious Sir *John*

(*e*) *Primordia*. Cap. 3. (*f*) *Epist. de Hist. Brit. rectè intelligenda.* (*g*) *Primordia.* (*h*) *Origines Britannicæ.* (*i*) Published at *London*. A. D. 1544.

Digitized by Google

Price has writ, towards the eſtabliſhing and clearing of (*k*) *Arthur*'s Story, ſo far as it is juſtly defenſible, there does not much remain to be ſaid in Apology for the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, as to what is related after *Cæſar*'s Time. But one general Objection is, That this Hiſtory ſeems all along to repreſent this Iſland as a Monarchy, ſubject to a long Succeſſion of *Britiſh* Kings; whereas it is manifeſt from the joint Teſtimonies of *Cæſar*, *Tacitus*, *Dion Caſſius*, and even *Gildas*, who was a *Britiſh* Writer himſelf, and the moſt ancient of any we have now extant, that the ancient *Britains* were ſubject to many Kings, and that the *Romans* at laſt reduced a good Part of the Iſland into the Form of a Province. To which it may be very well anſwered, that the principal Scope of this Author, is to give an Account of the Lineal Succeſſion of *Britiſh* Kings from *Brutus* to *Cadwallader*, without Regard to their Extent of *Territory*, or the Actions of other Princes, that were not in this direct Succeſſion. And yet at the ſame Time the Author acknowledges what this Objection contends for, by naming very frequently the Kings of *Cornwal*, *Albania*, *Demetia*, *Venedotia*, and other Places; though it was foreign to his Deſign, to relate the Actions or the Succeſſion

(*k*) *Hiſt. Briten. Defenſ.* p. 109, &c.

Digitized by Google

ſion of Princes in thoſe ſeveral little Governments; or to mention all the *Proprætors* or *Quæſtors*, that were from Time to Time ſent hither by the *Roman* Emperors, to govern the Part that was their Province. So that it is no Wonder we have here no Account of the Tranſactions which *Dion Caſſius*, and *Tacitus* have largely related, of ſuch *Britiſh* Princes as were not in the Line of Succeſſion. At the ſame Time we are alſo to take Notice of a Diſtinction he frequently makes Uſe of, *viz.* That though there were many Princes, there was but one crowned Head, to which the reſt were in ſome Meaſure ſubordinate. And this is partly acknowledged by *Cæſar*, who ſays, (*l*) that the ſupreme Command was by the common Conſent of the *Britiſh* Princes given to *Caſſibellaun*, the ſame whom our Author alſo places in the Line of *Britiſh* Monarchs. Now this is ſo far from being a contemptible or groundleſs Diſtinction, that upon it chiefly did that wiſe and great Prince King *Edward* the Firſt, ground his Claim to a Juriſdiction over the Kingdom of *Scotland*. For he alledged that from all Antiquity, even from the Foundation of the *Britiſh* Monarchy under *Brutus*, the Kings of *Scotland*, and all the other Princes of the Iſland, had been ſubordinate to the Kings of *England*;

(*l*) *De bello Gallico.* L. V.

Digitized by Google

as I shall have Occasion to shew more fully hereafter.

XXXVI. Another general Objection, which has been one great Cause of the present Prejudice against this History, is, that it is intermixed with several Stories that are very absurd and incredible. Now this is a Charge which none of its Advocates deny; but they will not allow the Consequence drawn from it, that therefore these Stories, or even any other Part of the History, were the Invention of the Author: And they think it very great Partiality in learned Men, that they are so severe upon this Author for a Fault, which in the other Writers of that Time they so easily pardon. It is very well known that such fabulous and legendary Stories, were very well receiv'd in those credulous Times, and that the graveſt Writers are not exempt from them. I have given one Instance of it already in *William* of *Newburgh*, and I could produce a vast Number more from *Bede*, *William* of *Malmesbury*, *Matthew Paris*, and other ancient Historians, which are now in greatest Credit among us. And *Alfred* of *Beverley*, who in his Abridgment of this History (*m*) proposes to leave out all that exceeded Belief, has

(*m*) *Alfredi Annales*, L. 1.

Digitized by Google

has notwithstanding inserted the Birth of *Merlin*, the Transformation of *Uther Pendragon*, and several of the most Romantick and incredible Exploits of King *Arthur*; after which I think he could have no great Reason, besides Brevity, for omitting the rest of this Strain. It is certain these Stories, *how* gross soever they may appear now, were very current Traditions among the *Welsh*, and perhaps too of such established Credit, that our Author or the Translator for him, thought he could not well dispense with the Omission of them, without incurring the Displeasure of his Countrymen. *Buchanan* (x) has told us the Rise or first Occasion of one of these gross Traditions; viz. *Uther*'s Transformation; which was, that he seeing the Infamy reflecting on him by Reason of his Wife *Igerna*, could not be concealed; to the End he might extenuate it, they broached a Tale not much unlike that which had been acted in Theatres, about *Jupiter* and *Alcmena*, That *Uther* by the Art of *Merlin* was changed into the Shape of *Gorlois*, and so had his first Night's Lodging with *Igerna*. And this Instance alone may suffice to shew, that these Tales were not invented at the Pleasure of the

(x) *Hist. rerum Scot.* L. V.

Digitized by Google

Author, as are those in Romances; but such as were then vulgarly believed, and handed down to Posterity.

XXXVII. But after all, the Prejudice this History at present lies under, with Respect to what it relates after the coming of *Cæsar*, is but inconsiderable, had the former Part of the Story been but omitted; for it is this chiefly that destroys the Credit of all the rest. The Objections of *Camden*'s learned Men are levelled only against this Part; and the chief Intention of this Discourse is to apologize for it. "Their first Objection, says *Camden*, (*o*) "they draw from the Age wherein the "Things here related, are said to have "been done, and peremptorily assert that "all is purely fabulous (the sacred Histo-"ries excepted) whatsoever is delivered "by Historians, as done before the first "Olympiad, *i. e.* the Year 770 before the "Birth of our Saviour. Now the Things "which are told us, concerning *Brutus*, "preceed that Period by above three hun-"dred Years. This Exception they ground "upon the Authority of *Varro*, the most "Learned among the *Roman* Writers, with "whom the first Period of Time, which "was from the Creation to the Deluge, "bears

(*o*) *Britannia*, p. VI.

Digitized by Google

" bears the Title of Ἄδηλον, *i. e.* obſcure " and uncertain, ſo called from our Igno- " rance of the Tranſactions of thoſe Times. " The ſecond which was from the Deluge " to the firſt Olympiad, he calls Μυθικὸν, " *i. e.* fabulous, becauſe moſt of thoſe Hi- " ſtories are fabulous, even of the *Greek* " and *Roman* Authors, the learned Part of " the World, much more among a barba- " rous and unlearned People, ſuch as were " doubtleſs, in thoſe Times, all the Inha- " bitants of theſe Northern Parts." But this Objection unfairly repreſents *Varro*'s Notion; who *(p)* does not ſay, that moſt of the Hiſtories of the *Muthick* Age, but only that many Things related in it are fabulous; and much leſs does he draw ſuch a Conſequence or rather Inconſiſtency from it, *as that all is purely fabulous whatſoever is delivered by Hiſtorians before the firſt* Olympiad; thus contrary to all the Rules of Logick making the Concluſion more extenſive than the Premiſſes. What he chiefly intended was no Doubt the Fables invented by *Greek* Poets, concerning their Gods and Hero's, in which notwithſtanding are preſerved ſome Lines of true Hiſtory, and at the ſame Time are couched (according to the Opinion of very learned Men)

(p) See *Cenſorinus de die natali.* Cap. 21.

Digitized by Google

Men) the Myſteries of all Philoſophy. But even the true Hiſtory (ſetting apart all Fables) of *Greece* it ſelf is, by the Conſent of all Writers, allowed to be much ancienter than the *Olympiads*; and much ancienter ſtill is what they called the *Barbarick* Hiſtory, *viz.* of the *Egyptians*, *Scythians*, *Chaldeans*, *Phenicians*, and ſome other Nations. Otherwiſe in vain do we ſet ſo great a Value upon what *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Juſtin* and others, who would not be thought Writers of Fables, have delivered concerning thoſe ancient Times.

XXXVIII. And as to the Northern Nations, among whom this Objection ſuppoſes a greater Barbarity and Ignorance reigned, it is well known that the *Swedes*, the moſt Northern of *European* Nations, and moſt remote from the ancient Seats of Knowledge, pretend to run up their Hiſtory to the Deluge, or at leaſt to *Eric* the Firſt, whom they ſuppoſe to have lived within two hundred Years after it. But let it be granted, that the Vanity of Nations in boaſting the Antiquity of their Original, may have carried them into an exceſſive and unwarrantable Credulity; the People of this Nation at leaſt ſeem to have a plauſible Pretence to ſome Knowledge of their Original, and of the Tranſactions of thoſe more ancient Times, ſince (as I ſhall preſently ſhew) they

Digitized by Google

they always had among them Men of great Attainments in the moſt ſublime Parts of Knowledge. Admitting alſo that the Story of thoſe Times is very imperfect, and intermixt with Fables, it is too great a Diſregard of Antiquity, to give it up entirely, and repreſent all that vaſt Tract of Time as a meer *Chaos*. For that grave and excellent Hiſtorian *Livy*, though he (*q*) owns himſelf in Suſpence, and would neither undertake to aſſert nor confute, what had been deliver'd concerning the *Roman* Hiſtory before the Building of *Rome*, as being Traditions which he ſays are founded rather upon Poetical Fables, than any uncorrupt Monuments of the Actions that were done, did not however think it below him to relate them ſuch as they were. But *Camden* on the contrary (*r*) builds ſo much upon the Authority of this miſrepreſented Notion of *Varro*, concerning the three diſtinct Periods of Time, that for our Affairs he has aſſigned a much ſhorter Period, and would not have our Hiſtorians begin their Hiſtories of this Iſland any higher than *Cæſar*'s Attempt upon it. And thus he not only excludes the whole Liſt of ancient *Britiſh* Kings, but alſo thoſe of *Scotland* too from the Time of

(*q*) *Liv. Præfat. ad Hiſt.* (*r*) *Britannia*, p. xxxviii.

Digitized by Google

of King *Fergus*, who was contemporary with *Alexander* the *Great*; a Crime which the *Scots* will not eaſily forgive him, who pretend to have very authentick Accounts of their Affairs from the Reign of that Prince, and upon them build (what they ſo much value themſelves upon) the Antiquity of their Royal Line. And though this Advice of *Camden* has been followed by the Generality of our Hiſtorians ſince his Time; yet *Milton* gives no contemptible Reaſons for his own Conduct in purſuing the old beaten Tract, by alledging (*f*) that we cannot be eaſily diſcharg'd of *Brutus* and his Line, with the whole Progeny of Kings, to the Entrance of *Julius Cæſar*; ſince it is a Story ſupported by Deſcents of Anceſtry, and long continued Laws and Exploits, not plainly ſeeming to be borrowed or deviſed, which on the common Belief, have wrought no ſmall Impreſſion; and alſo defended by many, and deny'd utterly by few. And he concludes with ſaying, "Thoſe old and inborn Names of "ſucceſſive Kings, never any to have been "real Perſons, or done in their Lives at "leaſt ſome Part of what hath been ſo "long remembred, cannot be thought "without too ſtrict an Incredulity.

XXXIX.

(*f*) Milton's *Hiſt. of* Britain. B. I.

Digitized by Google

XXXIX. But in the next Place, *Camden*'s learned Men alledge, (*t*) "That this "Relation, *viz.* of *Brutus* and his Succeſſors in thoſe ancient Times, is not "confirmed by the Authority of any proper Writer, which in all Hiſtory muſt "be allow'd to be the Thing moſt material. Now they call thoſe proper Writers, who have Antiquity and Learning "agreeable; and in Proportion to thoſe "they give more or leſs Credit. But to "all this ſort of Authors, as well as to the "ancient *Britains* themſelves, they confidently aver, that the very Name of "*Brutus* was perfectly unknown." And ſome have carried this Objection ſtill farther, by repreſenting the ancient *Britains* as a rude, ſimple, and ignorant People, and conſequently uncapable of tranſmitting the Memory of their Original, or of the Tranſactions of their Times to Poſterity. In Anſwer to this, I have ſhewn already, that the Memory of *Brutus* was preſerved by a *Britiſh* Writer as ancient as the Days of *Claudius* the Emperor; and alſo have given Inſtances of ſome other Writers that are yet extant, by whom it was tranſmitted to after Ages. And it has been ſhewn by the Advocates of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, that

(*t*) *Britann.* p. VII.

Digitized by Google

that it is unreasonable to expect Authors of much greater Antiquity for Vouchers of this Story. For the Beginning of these Transactions was but a few Years after the Destruction of *Troy*, when *Greece* itself had none that could be properly call'd Historians, and only a few Poets, who sung the Praises of their Gods and Hero's: And as the Historians of *Greece* derived their Knowledge of those ancient Times from them; so it is probable the first *British* Historians, whoever they were, took their first Memoirs from the Songs of their *Bards*, whose Business, in like Manner as that of the ancient *Grecian* Poets, was to make Enquiry into the Genealogies and noble Exploits of their great Men, to celebrate them in Heroick Verse, and sing them to their Harps. It would be needless to shew the Antiquity of this Order of Men among the *Britains*, since it is acknowledged by all: And it has been through all succeeding Ages kept up among them, and not yet quite wore out among the *Welsh*.

XL. But besides these Songs of the *Bards*, which all the *Welsh* Writers agree gave an Account of *Brutus* and the succeeding *British* Kings, the Author of this History quotes other Historians, extant before his own Time, for some Part of what he relates. And it is thought the whole History is only a Collection from the Songs of the Bards, the Writings

Digitized by Google

Writings of *Gildas*, and other *British* Historians. And though these Histories are not now to be found, the Author ought no more to be charged with Forgery or Invention upon that Score, than is *Herodotus* or any other ancient Historian, who at present wants Vouchers as well as he, the former Writers concerning those Times being now lost. And we may upon the same Grounds look upon the History of *Alexander* the Great as a Romance, because the Writers of it, *viz.* *Curtius*, *Plutarch* and *Arrian*, did not live till several Hundred Years after his Death, and nothing now remains of those ancienter Writers from whom they collected it. That there was such a *British* Writer as *Gildas*, who treated of the Contention between *Lud* and *Nennius*, who translated the *Molmutian* Laws out of *British* into *Latin*, and also related other Particulars about the Times before the coming of *Cæsar*; and that he was a different Person from *Gildas Sapiens*, cannot reasonable be doubted. The Words of *Nennius* already quoted, shew the ancient *Britains* had both Writings and Traditions concerning their Affairs, and it was from them he extracted his Account of *Brutus*. Why may it not then be thought, that *Gildas* was one of those Writers, especially since some of his Pieces now lost are mentioned by *Hoveden*, *Lilius*, *Giraldus*, and

Kirunnius,

Virunnius, and that we have the joint Teſtimonies of *Leland*, *Bale*, and *Pitts*, that the Treatiſes aſcribed to him in this Hiſtory were his genuine Works? But in Oppoſition to all this *Camden* alledges, that the other *Gildas*, ſurnamed *Sapiens*, who was a *Britain*, and whoſe ſmall Treatiſe *de Excidio Britanniæ* is yet extant, (*u*) "declares himſelf not well ſatisfied whether the ancient *Britains* had any Records or Writings at all, wherein they had tranſmitted their Hiſtory and Original to Poſterity. And therefore he plainly confeſſes, (*x*) *That he took all out of Foreign Writers, and not out of any Writings or Records left by his own Countrymen. For if there had been any ſuch, they were in his Time quite loſt, having either been burnt by the Enemy at Home, or carried away by the Exiles into Foreign Parts.*" Now admitting this Teſtimony of *Gildas*, what hinders but that even according to him there might have been ſome Pieces of the ancient *Britiſh* Hiſtory carried over into Foreign Countries? For this *Britiſh* Hiſtory it ſelf, though writ after the Time of *Gildas*, was brought from *Armorica*, and perhaps originally compiled there

(*u*) *Britann.* p. VII. (*x*) *Hiſt. Gildæ*, Cap. 2. *apud Gale Hiſt. Brit. Scriptores* 15.

Digitized by Google

there out of ancienter Writers, which according to this Teſtimony might have been carried abroad, and moſt likely of all to *Armorica* the Seat of the *Britiſh* Exiles. Admitting, again, that on Account of the long Wars and Confuſions in *Britain*, by the Invaſions of the *Romans*, *Picts*, and *Saxons*, great Deſtruction had been made of Books, Records and Monuments, from whence their Hiſtory might be deduced; muſt therefore ſo much Authority be allowed to the Teſtimony of this one Man, as to conclude there were none extant, only becauſe they did not come to his Knowledge? Though he had not met with any ſuch in *Britain*, *Nennius* who was his Junior (*y*) declares he had. It is farther obſervable, that this is no poſitive Evidence: He only doubts whether there had been any ſuch Writings or no; for otherwiſe why does he talk of their being burnt, or deſtroy'd, or carry'd off into Foreign Countries? But after all there is no great Streſs to be laid upon his Teſtimony: For *Leland*'s Character of him ſeems to me to be very juſt, (*z*) That he was indeed a pious Monk, and a learned Divine, but was ſo far from having a thorough Knowledge of the ancient Affairs

f of

(*y*) Nennij *Præfat. in Hiſt. Brit.* (*z*) Leland *Comment. de Script. Brit.*

Digitized by Google

of *Britain*, that he has only inſerted in his little Book a few Things, and thoſe ſhort, obſcure and confuſed, and, as it were, taken off from the Surface.

XLI. And therefore it is unreaſonably objected by *(a) Polydore Virgil*, and *(b) Aylet Sammes*, that the former Part of this Hiſtory relating to *Brutus* and the *Britiſh* Kings muſt be groundleſs, becauſe of the Silence of this Author concerning them. For in the firſt Place it is plain to any one that reads his Book, that his Deſign was not ſo much to write the Hiſtory, as to relate the Calamities of his Country, the better to expoſe the Vices and notorious Wickedneſs of his Countrymen, and to ſhew how juſtly they had brought thoſe divine Judgments upon themſelves. The chief Subject of his Book, is in ſhort a very ſevere Invective againſt his own Countrymen, and what is hiſtorical in him is but an inconſiderable Part of his ſmall Treatiſe. But beſides he profeſſes, *(c)* that he purpoſely omits mentioning what had paſſed in *Britain* before the Time of the *Romans*, and it is only concerning the State of *Britain* after the Invaſion of the *Romans*, that he uſes the Words *Camden* quotes out of him;

(a) *Anglicæ Hiſtoriæ*. Lib. I. (b) *Britannia antiqua illuſtrata*. (c) Gildæ *Hiſt.* Cap. 2.

Digitized by Google

him; from whence therefore no Concluſion can be drawn concerning the Books, the Hiſtories, or the Learning of the *Britains* before that Time.

XLII. There are however very authentick Teſtimonies concerning the Learning of the ancient *Britains*, eſpecially among the *Druids*. And though the *Roman* Eloquence and Politeneſs was not introduced among them till the Time of *Julius Agricola*, yet it is plain from the Confeſſion of the *Roman* Writers themſelves, that as they were a gallant and brave, ſo were many of them a wiſe and knowing People, and had from of old been much celebrated for their Attainments in the moſt ſolid and uſeful Parts of Knowledge. The Account *Cæſar* gives of the *Druids* is a ſufficient Proof of this; ſince according to him (*d*) they were the Interpreters of the Myſteries of Religion, the Inſtructors of the Youth, the Determiners of all publick and private Controverſies, as alſo of Rewards and Puniſhments, and great Proficients in the moſt ſublime Parts of Philoſophy, being ſuch as could make Diſcourſes to their Scholars, concerning the Stars and their Motions, concerning the Magnitude of the Heaven and the Earth,

(*d*) Cæſar *de bello Gallico.* L. VI.

Digitized by Google

the Nature of Things, and the Power and Majesty of the immortal Gods. And that Men so curious and knowing in other Things, should be ignorant of one of the most useful Parts of Learning, the History of their own Affairs, or that they should leave no Kind of Memoirs concerning the Transactions of their Times, cannot with any Colour of Reason be pretended. It is indeed alledged by some from this very Passage of *Cæsar*, that they did not commit their Knowledge to Writing, so that we can have but oral Tradition at the best for any Knowledge we pretend to of those Times. But the Reader may presently be satisfied of the Insufficiency of this Argument, by consulting the Passage it self; from whence it appears, that indeed the Mysteries of their Religion they did not commit to Writing, but caused their Scholars to learn them by Heart; though in all other Matters both publick and private (among which we may justly reckon the History of their Affairs) they used *Greek* Characters. And if the *Britains* were capable, and had the Means of transmitting their History to Posterity, before the Time of the *Romans*, how much more ought we to conclude this of them afterwards, when the *Roman* Arts and Eloquence came to be in Vogue among them? So that without pretending to give a Catalogue of their Writers

Digitized by Google

Writers in those ancient Times, as *Leland*, *Bale*, and *Pitts*, have done, it is sufficient for our present Purpose to have shewn, that in all Probability they had Writers, and those of History too among them.

XLIII. But then here immediately follows another grand Objection, That if the Memory of *Bratus*, or of the *Britains* being originally *Trojans*, had been thus constantly preserved, it can hardly be supposed, but that so curious and learned a Person as *Cæsar*, or at least some of the *Roman* Writers would have made mention of it: Whereas in these Points there is among all of them a profound Silence, and rather an Intimation to the contrary, that the *Britains* were either *Aborigines*, or Descendents of the *Gauls*. As to *Cæsar*'s Silence it is answered, that the Stay he made in *Britain* was short, and that Time spent in Affairs of greater Importance than such Matters of Curiosity; that he neither understood the Language of the *Britains*, nor perhaps thought such a People as were then reputed Barbarians, capable of giving any Account of their History or Original, or if they did, had little Regard to it; that he composed his Commentaries a long Time after his leaving *Britain*, when his Invention was to help him out where his Memory failed him, and so propose his Conjectures (suitable to the Notions of the *Pagans*) concerning the Ori-

Digitized by Google

ginal, instead of giving any well grounded History of the *Britains*; and lastly, that his Commentaries themselves were censured by *Asinius Pollio*, as being writ neither with Diligence nor Truth. And as to all the other *Roman* Writers, it does not appear that any of them had ever been in *Britain*, but that they had taken their Accounts of *British* Affairs from such Memoirs, as had been from Time to Time transmitted to the Emperors by the chief Officers in this Province, if they even had so good Authority as this for what they writ; and it is not to be presumed that these Officers entertained their Masters with such Curiosities, as the ancient History of the *Britains*, but only informed them of what immediately concerned the State of their own Affairs. So that where we find the *Roman* Writers digress so far from their Subject, as to treat of the Original of the *Britains*, we may conclude they had no other Authority for what they said but their own Conjectures, or at best some very uncertain Reports. We find by the false Accounts (*e*) *Tacitus* and (*f*) *Justin* have given of the Original and Encrease of the *Jews*, what little Dependance is to be placed

(*e*) *Historiarum*, Lib. 5. (*f*) *Pompeij Trogi Epitome Hist.* L. 36.

Digitized by Google

ced on what they relate concerning distant Countries, when those Relations are foreign to the Subject of their own Affairs. And if so great an Historian as *Tacitus* committed such Errors concerning the Original of so ancient and famous a Nation as that of the *Jews*, and that a Time when there were a great Number of that Nation at *Rome*, by whom he might have been better informed; we cannot reasonably expect from him, and much less from the other *Roman* Writers, who were of a far lower Class, any authentick Account concerning the more obscure, the more remote, and but lately discovered Nation of the *Britains*, and whereof very few if any beside Captives and Hostages were in their Times at *Rome* to give them better Information. Now as we believe the *Jews* in the Subject of their own Affairs more than the *Romans*; and since there were among the *Britains* People as capable of writing their own History as the *Romans*, what Reason can be given why in *British* Affairs *Roman* Authors are now solely consulted, and the Writings and Traditions of the ancient *Britains* wholly neglected and despised?

XLIV. To this perhaps it will be answered, that the very Foundation of this History, which is the Story of *Brutus*, is inconsistent with what *Roman* Writers,

Digitized by Google

(who in this Point at leaſt muſt be allowed a greater Authority,) have delivered concerning the Children and Deſcendents of *Æneas*; and conſequently that the Superſtructure may be juſtly ſuſpected. For the *Roman* Hiſtorians, and eſpecially *Livy*, *Meſſala Corvinus*, and *Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus*, who have been moſt exact in their Accounts of thoſe ancient Times, make no Mention of *Brutus* the Son of *Sylvius* King of the *Latins*. And it is the Objection of *John* of *Wethamſtede*, that *(g) Man of excellent Judgment*, the firſt Oppoſer of the Story of *Brutus*, that *Aſcanius*, according to ſeveral Authors, had no Son whoſe proper Name was *Sylvius*. For they give us an Account of but one that ever he had, to wit, *Julius*, from whom afterward the *Julian* Family had its Original. But to all this Sir *John Price (b)* has very well anſwered, That though the *Roman* Writers make no mention of *Brutus* the Son of *Sylvius*; yet we ought not to pay ſo much Deference to their Authority, as to argue, that whatever they have paſſed over in Silence concerning Matters, whereof indeed they do not profeſs to treat, muſt be falſe and groundleſs. For it being the chief Buſineſs

(g) *Camd. Britan.* P. VIII. (b) *Hiſt. Britan. Defenſ.* p. 42.

Digitized by Google

Buſineſs of thoſe Authors, only to mention thoſe of the Royal Race who ſucceeded to the Kingdom of *Italy*, it was foreign to their Purpoſe to relate what other Children they had. And even this Point itſelf of the direct Succeſſion of their Princes, was a Matter of ſo great Antiquity and Obſcurity, that they do not agree, whether *Sylvius*, who, we ſay, was the Father of *Brutus*, was the Son or Grandſon of *Æneas*. And if they were uncertain of the Matter of which they profeſſedly treat, we cannot expect much Light from them concerning *Brutus* or any other collateral Children, whom they had no Occaſion to mention. Notwithſtanding this hinders not, but that the *Britains* might have more carefully tranſmitted to Poſterity the Memory of their illuſtrious Founder.

XLV. *Buchanan*'s Objections will give us no great Trouble, moſt of them being Chimerical and foreign to the Subject, though propoſed by him with an Air of Triumph. He pretends to confute the Story of *Brutus* by the Circumſtances of it; a very improper Undertaking for one who knew ſo little of it, and in all Probability (as *Sheringham* (*i*) obſerves) had never read it. Neither do its Advocates contend for the Truth of

(*i*) *De Angl. Orig.* p. 134.

Digitized by Google

of all its Circumſtances, ſome of them allowing that it is ſet off and adorned with a Mixture of Poetical Fiction, but yet ſo as that there is a Foundation of Truth, which is even allow'd in moſt Poems and mances. He begins with Queries, that evidenly ſhew his Ignorance of the Story; *viz.* (*k*) With what Forces, with what Commerce of Language could this *Brutus*, whom he ſtiles the *Parricide*, penetrate ſo far into *Britain?* And again, Whether came he by Land or by Sea? The Hiſtory itſelf is clear enough in all theſe Points; and his Buſineſs was to confute the Relation as it really is, and not to ſtart Objections againſt a Story of *Brutus*, that he had only form'd in his own Imagination. But his Endeavour is to ſhew how difficult it was for *Brutus* to croſs the *Alps*, as ſuppoſing him to come directly from *Italy*; how improbable that ſuch a wild ſort of People as the *Alban* Shepherds, whom he fancies to have been *Brutus*'s Followers, would undertake ſuch a bold Attempt, eſpecially when the Affairs of *Italy* were at ſo low an Ebb; and how unlikely they ſhould come ſo ſoon to forget their native *Latin* Tongue. Whereas had he but known ſo much of the Story, as that *Brutus* had been

(*k*) *Buchanan Rerum Scoticarum Hiſt.* L. 2.

Digitized by Google

been baniſhed into *Greece*; that he came from thence attended, not with *Alban* Shepherds, but the exiled *Trojans* of that Country; that his Voyage to *Britain* was by Sea; and that their Language was a Dialect of the *Greek*, whereof there is a great Mixture in the *Welſh* Tongue to this Day; all this Trouble would have been ſaved, and perhaps he would not have thought any Attempt too hazardous for Men in their deſperate Circumſtances. And this very Conſideration would have ſolved the Difficulty he objects about their coming by Sea, unleſs he deny'd alſo the Voyages of *Antenor*, *Æneas* and *Ulyſſes*, which laſt is ſaid by *Solinus* (*l*) to have come as far as this Iſland, as appeared by a Votive Altar in *Caledonia* inſcribed with *Greek* Letters.

XLVI. He tells us farther, that he will not be nice in Enquiry why the Oracle of *Diana* was unknown to Poſterity, when the Oracles of *Faunus*, of *Sibylla*, and the *Præneſtine* Vaticinations were in ſo great Credit. But *Sheringham*, (*m*) who has been nice in Enquiry, has found that the Oracle of *Diana* was very well known to the *Greeks*, and that ſhe was a Goddeſs worſhipped by the *Trojans*, ſince according to *Strabo*, ſhe

(*l*) *Polyhiſtor.* Cap. 22. *Edit. Salmaſ.* (*m*) *De Angl. Orig.* Cap. 6.

Digitized by Google

ſhe (n) had an Oracle in *Cilicia*, as alſo in (o) *Adraſtia* a Town of *Troas*: Nay farther, that, according to *Pauſanias*, ſhe directed the baniſhed *Trojans* which Way to purſue, when they were in Queſt of a new Place of Settlement. Again, becauſe *Buchanan* had found the Prayer of *Brutus* to *Diana* and her Anſwer to him in *Latin* Verſe, he learnedly ſhews, that this was a Language not then underſtood in the World; which was all unneceſſary Labour, if he had but known, that the Original Compoſition was *Greek*; and that according to (p) *Verunnius* the Verſes were tranſlated out of *Greek* into *Latin*. But he ſuppoſes that when *Brutus* firſt arrived, according to the Anſwer of *Diana*'s Oracle, the Iſland muſt have been uninhabited. A very plain Diſcovery, ſays he, of the Monks Forgery! *For where then, I pray, were thoſe portentous Figments of* Gogmagog *and* Tintagol, *and other frightful Names of Men, invented for Terror ſhall I ſay, or Laughter rather?* But where did he find this frightful Man *Tintagol* at *Brutus*'s Arrival, or any Time elſe? The Truth is, this portentous Figment is nothing but the real Name of a Village in *Cornwal*, and that not mention'd before

the

(n) *Strabo Geogra.* L. 15. (o) *Ibid.* Lib. 13. (p) *Britannica Hiſtor.* Lib. I.

Digitized by Google

the eighth Book of this Hiſtory. But is not a confident Ignorance which commits ſuch Blunders, much more ridiculous than any Abſurdity in this Book? Taking it alſo for granted in his own Imagination, that the whole Number of *Brutus*'s Followers would ſcarce make one mean Colony, he is not able to conceive how they ſhould in the Space of twenty Years, people an Iſland the biggeſt in the World, and furniſh it not only with Villages and Cities, but ſet up in it three large Kingdoms alſo, and in a little Time grow ſo numerous, that *Britain* could not contain them, but they were forced to tranſport themſelves into the large Country of *Germany*. But how did he know they were ſo mean a Colony? The Hiſtory tells us, that at their ſetting out from *Greece*, they made up a Fleet of three hundred and twenty four Sail, and that after this they were joined by *Corineus* and all his Followers, and that with all their Forces together they were able to oppoſe the whole Power of *Gaul*, before their Arrival here. And as for Villages and Cities he ſpeaks of, we find here the Mention of no other City but *London*, during *Brutus*'s Reign, nor ever any ſuch Account as the Iſland being forced to disburthen it ſelf when over-ſtock'd with Inhabitants. *And yet*, ſays he at laſt, that is, notwithſtanding all theſe

Digitized by Google

theſe ſo pertinent and ſo ſtrong Objections, *credulous ſhall I ſay? or not rather ſottiſh Perſons, do pride themſelves with a pretended Eminency of Original, which none of their Neighbours will envy them for.*

XLVII. I have now, according to what I propoſed, conſidered the moſt material Objections of *Camden* and other learned Men againſt this Hiſtory; in all which (if we may rely on the Judgment of our moſt learned Antiquary *Sheringham*, who has made the deepeſt Reſearch into the Original as well of the *Britiſh* as of the *Engliſh* Nation, and whoſe Treatiſe on this Subject is generally allowed to be the very beſt Performance of this Kind) there is nothing of any Moment to ſhake the Credit of the fundamental Part of this Hiſtory. And as the ſame Author farther obſerves, there ought more Regard to be had to the ancient Hiſtories of the *Britains*, than to the Dreams and Conjectures of modern Writers. For thoſe that oppoſe this Hiſtory, and look upon this Original of the *Britains* from *Brutus* and the *Trojans*, as an unſupportable Fiction of latter Ages, have no other Hiſtory to ſubſtitute in the Room of it, nor aſſign any Original that is built on any better Foundation than their own Conjectures: Whereas the Original this Hiſtory pretends to aſſign the *Britiſh* Nation, is not only a Notion of very great Antiquity, and

Digitized by Google

and ſupported by the Teſtimonies of many Ages, and of a vaſt Number of Authors, but alſo in itſelf more probable than any new Conjecture whatſoever, when all Circumſtances are conſidered.

XLVIII. We have the joint Teſtimonies of many ancient Authors, that the Fame of the *Trojan* War drew together great Numbers of People from moſt Nations of the World, either to the Seige, or to the Defence of that renowned City; and that the *Trojans* themſelves upon the Ruin of their State, being forced to quit their native Country, came to be diſperſed through ſeveral Nations. Some of them joined together in a Body, and followed the Fortunes of their chief Commanders, in Order to find ſome new Place of Settlement: Others retreated with thoſe Nations that had been their Auxiliaries, and ſo perhaps incorporated themſelves with them: And others again were led Captives by the Enemy. So that it is no Wonder if after this War there were ſeveral new Colonies of them in many Nations of the World; and what Pretenſions ſome Part of the *Gauls*, and even of the *Engliſh* themſelves, may have to a *Trojan* Original, the Reader may ſee in (q) *Sheringham*. But the two chief *Trojan*

(q) *De Angl. gentis Orig.* Cap. 6.

Digitized by Google

Trojan Leaders, that ſought for a new Settlement, were *Antenor* and *Æneas*; the former of which was the Founder of the *Venetians*, the other of the *Romans*; and that theſe two Nations juſtly lay Claim to a *Trojan* Original, is what very few deny; and yet they have no other Support for it but ancient Poetical Tradition, the Original of Hiſtory it ſelf, eſpecially among the *Romans*, being much later than the Times when thoſe Colonies firſt ſettled there. And why are not the conſtant and uninterrupted Traditions of the *Bards*, as good an Argument for us to believe, that *Brutus* being baniſhed into *Greece*, brought from thence into *Britain* a Colony of the *Trojans*, that had been kept in Slavery there, eſpecially if we conſider the many Circumſtances that corroborate theſe Traditions?

XLIX. *Sheringham* has very learnedly ſhewn, that the ancient *Britains* wrote the ſame Character, ſpoke nearly the ſame Language, had the ſame Notions of Religion, and the ſame Manners and Cuſtoms, as the *Greeks*, and conſequently as the *Trojans*, ſince the Difference between thoſe two Nations in theſe Particulars was but very ſmall, as all learned Men agree. That the ancient *Britains*, eſpecially the *Druids*, uſed *Greek* Letters in the Matters they thought fit to communicate, I have already,

Digitized by Google

ready ſhewn from *Ceſar*. And as to the great Affinity between the *Britiſh* and *Greek* Language, that is the Subject of a Dictionary, and not of a Diſcourſe of this Nature. The curious Reader may be ſatisfied in this Point, by conſulting Dr. *Davies*'s Dictionary, or Mr. *Parry*'s (r) Eſſay towards a *Britiſh Etymologicon*. Let it only be obſerved in general, that as the Author of this Hiſtory (ſ) informs us, the *Britains* at their firſt Arrival in this Iſland ſpoke the *Trojan* Language, which he calls *Græcum curvum*, that is, a rough Dialect of the *Greek* Tongue; ſo the chief Difference ſtill between a great Number of Words of the *Welſh* and *Greek* Language, wherein any Affinity is diſcovered, conſiſts in this, that thoſe of the former have a more rough or harſh Sound than the latter. As to the Religion of the *Britains*, the *Druids*, who were the Miniſters of it, derived both their Name and in ſome Part their Inſtitution from the *Greeks*. *Pliny* the Elder acknowledges the *Greek* Etymology of the Name, telling us (t) how they choſe out Groves of Oaks, and performed no Rites of their Religion without Oaken Leaves, ſo that from hence, according to *Greek* Interpretation, they ſeem to have derived the Name

(r) Publiſhed in Mr. *Lhwyd*'s *Archæologia Britannica*. Tit. 8.
(ſ) B. I. Chap. 16. (t) *Plin. Hiſt. Nat.* L. 16. Cap. 44.

Digitized by Google

of *Druids*; the *Greek* Word for an Oak being Δρῦς, and the *Britiſh Derwen*. And the Inſtitution of *Druids* reſembles very much that of the Nymphs called the *Dryades*, whom the ancient *Greeks* ſuppoſed the Preſidents of Trees and eſpecially Oaks, called for this Reaſon by the *Romans* *Nymphæ querquetulanæ*. And not only the Name and Inſtitution, but the Doctrine alſo of the *Britiſh Druids*, was conformable to that of the *Greeks*. They had according to *Cæſar* (*u*) the ſame Notions of the Gods, and of their ſeveral Offices, and taught in like Manner the Doctrine of the Tranſmigration of Souls. *Britains* as well as *Greeks* had their Poets or Bards, to celebrate in Verſe the Exploits, the Marriages, and funeral Exequies of their great Men; and both Nations made Uſe of military Chariots in their Wars. And Sir *John Price* (*x*) obſerves from *Giraldus Cambrenſis*, that many ancient Names of *Trojans* and *Grecians* are preſerved among the *Welſh* to this Day; as *Oeneus*, *Rheſus*, *Æneas*, *Hector*, *Achilles*, *Heliodorus*, *Theodorus*, *Ajax*, *Evander*, *Ulyſſes*, *Helena*, *Eliſſa*, *Wendolana*; to which *Sheringham* (*y*) has added *Paris*, *Mynes*, *Deiphius*, *Hyllus*, *Cobus*, which Anſwer to *Par*, *Myn*, *Dich*, *Hyll*, *Cob*. And theſe laſt men-

(*u*) *De bello Gallico* L. 6. (*x*) *Hiſt. Brit. Defenſ.* p. 60. (*y*) *De Angl. gentis origini.* Cap. I.

Digitized by Google

mention'd Names he ſhews have a great Affinity with the *Britiſh* Language. For *Par* in *Britiſh* ſignifies a Spear, *Myn* a Kid, *Dich* ſtrong and mighty, *Hyll* fierce, *Cob* one that beats or knocks down. And if a Reſemblance in theſe and the like Inſtances, ſhall be eſteemed too weak an Argument for us to conclude theſe two Nations were originally the ſame; let it only be balanced with what *Camden* (z) has alledged in Support of his Conjecture, *viz.* That the *Britains* were originally the ſame Nation with the *Gauls*; or with what *Bochart* and *Aylet Sammes* have with much leſs Shew of Reaſon pretended, of their being the Deſcendants of the ancient *Phænicians*. Theſe have no other Support for their Conjectures, but a Reſemblance in ſome few Inſtances of this Kind: Whereas in Confirmation of the *Trojan* Original, not only the Reſemblance of the *Britains* and *Greeks* is found greater in itſelf, but the Thing is alſo teſtified ſo to be in Fact by ancient Hiſtory and Tradition.

L. But beſides theſe Probabilities and Teſtimonies concerning this *Trojan* Original, if we look upon it only as a Conjecture, it is at leaſt not liable to ſo great an Objection, as is that which *Camden* propoſes,

(z) *Britannia*, p. XII, &c.

Digitized by Google

poſes, whatever kind Reception his has met with. For the *Britains* and *Gauls* were neighbouring Nations, and maintained a conſtant Intercouſe and Commerce with each other. The *Britains*, if we may believe *Cæſar*, (*a*) aſſiſted the *Gauls* in all their Wars; and the *Gauls* (*b*) on the other Hand, ſent their Youth into *Britain*, to be inſtructed in the Learning of the *Druids*, which Order of Men had their Original in *Britain*, and was from thence carry'd over into *Gaul*. It is no Wonder therefore if there was found ſome Affinity in the Cuſtoms and Languages of theſe two Nations. But this is no more an Argument that the *Britains* and *Gauls* were originally the ſame People, than that the *Engliſh* and *French* were, becauſe they have alſo the ſame if not a greater Affinity in their Cuſtoms and the Words of their Language. Whereas ſuch an Affinity between two ſo remote Nations as the *Britains* and *Greeks*, muſt be an Argument, either that they had the ſame Origin, at leaſt that a conſiderable Colony of the *Greeks* or *Trojans* came hither, and intermixed themſelves with the other People of this Iſland; or that they maintained a Correſpondence and Communication together.

(*a*) *De bello Gall.* L. IV. (*b*) *Ibid.* L. VI.

Digitized by Google

ther. Now the *Grecians* had no Knowledge of the *Britains* till very late; for the Teſtimony of *Dion Caſſius* (*c*) is very full to this Purpoſe; *viz.* "That *Britain* "was not ſo much as diſcovered by the "old *Greeks* and *Romans*, and that the "Moderns of them queſtion whether it "were a Continent or Iſland; that much "was written on both Sides by ſome who "had no certain Knowledge, as having "neither ſeen the Country, nor learned "the Nature of it from the Inhabitants, "but relying ſolely on thoſe Conjectures "they had made, as they had Time or "Diligence to ſtudy it." From hence by the Bye we may again obſerve, what little Dependance is to be placed on the Accounts of *Grecian* and *Roman* Authors, concerning the firſt Inhabitants of this Iſland. Indeed *Leland* (*d*) ſays, it is manifeſt from the Teſtimony of *Ariſtotle* in his Book *de Mundo*, that *Britain* was at firſt called *Olbion* or *Albion*: And this he alledges in Vindication of the Account given of its ancient Name in the *Britiſh* Hiſtory. But then we are to conclude alſo, that the ancient *Greeks* had ſome Knowledge of this Iſland, above three hundred Years before the *Roman* Invaſion. Now *Camden* will

(*c*) L. 39. (*d*) *Vide* Sheringham *de Angl. gent. Oriz.* p 385.

Digitized by Google

extricate us from this Difficulty, since according to him, (e) the Tract *de Mundo*, which goes for *Ariſtotle*'s, and makes Mention of the *Britains* of *Albion* or *Hierna*, is not ſo old as *Ariſtotle*, but of far later Date, as the Learned think. And though we ſhould admit ancient *Greek* Authors were entirely ignorant of this Iſland, and that the *Grecians* had little or no Communication with the *Britains*; this is no Reaſon why a Colony of *Trojans* might not at firſt have arrived in *Britain* from *Greece*. For neither were the *Romans*, who were undoubtedly at firſt a *Trojan* Colony, known to *Herodotus* and the ancient *Greeks*, tho' they lived much nearer them, and were then grown to a great Degree of Power and Eminence among their Neighbours. Nor is it probable that the *Britains*, if indeed they were originally *Trojans*, would at firſt hold any Intercourſe with the *Grecians* who were their mortal Enemies.

LI. Now as to the Memory of *Brutus*, the Leader of the *Trojan* Colony, and Founder of the *Britiſh* Monarchy, that is ſtill preſerved in the Name of *Britain*. It is certain this was the Name of the Iſland given it by the Natives themſelves, long before the *Roman* Invaſion; and the *Britains* agree

(e) *Britannia*, p xxxvii. See alſo *Uſher*'s *Primordia*, Cap. 16.

Digitized by Google

agree that it was derived from *Brutus* their Founder. Let all other Conjectures concerning the Etymology of this Name be examined, and they will be found not only new and unknown to ancient Authors, but indeed of much leſs Probability than this. *Camden* himſelf rejects the Fictions of Foreigners in this Matter as extremely ridiculous, and owns our own Countrymen, as Sir *Thomas Eliot*, and *Humphrey Lhwyd*, give us no very ſatisfactory Account of it. And I leave the learned Reader to judge, whether his own new Account is any Thing more ſatisfactory, *viz.* (*f*) That *Britain* was ſo called from *Brith*, which in the *Britiſh* Language ſignifieth Painted, and that becauſe the *Britains* uſed to paint their Bodies. This Original is diſliked both by *Somner* and *Caſaubon*, whoſe Reaſons are briefly given by the learned Dr. *Gibſon*, now Bp. of *Lincoln*, in his Notes upon this Paſſage of *Camden*'s *Britannia*. Now in like Manner as the Name of *Britain* preſerved the Memory of *Brutus*, ſo did *Trinovantum* that of *Troy*: And we may obſerve from *Livy*, (*g*) that it was the Cuſtom of the exiled *Trojans*, upon their Settlement in any Place, to call the firſt Town they built by the Name of *Troy*;

(*f*) *Britan.* p. xxix. (*g*) L. I.

Digitized by Google

ſo dear was the Memory of that City to them. And again, that *Albania* was ſo called from *Albanact* the Son of *Brutus*, the moſt ancient *(h)* *Scotch* Writers agree. Why ſhould it then be eſteemed an Abſurdity to conclude, that the other ancient *Britiſh* Names of Places are Indications of thoſe Princes by whom this Hiſtory declares they were founded, as of *Ebraucus*, *Leil*, *Leir*, *Belinus* and the reſt? We have nothing but the Fancies of modern Authors to oppoſe to all theſe Etymologies, which are too weak Reaſons to overthrow ſuch ancient and eſtabliſhed Traditions. And eſpecially as to the Original of the Name of *London*, what more probable Reaſon can be given for the Change of its former Name of *Trinovantum* for this modern one, than that which is aſſigned by this *(i)* Hiſtory? That the ancient *Britains* called it *Caer-Lud*, or the City of *Lud*, is ſufficiently known; and the Change of *Lud* into *Lund* Dr. *Davies* *(k)* eaſily accounts for from the Nature of the *Britiſh* Language. All ancient Writers agree upon this Original, and the Statue which has been from of old placed upon the Gate that bears the Name of *Lud*, is an Indication

(h) *Vide Fordun Hiſt. Scot.* L. II. Cap. 6. & *Leſlæi Deſcript. Scot.* (i) B. III. Ch. 20. (k) *Linguæ Britannicæ rudimenta.*

Digitized by Google

cation that he was at leaſt the Builder of it, if not the Beautifier of the reſt of the City, as this Hiſtory pretends. And why ſhould ſo much Honour have been paid to his Memory in particular for ſo many Ages, unleſs for the Reaſon this Hiſtory aſſigns? But theſe Points are more fully diſcuſſed by Sir *John Price* (*l*) and *Sheringham*, (*m*) to which for Brevity's Sake I refer the Reader.

LII. But beſides the ancient Names of Places, that ſerve to perpetuate the Memory of the firſt Kings of this Iſland, there are yet remaining other Indications of them. And here to ſay nothing of the High-Ways of *Belinus*, whereof there are conſiderable Remains to this Day, becauſe ſome modern Writers will have them made by the *Romans*, though they cannot tell by whom, nor at what Time, nor for what Reaſon; what can be a more clear Indication that there were ſuch Perſons, who reigned among the ancient *Britains*, as *Molmutius* and *Martia*, than the Laws which bear their Names, and are in Force among us to this very Day? Many ancient Writers inform us, that the Laws of *Dunvallo Molmutius*, were firſt tranſlated out of *Britiſh*

(*l*) *Hiſt. Brit. Defenſ.* p. 65. &c. (*m*) *De Angl. gent. Orig.* p. 21. 22.

Digitized by Google

Welsh into *Latin* by *Gildas*; and *Leland* (*n*) shews how much they were valued not only by the ancient *Britains*, and their Descendants the *Welsh*, even till the Time that their Country was reduced under Subjection to the Crown of *England* by King *Edward* the First; but also by the Kings among the *Saxons*, as *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, *Ina* and *Alfrid* of the West *Saxons*, and *Edward* the third King of that Name among the *Saxons*; who when they instituted Laws for the publick Good, consulted, by the Assistance of a *Latin* Translator, the *Molmutian* Decrees, as most ancient and necessary, and at last enjoined the strict Observation of those they judged convenient, together with other new ones, to the *Saxons*. But the Diligence of the famous King *Alfred* was much greater in this Matter, who, according to *Higden*, translated into *Saxon* both the *Molmutian* and *Martian* Laws, and called them *Mercenelaga*, adding to them the Laws of the West *Saxons*, and *Danes*; and of these three *Edward* the *Confessor* composed the common Law of *England*, which are called King *Edward*'s Laws to this Day. And besides the Testimonies of ancient Writers in this Point, the Thing, says *Sheringham*, (*o*) speaks itself. For the many *British* Words that occur in the *Saxon* Laws,

(*n*) *Comment. de Script. Brit.* (*o*) *De Angl. gent. Orig.* p. 126.

Digitized by Google

Laws, as *Murther*, *Denizon*, *Rout* and ſeveral others, are an abundant Confirmation that the *Britiſh* Laws were tranſlated into *Saxon*. Now all theſe Things being duly conſidered, we may I think ſafely conclude, that notwithſtanding the vaſt Deſtruction that has been made of the Monuments of Antiquity, by length of Time, and the great Revolutions and Confuſions that have ſo frequently happened in this Iſland, yet that there are ſtill remaining ſufficient Indications of ſome Things that were tranſacted before the *Roman* Invaſion, and at leaſt ſome Foundation of Truth diſcoverable in the Ruins of this ancient Story of *Brutus* and his Succeſſors.

LIII. To conclude then this moſt material Point concerning *Brutus*, I might now ſhew the almoſt univerſal Conſent and Confirmation, that both *Engliſh* and *Scotch* Hiſtorians and other learned Men have given to it, from the Time this Hiſtory was firſt publiſhed till the Beginning of the laſt Century, and ſeveral of the laſt Century alſo. But ſuch a long Recital of Teſtimonies would be very tireſome both to my ſelf and the Reader. Let it ſuffice therefore in the laſt Place to ſhew, that this Story, however contemptible it appears to ſome at preſent, has been judged authentick by King *Edward* the Firſt, and all the Nobility of this Kingdom, and alledged as ſuch

Digitized by Google

such in a Controversy of the greatest Importance, and that too without any Objection against its Authority by the contrary Party concerned in that Controversy. For upon that most famous Dispute in his Time, concerning the Subjection of the Crown of *Scotland* to that of *England*, which was afterwards the Occasion of those long and bloody Wars both Kingdoms were involved in, the King wrote to Pope *Boniface* the Eighth, to whom the *Scots* had apply'd for Redress, and alledged in Defence of his Right, that from all Antiquity the direct and superior Dominion of *Scotland* had always belonged to his Crown; and was in these Allegations seconded by all his Nobility, to which they also set their Seals. So much of the Kings Letter as relates to this History, I shall here insert from *Walsingham*, (*y*) translated into *English* from *Latin*, in which it was originally composed.

LIV. " About the Time of *Eli* and *Samuel* the Prophet, a valiant and famous " Man of the *Trojan* Nation, named *Brutus*, " after the Destruction of *Troy*, arrived " with many of the *Trojan* Nobility at a " certain Island then called *Albion*, inhabited by Giants, and having routed and " slain them with his Forces, he called it

" after

(*y*) *Prodigma Neustriæ apud Camd. Angl. Norman.* p. 492.

Digitized by Google

" after his Name *Britain*, and his Compa-
" nions *Britons*, and built a City which he
" named *Trinovantum*, now called *London*,
" and afterwards divided his Kingdom be-
" tween his three Sons; *viz.* To *Locrin*
" his first-born he gave that Part of *Britain*
" which is now called *England*, and to *Al-*
" *banact* his second Son that Part, which
" was from him named *Albania*, now *Scot-*
" *land*, and to *Camber* his youngest Son
" that Part, which after his Name was
" called *Cambria*, now *Wales*, reserving to
" *Locrin* the Royal Dignity. Two Years
" after the Death of *Brutus*, arrived in *Bri-*
" *tain* a certain King of the *Huns* named
" *Humber*, and slew *Albanact* the Brother
" of *Locrin*; at which News *Locrin* King of
" the *Britons* pursued him, and he in his
" Flight was drowned in the River, which
" is called after his Name *Humber*; and so
" *Albania* return'd to *Locrin*. Also *Dun-*
" *wallo* King of the *Britons* preferred *Sate-*
" *rus* to be King of *Scotland*, and upon his
" rebelling caused both him and his King-
" dom to be surrendred up to him. Also
" the two Sons of *Dunwallo*, *Belinus* and
" *Brennius*, divided their Fathers Kingdom
" between them, in such sort that *Belinus*
" the Elder possessed the Crown of the
" Island, with *Britain*, *Wales* and *Cornwal*;
" and *Brennius* the Younger held the King-
" dom of *Scotland* under him; the *Trojan*

" Con-

Digitized by Google

" Conſtitution requiring, that the Hereditary Dignity ſhould go to the Firſt-born. " Alſo *Arthur* King of the *Britons*, a moſt " renowned Prince, ſubdued *Scotland* when " in Rebellion againſt him, and almoſt deſtroy'd the whole Nation; and afterwards advanced one *Anſelm* to be King " of *Scotland*. And when after this, the " ſame King *Arthur* made his moſt famous " Feaſt at the City of *Legions*, all the Kings " that were ſubject to him were preſent at " it, amongſt whom *Anſelm* King of *Scotland*, doing Homage for the Kingdom of " *Scotland*, carried King *Arthurs* Sword before him. All the Kings of *Scotland* have " ſucceſſively been ſubject to all the Kings " of the *Britons*.

LV. *Sheringham* very well *(q)* remarks upon this Letter, that ſo prudent a King would not have writ ſuch Things to the Pope, unleſs they had been delivered in publick and authentick Records, or in Memoirs and Hiſtories of well approved Authority. So great a King would not have made himſelf the Subject of Laughter for his Enemies, or produced empty Fictions and old Wives Fables for Vouchers of his Right, which could only injure his Cauſe, and not eſtabliſh it. It is reaſonable to believe, that what

(q) *De Angl. gentis Orig.* 130.

Digitized by Google

what he alledged was extracted from authentick Writings, and alſo ſuch as were known and approved of by the *Scots*, who might have otherwiſe rejected them with Scorn and Laughter. But ſo far were they from this, that the *Scotch* Hiſtorians before *Buchanan* relate the ſame Things the *Britains* do, concerning the Coming of *Bruſus* into this Iſland, and concerning *Scotland* being formerly called *Albania* from *Albanact* the ſecond Son of *Brutus*, as King *Edward* had pleaded. And even *Buchanan*, as much an Enemy as he ſhews himſelf to the Story of *Brutus*, does in his Hiſtory very much confirm, and more largely explain, ſeveral Paſſages in the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, from the Time of the firſt *Scottiſh* King *Fergus*, which was 330 Years before *Chriſt*, till after the Death of King *Arthur*. But now according to *Camden* and his Adherents, King *Edward* muſt have made a moſt ridiculous Plea in this grand Controverſy, as alledging for the firſt and principal Argument for his Claim, this Story of *Brutus*, that it ſeems had no better Foundation than the Invention of an obſcure Monk, and no greater Antiquity than about 170 Years at that Time.

A Liſt

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A LIST OF THE SUBSCRIBERS to this BOOK.

Subscribers for several Books are distinguish'd by an Asterisk *before their Names, and those for Royal Paper by a* Dagger *after them.*

A.

HIS Grace the Duke of St. *Albans.*
Gilbert Affleck, Esq;
Mr. *Alleyn* of *Queen's College*, *Oxon.*
Rev. Mr. *George Antrobus*, A. M. Vicar of *Kingsbury*, *Warwickſh.*
Mr. *Theophilus Armit*, Merchant of *London.*

Digitized by Google

Richard Arnold, Esq; †
Rev. Mr. *John Appleton*, Schoolmaster of *Wrexham*.
Rev. Dr. *Astrey*, Chaplain to the Bishop of *London*.
Rev. Mr. *Atkinson*, Fellow of *Queen's Coll. Oxon*.
Rev. Mr. *Bedingfield Atterbury*.
Rev. Mr. *John Aylworth*, A. B. of *Wadham College, Oxon*.

B.

* Right Hon. Earl of *Burlington*. †
* Right Hon. Countess of *Burlington*. †
Right Hon. Lady *Brook*.
Colonel *Lee Backwell*.
Tyringham Backwell, Esq;
Mrs. ——— *Backwell*.
——— *Baily*, Esq;
Rev. Mr. *Baines*, Fellow of *University Coll. Oxon*.
Mr. *Triamor Baldwyn*.
Mr. —— *Bave*, of *Queen's College, Oxon*.
Mrs. *Elizabeth Beale*, of *Brockhall, Northamptonshire*.
Rev. Mr. —— *Bell*, Chaplain to the Bishop of *London*.
Mrs. *Grace Bennet*. †
* Mr. *William Bently*.
* *John Berkley*, Esq;

Mr.

Digitized by Google

Mr. *Robert Bignell.*
Mr. *Biſſett*, of *Queen's College*, *Oxon.*
Mr. *William Blackſtone*, Apothecary of *Lond.*
Rev. Dr. *Blake*, Sub-Dean of *York.*
Sir *John Bland*, Bar. †
Mrs. *Bonnel.*
* Mr. *Jonah Bowyer*, Bookſeller of *London.*
Right Hon. Lady *Elizabeth Boyle.* †
Right Hon. Lady *Juliana Boyle.* †
Right Hon. Lady *Jane Boyle.* †
Right Hon. Lady *Harriot Boyle.* †
Rev. Mr. *Richard Boyſe*, Rector of *Berkſwell*, *Warwickſhire.*
Mrs. *Catherine Branch.* †
Edward Brewerton, Eſq; †
Mr. *Briſco*, of *Queen's College*, *Oxon.*
Rev. Mr. *John Brookes*, B. D. *Warwickſhire.*
* Mr. *Daniel Brown*, Bookſeller in *London.*
Mr. *John Brown*, Surgeon in *London.*
* Mr. *Jonas Brown*, Bookſeller in *London.*
Mr. *Brown*, Gent. Com. of *Trinity College*, *Oxon.*
* Hon. *Robert Bruce*, Eſq; †
Hon. and Rev. *Henry Brydges*, D. D. †
Joſiah Burchet, Eſq;
Rev. *Thomas Byſſe*, D. D.

C.

HIS Grace the Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury.* †
Her Grace the Dutcheſs of *Cleveland.* †

Digitized by Google

Right Hon. Earl of *Carnarvan.* †
Right Hon. Viſcount *Caſtleton.* †
Right Hon. Viſcount *Chetwynd.* †
* Right Hon. Lord *Carleton.* †
Right Hon. *James Craggs*, Eſq; Principal Secretary of State. †
Hon. Mrs *Calthorp.* †
Dugall Campbell, Eſq;
Thomas Cartwright, of *Aynho* in *Northamptonſhire*, Eſq; †
Walter Cary, Eſq; †
Rev. Mr. *William Charnley*, Vicar of *Harbury*, *Warwickſhire.*
Charles Cholmondly, Eſq; †
Robert Cholmondly, Eſq;
Mr. *Stanbrook Cholmley.*
Mr. *Thomas Churchill.*
* *Walter Churchill*, of the *Middle Temple*, Eſq;
Lady *Clarges.* †
Sir *Thomas Clark*, Kt.
Mr. *Clarke*, of *Queen's College*, *Oxon.*
* Mr. *Francis Clay*, Bookſeller in *London.*
* Mr. *Henry Clements*, Bookſeller in *London.*
Mr. *Robert Cocks*, Clark of St. *Clements Danes*, *London.*
Mr. *Collinwood*, Gent. Com. of *Queen's Coll.* *Oxon.*
Samuel Comes, Eſq;
Rev. Mr. *George Comyns.*
Rev. Mr. *Moſes Cotterell*, A. M. Vicar of *Anſley*, *Warwickſhire.*
Mr. *Cotterel*, of *Queen's College*, *Oxon.*

— *Cotton*,

Digitized by Google

——— *Cotton*, Eſq; †
Mr. *Richard Cotton.*
Mr. *John Creſwell.*

D.

HIS Grace the Duke of *Devonſhire.* †
Her Grace the Dutcheſs of *Devonſhire.* †
* Right Hon. Counteſs of *Dalkeith.* †
Henry Davenport, Eſq; †
Mr. *Edward Davis*, of *Ruddalt.*
Mr. *D'oiley*, Gent. Com. of *Queen's Coll. Oxon.*
Mountague Garrard Drake, Eſq; †
Edmund Dunch, Eſq; †
* *Abraham Dupuis*, Eſq; †
Mr. *Joſeph Durdon.*

E.

MR. *John Edrige.*
Rev. Mr. *Elliotſon*, Fellow of *Queen's College, Oxon.*
Mr. *Alexander Engliſh.*
Dr. *John Engliſh.*
Capt. ——— *Evans.*
Sir *Redmond Everard*, Bar. †
Joſeph Eyles, Eſq; †
Mrs. *Sarah Eyles.* †
Lady *Eyles.*
Mr. *Tobias Eyſham*, Merchant of *London.*

Digitized by Google

F.

RIght Hon. Earl of *Ferrers.*
Right Hon. Countess of *Ferrers.*
Bryan Fairfax, Esq; †
Rev. Mr. *John Felthouse*, Rector of *Leigh*, *Staffordshire.*
Mrs. *Anne Fenn.*
Mr. *Henry Fenn.*
Mr. *Fenton*, of *Queen's College*, *Oxon.*
Mr. *William Fetherstonehaugh.*
Rev. Mr. *Fletcher*, Fellow of *Queen's Coll. Oxon.*
Mr. *Humphrey Foulks*, of *Marchieviel.*
Sir *Andrew Fountain*, Kt. †
* Lady *Fox.*
Mrs. *Charlotte Fox.*
Henry Fox, Esq;
Stephen Fox, Esq; †
Thomas Frederick, Esq; †
Richard Freeman, of *Whilton*, *Northamptonsh.* Esq;
John Friend, M. D. †
Rev. *Robert Friend*, D. D.
Mr. *Henry Furneſs.*

G.

RIght Hon. Countess of *Grantham.* †
Sir *Samuel Garth*, Kt.
Mr. *John George.*

Rev.

Digitized by Google

Rev. Mr. *Iſaac Gervais* of *Lismore* in *Ireland.*
Rev. Dr. *Gibſon*, Provoſt of *Queen's College, Oxon.*
Mr. *Richard Glynn*, Mathemat. Inſtrument maker in *London.*
Mr. *John Goddard*, Merchant of *London.* †
Major *William Godolphin.*
John Gore, Eſq;
Thomas Gore, Eſq;
William Gore, Eſq;
* Mr. *George Graham*, Watchmaker in *London.* †
Richard Graham, Eſq; †
James Gray, Eſq;
* Rev. *Thomas Green*, D. D. Vicar of St. *Martins* in the Fields.
* Rev. Mr. *Green*, Fellow of *Queen's Coll. Oxon.*
Rev. Mr. *George Greenway*, Vicar of *Offchurch, Warwickſhire.*
Rev. Mr. *John Greenway*, of *Chadſhunt* in *Warwickſhire.*
Hon. Mrs. *Elizabeth Grevil.*
* Rev. Mr. *Robert Griſdale.*
Sir *Rowland Gwynn*, Bar. †

H.

RIght Hon. Earl of *Hertford.*
Right Hon. Counteſs of *Hertford.*
* Right Hon. Viſcounteſs *Hereford.*
Right Hon. Lord *Harley.* †

Digitized by Google

Rev. Mr. *Hall*, Fellow of *Queen's College, Oxon.*
* Mr. *John Hall.*
Sir *John Harpur*, Bar. †
* Hon. Lady *Harpur.* †
George Harriſon, Eſq; †
William Harriſon, Eſq;
Right Hon. Lady *Anne Harvey.* †
Michael Harvey, of *Combe*, in *Surrey*, Eſq; †
Robert Harvey, of *Stockton, Warwickſh.* Eſq; †
Mr. *Charles Hayes.* †
Mr. *Hellier*, of *Queen's College, Oxon.*
* Rev. Mr. *Samuel Hemmings.*
Mr. *John Higden*, Merchant of *London.*
Mrs. *Elizabeth Higgins.* †
Rev. Mr. *Hill*, Fellow of *Queen's Coll. Oxon.*
Mr. *Mark Holeman.*
Rev. Mr. *Holme*, Fellow of *Queen's College, Oxon.*
Mr. *Fiſher Holyoake*, Attorney in *Southam, Warwickſhire.*
Andrew Hopegood, Eſq;
Sir *Richard How*, Bar.
Rev. Mr. *George Hudſon.*
Rev. Dr. *Hudſon*, Principal of St. *Mary Hall, Oxon.*
Capt. *Robert Hughes.*
Mr. *William Hughes*, of *Wadham Coll. Oxon.*
Rev. *Charles Humphreys*, L L. D.
Rev. Mr. *John Hunter*, Prebendary of *Litchfield.*
Mr. *Hutchinſon.*

Thomas

Digitized by Google

Thomas Hutton, Esq; †
John Hyde, Esq;

I.

Theodore Jacobson, Esq;
Mr. *Jacques*, of *Queen's College, Oxon.*
Mr. *John Jefferies.*
Lady *Jeffreys.* †
Mrs. *Anne Jeffreys.* †
Mrs. *Bridget Jeffreys.* †
Edward Jeffreys, Esq. †
Mrs. *Elizabeth Jeffreys.* †
Mrs. *Mary Jeffreys.* †
Nicholas Jeffreys, Esq. †
* *Walter Jeffreys*, Esq. †
Walter Jeffreys, of *Brecknock*, Esq.
* Mr. *John Jenkins*, Linnen-Draper in *London.*
* *Edward Jennings*, Esq.
Hon. Sir *John Jennings*, Kt. †
Mr. *Richard Johnson* †
* Rev. Mr. *Anthony Jones*, A. M.
Right Hon. Lady *Catherine Jones.* †
Rev. Mr. *Emanuel Jones*, School-master of *Harbury, Warwickſh.*
Roger Jones, of *Buckland*, in *Brecknockſhire*, Esq. †
Rev. Mr. *William Jones*, Rector of *Haſley, Warwickſh.*
Mr. *William Jones*, F. R. S. †
Rev. Mr. *Jones*, Vicar of *Wrexham.*
Mrs. ——— *Iton.*

John

Digitized by Google

K.

John Kent, Esq.
Rev. Mr. *James* King. †
William Knight, Esq. †
William Knight, Esq.

L.

Right Hon. Viscount *Lanesbrough* †
Right Hon. Viscountess *Lanesbrough*.
Right Rev. Lord Bishop of *London*.
* Right Rev. Lord Bishop of *Londonderry*, late of *Carlisle*. †
Right Rev. Lord Bishop of *Lincoln* †
Rev. Mr. *Thomas Lamplugh*, Prebendary of *York*.
Rev. Mr. *Samuel Lancaster*.
Rev. *John Landen*, L L. D.
Mr. *Charles Langstaff*.
Mr. *Langton* of *Queen's Coll. Oxon*.
Rev. Mr. *Laurence Leach*.
Mr. *John Leaves*.
Hon. *Charles Leigh*, Esq;
William Leigh, Esq; †
* *Erasmus Lewis*, Esq;
Reverend Mr. *Thomas Little*, of *Harbury*, *Warwickshire*.
Mr. *Lock*, of *Queen's College*, *Oxon*.
Laurence Lord, of *Cotesford* in *Oxfordshire*, Esq;
Mr. *John Lowndes*.

* Right

Digitized by Google

M.

* RIght Hon. Earl of *Montrath.* †
Mr. *John Machin*, Astronomy Professor of *Gresham College.*
Mrs. *Anne Manning.*
Mr. *Thomas Matthew*, Draper in *Daventry.*
Mr. *Thomas Middleton.*
Mrs. *Emma Milbourne.*
Richard Miller, Esq;
Mr. *John Moller.*
Thomas More, Esq;
John Morice, of *Walthamstow* in *Essex*, Esq;
Major *Thomas Morice.*
William Morice, Esq; †
Mrs. *Alice Morice.*
Rev. Mr. *Thomas Morral*, A. M. *Warwickshire.*
Rev. *Robert Moss*, D. D. Dean of *Ely.*
Richard Mostyn, Esq,
Mr. *Edward Mountague.*
Edward Mountney, Esq;
Reverend Mr. *Thomas Myles*, A. M.

N.

* SIR *Isaac Newton*, Kt. †
Rev. Mr. *John Nicoll.* †
Rev. Mr. *Nicolson*, Fellow of *Queen's College, Oxon.*
Mr. *Nicolson*, of *Queen's College, Oxon.*

* Her

Digitized by Google

O.

* HER Grace the Dutcheſs of *Ormonde*. †
Right Hon. Counteſs Dowager of *Oxford*. †
Rev. Mr. *Edward Oliver*.

P.

RIght Hon. Earl of *Pembroke*. †
Right Hon. Counteſs of *Pembroke*. †
William Palmer, of *Ladbroke*, *Warwickſh.* Eſq; †
Mrs. *Rebecca Pannel*.
* Lady *Parker*. †
Theophilus Parſon, Eſq;
Mrs. *Anne Paſtern*. †
Mr. *James Pavey*.
Rev. Mr. *John Peirce*, Rector of *Cotesbrook*, *Northamptonſhire*.
* Rev. *John Pelling*, D. D. Rector of St. *Anne*'s, *Weſtminſter*. †
Jeremiah Pembexton, Eſq;
William Philips, of *Brecknock*, Eſq; †
Robert Pitt, Eſq; †
George Pitts, Eſq; †
Mrs. *Laura Pitts*. †
Mr. *James Pringle*.
Rowland Pughe, M. D. of *Wrexham*.

Right

Digitized by Google

R.

RIght Rev. Lord Bishop of *Rochester.* †
Rev. Mr. *Richardson*, A. M.
Mr. *Thomas Ridding.*
Mr. *Charles Riddle.* †
Rev. Mr. *John Riland*, Rector of *Sutton-Coldfield, Warwickshire.*
Mrs. *Priscilla Rolls.* †
Edward Rolt, Esq;
Mrs. *Anne Rolt.*
* Rev. Mr. *William Ryman*, Vicar of *Spelsbury, Oxfordshire.* †

S.

HER Grace the Dutchess of *Somerset.* †
Right Hon. Countess of *Sandwich.*
Right Hon. Countess of *Scarborough.* †
Right Hon. Earl of *Sussex.* †
John Sayer, Esq;
Thomas Sergeant, Esq;
Rev. Mr. *Abraham Sharp*, Chaplain to the Earl of *Burlington.* †
Mr. *John Sharp.*
Mr. *Arthur Shepherd.*
Rev. Mr. *John Sheppard*, Rector of *Brockhall, Northamptonshire.*
John Sherlock, of the *Middle Temple*, Esq;
Rev. *Thomas Sherlock*, D. D. Dean of *Chichester.*

Rev.

Digitized by Google

Rev. Mr. *George Simmonds*, A. M. Minister of *Knolle, Warwickſh.*
Henry Smith, Eſq;
* Rev. *Joſeph Smith*, D. D. Rector of St. *Dionis Backchurch, London.*
Mr. *Joſhua Smith*, Bookſeller in *Stratford upon Avon.*
Rev. Mr. *Leonard Smith*, Rector of *Newbold Pacy, Warwickſhire.*
Mr. *Obadiah Smith*, Bookſeller in *Daventry.*
* *Ralph Smith*, Eſq; †
* Rev. *Andrew Snape*, D. D. Rector of St. *Mary Hill, London.*
Rev Mr. *Charles Snape.*
Mr. *Arthur Sparks.*
* Mr. *George Strahan*, Bookſeller in *London.*
Hon. General *Stuart.* †
Mr. *William Summers.*
Hon. Brigadier *Sutton.* †

T.

MRS. *Gilberta Talbot.* †
John Talbot, Eſq; †
Rev. Mr. *Thomas Taylour*, of *Keinton, Warwickſhire.*
Rev. Mr. *William Taylour*, Miniſter of *Daventry.*
Mr. *Alban Thomas.*
Rev. Mr. *Jonathan Thompſon*, Vicar of *Biſhops Itchington, Warwickſhire.* †
Thomas Thornton, of *Brockhall* in *Northamptonſhire*, Eſq; Hon.

Digitized by Google

Hon. Mrs. *Thynne.* †
* *Thomas Tickell*, Esq; †
Reverend Dr. *Took.*
Rev. Mr. *Joseph Trapp.*
* Reverend Mr. *Troughear*, Fellow of *Queen's College, Oxon.*
Rev. Mr. *John Troutbeck.*
Richard Tyson, M. D.

V.

Edward Ventris, Esq;
Right Hon. Lady *Harriet Vere.* †

W.

* Right Hon. Viscountess *Windsor.* †
Right Rev. and Right Hon. Lord Bishop of *Winchester.* †
John Ward, Esq;
Colonel *John Watson.*
Rev. *John Waugh*, D. D. Rector of St. *Peters, Cornhill, London.*
Rev. Mr. *William Welshman*, Vicar of *Dodford, Northamptonshire.*
Right Hon. Lady *Elizabeth Wentworth.* †
Mr. *Robert Wesley.*
Rev. Mr. *Humphrey Whyle*, Vicar of *Welsbourn, Warwickshire.*
Rev. Mr. *Peter Wiggat.*
Mr. *Edward Wilcox.*
Mr. *Roger Williams.*

Mr.

Digitized by Google

Mr. *Williams*, A. B. of *Queen's College*, *Oxon.*
Mr. *Daniel Wilson.*
John Wiseman, Esq.
Mr. *Henry Wood.*
Mr. *William Wyld.*
Mr. *Howel Wynn.*

Y.

HIS Grace the Lord Archbishop of *York.* †
Mr. *Yarborough*, A. B. of *University College*, *Oxon.*
William Yonge, of *Brinyorkin* in *Flintshire*, Esq.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE British History.

The First Book.

CHAP. I.

Jeffrey *of* Monmouth's *Epiſtle Dedicatory to* Robert *Earl of* Gloceſter.

AFTER much and frequent Conſideration with my ſelf, upon my reading the Hiſtory of the Kings of *Britain*, I wonder'd that in the Account that *Gildas* and *Bede* in an elegant Treatiſe had given of them, I found nothing ſaid of thoſe Kings who lived here before the Incarnation of *Chriſt*, nor of *Arthur*,

Digitized by Google

and many others who succeeded after the Incarnation; when yet their Actions both deserved immortal Fame, and were also celebrated by many People in a pleasant Manner and by Heart, as if they had been written. Being often intent upon these and such like Thoughts, *Walter*, Archdeacon of *Oxford*, a Man of great Eloquence, and learned in foreign Histories, offer'd me a very ancient Book in the *British* Tongue, which in a continued regular Story and elegant Stile, related the Actions of them all, from *Brutus* the first King of the *Britains*, down to *Cadwallader* the Son of *Cadwallo*. At his Request therefore, though I had not made fine Language my Study, by collecting florid Expressions from other Authors, yet contented with my own homely Stile, I undertook the Translation of that Book into *Latin*. For if I had swell'd the Pages with Rhetorical Flourishes, I must have tir'd my Readers, by employing their Attention more upon my Words, than upon understanding the History. To you therefore *Robert* Earl of *Gloceſter*, this Work humbly sues for the Favour, of being so corrected by your Advice, that it may not be thought the poor Offspring of *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth*, but when polish'd by your refined Wit and Judgment, the Production of him who had *Henry* the glorious King of *England* for his Father, and whom we see an accomplish'd Scholar and Philo-

Digitized by Google

Philosopher, as well as a brave Soldier and expert Commander; so that *Britain* with Joy acknowledges, that in you she enjoys another *Henry*.

CHAP. II.

A Description of Britain; *who were its first Inhabitants.*

BRITAIN, the best of Islands, is situated in the Western Ocean, between *France* and *Ireland*, being eight hundred Miles long, and two hundred broad. It produces every Thing that is for the Use of Man, with a Plenty that never fails. It abounds with all Kinds of Metals, and has Champians of large Extent, and Hills fit for the finest Tillage, the Richness of whose Soil affords variety of Fruits at their Seasons. It has also Forests well stor'd with all Kinds of wild Beasts, in the Lawns whereof Cattle find good Change of Pasture, and Bees variety of Flowers for Honey. Under its lofty Mountains lie green Meadows pleasantly situated, in which the gentle Murmurs of Crystal Springs gliding along clear Chanels, give those that lye on their Banks an agreeable Invitation to slumber. It is likewise well water'd with Lakes and Rivers abounding

Digitized by Google

with Fish.; and besides the narrow Sea which is on the Southern Coast towards *France*, there are three noble Rivers, which it stretches out like three Arms, *viz.* the *Thames*, the *Severn*, and the *Humber*; by which foreign Commodities from all Countries are brought into it. It was formerly adorn'd with eight and twenty Cities, of which some are in Ruins and Desolate, others are yet standing, beautify'd with lofty Towers of Churches, wherein is perform'd religious Worship according to the *Christian* Institution. It is lastly inhabited by five different Nations, the *Britains*, *Romans*, *Saxons*, *Picts* and *Scots*; whereof the *Britains* before the Rest did formerly possess the whole Island from Sea to Sea, till divine Vengance punishing them for their Pride, made them give Way to the *Picts* and *Saxons*. But in what Manner, and from whence they at first arriv'd here, remains now to be related in what follows.

CHAP. III.

Brutus *being banish'd after the killing of his Parents, goes into* Greece.

AFTER the *Trojan* War, *Æneas* flying with *Ascanius* from the Destruction of their City, sail'd to *Italy*. There he was honour-

Digitized by Google

honourably receiv'd by King *Latinus*, which rais'd him the Envy of *Turnus* King of the *Rutuli*, who thereupon made War against him. Upon their engaging in Battle *Æneas* got the Victory, and having kill'd *Turnus* obtain'd the Kingdom of *Italy*, and with it *Lavinia* the Daughter of *Latinus*. After his Death *Ascanius* succeeding in the Kingdom, built *Alba* upon the *Tyber*, and begat a Son named *Sylvius*, who in pursuit of a private Amour, took to Wife a Neice of *Lavinia* whom he got with Child. The Father *Ascanius* coming to the Knowledge of it, commanded his Magicians to consult of what Sex the Damsel had conceiv'd. They satisfy'd of the Event told him she was big of a Boy, who would kill his Father and Mother, and after travelling over many Countries in Banishment, would at last arrive at the highest Pitch of Glory. Nor were they mistaken in their Prediction; for at the Time of Travel the Woman brought forth a Son, and died of his Birth; but the Child was deliver'd to a Nurse and called *Brutus*.

At length after fifteen Years were expir'd, the Youth accompany'd his Father in Hunting, and kill'd him undesignedly by the Shot of an Arrow. For as the Servants were driving up the Deer towards them, *Brutus* in levelling a Shot at them smote his his Father under the Breast. Upon his

Digitized by Google

Death he was expell'd *Italy*, his Kinſmen being enrag'd at him for ſo heinous a Fact. Thus baniſh'd he went into *Greece*, where he found the Poſterity of *Helenus* Son of *Priamus*, kept in Slavery by *Pandraſus* King of the *Grecians*. For after the Deſtruction of *Troy*, *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles*, had brought hither in Chains *Helenus* and many others; and to revenge on them the Death of his Father, had given Command for their being held under Captivity. *Brutus* finding they were by Deſcent his old Countrymen, took up his Abode among them, and began to diſtinguiſh himſelf by his Conduct and Bravery in War, ſo as to gain the Affection of Kings and Commanders, above all the young Men of the Country. For he was eſteem'd a Perſon of great Capacity both in Counſel and War, and ſignaliz'd his Generoſity to his Soldiers, by beſtowing among them all the Money and Spoil he got. His Fame therefore ſpreading over all Countries, the *Trojans* from all Parts began to flock to him, deſiring under his Command to be freed from the Servitude of the *Grecians*; which they affirm'd might eaſily be done, conſidering how much their Number was now encreas'd in the Country, being ſeven thouſand ſtrong, beſides Women and Children. There was likewiſe then in *Greece* a noble Youth named *Aſſaracus*, a Favourer of their Cauſe. For he was deſcended on his Mothers

Digitized by Google

Mothers Side from the *Trojans*, and had a great Confidence in them, that he might be able by their Assistance to oppose the Designs of the *Grecians*. For his Brother had a Quarrel with him for attemping to deprive him of three Castles his Father had given him at his Death, on Account of his being only the Son of a Concubine; but as the Brother was a *Grecian* both by his Father and Mothers Side, he had prevail'd with the King and the Rest of the *Grecians* to espouse his Cause. *Brutus* having taken a view of the Number of his Men, and seen how *Assaracus*'s Castles lay open to him, comply'd with their Request.

CHAP. IV.

Brutus's *Letter to* Pandrasus.

BEING therefore chosen their Commander, he assembles the *Trojans* from all Parts, and fortifies the Towns belonging to *Assaracus*. But he himself with *Assaracus* and the whole Body of Men and Women that adher'd to him, retires to the Woods and Hills, and then sends a Letter to the King in these Words.

" *Brutus*, General of the Remainder of " the *Trojans*, to *Pandrasus* King of the *Gre-*

Digitized by Google

" *cians*, sendeth Greeting. As it was be-
" neath the Dignity of a Nation descended
" from the illustrious Race of *Dardanus*, to
" be treated in your Kingdom otherwise
" than the Nobility of their Birth requir'd;
" they have betaken themselves to the Co-
" verts of the Woods. For they preferr'd
" living after the Manner of wild Beasts,
" upon Flesh and Herbs, with the Enjoy-
" ment of Liberty, before the continuing
" longer in the greatest Luxury, under the
" Yoke of your Slavery. If this gives your
" Majesty any Offence, impute it not to
" them, but pardon it; since it is the com-
" mon Sentiment of every Captive, to be
" desirous of regaining his former Dignity.
" Let Pity therefore move you to bestow
" on them freely their lost Liberty, and
" permit them to inhabit the Thickets of
" the Woods, to which they have retir'd
" to avoid Slavery. But if you deny them
" this Favour, then by your Permission
" and Assistance let them depart into some
" foreign Country.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. V.

Brutus *falling upon the Forces of* Pandrasus *by Surprize, routs them, and takes* Antigonus *the Brother of* Pandrasus, *with* Anacletus *Prisoner.*

PANDRASUS perceiving the Purport of the Letter, was beyond Measure surpriz'd at the Boldness of such a Message from those whom he had kept in Slavery; and having called a Council of his Nobles, he determin'd to raise an Army in order to pursue them. But while he was upon his March to the Deserts, where he thought they were, and to the Town of *Sparatinum*, *Brutus* made a Sally forth with three thousand Men, and fell upon him unawares: For having Intelligence of his coming, he had got into the Town the Night before, with a Design to break forth upon them unexpectedly, while unarm'd and marching without Order. The Sally being made, the *Trojans* briskly attack them, and endeavour to make a great Slaughter. The *Grecians* astonish'd, immediately give way on all Sides, and with the King at their Head, hasten to pass the River *Akalon*, which run near the Place, but in passing

Digitized by Google

ſing are in great Danger by the Rapidneſs of the Stream. *Brutus* galls them in their Flight, and kills Part of them in the Stream, Part upon the Banks, and running to and fro, rejoyces to ſee them in both Places expoſed to Ruin. But *Antigonus* the Brother of *Pandraſus*, grievouſly moved at this Sight, rallied his ſcatter'd Troops, and made a quick Return upon the furious *Trojans*; for he rather choſe to die making a brave Reſiſtance, than to be drown'd in a muddy Whirlpool by a ſcandalous Flight. Thus attended with a cloſe Body of Men, he encourag'd them to ſtand their Ground, and employ'd his whole Force againſt the Enemy with great Vigour, but to little or no Purpoſe, for the *Trojans* had Arms, but the others none; and by that Advantage they were more eager in the Flight, and made a miſerable Slaughter, nor gave over the Aſſault till they had made near a total Deſtruction, and taken *Antigonus* and *Anacletus* his Companion Priſoners.

CHAP. VI.

The Town of Sparatinum *Beſieged by* Pandraſus.

BRUTUS after the Victory reinforc'd the Town with ſix hundred Men, and then retir'd to the Woods, where the *Trojan* People

Digitized by Google

People were expecting his Protection. In the mean Time *Pandrasus* grieving at his own Flight and his Brothers Captivity, endeavour'd that Night to reassemble his broken Forces, and the next Morning went with a Body of his People he had got together to besiege the Town; into which he supposed *Brutus* had put himself with *Antigonus* and the rest of the Prisoners he had taken. As soon as he was arriv'd at the Walls, and had view'd the Situation of the Castle, he divided his Army into several Bodies, and placed them in different Stations quite round. One Party had their Charge not to suffer any of the Besieged to go out; another to turn the Courses of the Rivers; a third to beat down the Walls with battering Rams and other Engines. They in Obedience to his Commands, labour'd with their utmost Force to distress the Besieged; and Night coming on, made Choice of their bravest Men to defend their Camp and Tents from the Incursions of the Enemy, while the rest who were fatigued with Labour, refresh'd themselves with Sleep.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VII.

The Besieged desire Assistance of Brutus.

BUT the Besieged standing upon the Top of the Walls, were no less Vigorous to repel the Force of the Enemies Engines, and assault them with their own, and cast forth Darts and Firebrands with an unanimous Resolution to stand upon their Defence: And when a Breach was made through the Wall, they compell'd the Enemy to retire, by throwing upon them Wild Fire and Scalding Water. But being distressed through Scarcity of Provision and daily Labour, they sent a Message to *Brutus*, being urgent with him to hasten to their Assistance; for they were afraid they might be so weakned as to be oblig'd to quit the Town. *Brutus* desirous of relieving them was under great Perplexity, as not having Men enough to stand a pitch'd Battel, and therefore makes use of a Stratagem, by which he proposes to enter the Enemies Camp by Night, and having deceiv'd their Watch, to kill them in their Sleep. But because he knew this was impracticable, without the Concurrence and Assistance of some *Grecian*, he called to him *Anacletus*, the Compa-

Digitized by Google

Companion of *Antigonus*, and with a drawn Sword in his Hand, ſpake to him after this manner.

" Noble Youth, your own and *Antigo-*
" *nus*'s Life is now at an End, unleſs you
" will faithfully perform what I command
" you. This Night I deſign to invade the
" Camp of the *Grecians*, and fall upon
" them unawares, but am afraid of being
" hindred in the Attempt by the Watch
" diſcovering the Stratagem. Since it will
" be neceſſary therefore to have them kil-
" led firſt, I deſire to make uſe of you to
" deceive them, that I may have the eaſier
" Acceſs to the reſt. Do you therefore
" manage this Affair cunningly; at the
" ſecond Hour of the Night go to the
" Watch, and with fair Speeches tell them
" that you have brought away *Antigonus*
" from Priſon, and that he is come to the
" Bottom of the Woods, where he lyes
" hid among the Shrubs, and cannot get
" any farther, by Reaſon of the Fetters
" with which you ſhall pretend he is bound.
" Then you ſhall conduct them to the End
" of the Wood, as if it were to deliver him,
" where I ſhall attend with a Band of Men
" ready to kill them.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VIII.

Anacletus *for fear of dying, betrays the Army of the* Grecians.

ANACLETUS seeing the Sword threatning him with immediate Death while these Words were pronouncing, was so terrified as to promise upon Oath, that on Condition he and *Antigonus* might have longer Life granted them, he would execute his Command. Accordingly the Agreement being confirm'd, at the second Hour of the Night he directs his Way towards the *Grecian* Camp, and when he was now come near to it, the Watch who were then narrowly viewing all lurking Places, ran out from all Parts to meet him, and demand the Occasion of his coming, and whether it was not to betray the Army. To whom he with a Shew of great Joy, made the following Answer. "I come not to "betray my Country, but having made "my Escape from the Prison of the *Tro-* "*jans*, I fly hither to desire you would go "with me to *Antigonus*, whom I have de- "liver'd from *Brutus*'s Chains. For being "not able to come with me for the Weight "of his Fetters, I have a little while ago "caused him to lye hid among the Shrubs "at the End of the Wood, till I could meet "with

Digitized by Google

" with ſome whom I might conduct to his " Aſſiſtance. " While they were in Suſpence about the Truth of this Story, there came one who knew him, and after he had ſaluted him, told them who he was: So that now without any Heſitation, they quickly called their abſent Companions and attended him to the Wood, where he had told them *Antigonus* lay hid. But at length as they were going among the Shrubs, *Brutus* with his armed Bands ſprings forth, and falls upon them while under the greateſt Aſtoniſhment with a moſt cruel Slaughter. From thence he marches directly to the Siege, and divides his Men into three Bands, aſſigning to each of them a different Part of the Camp, to which he charged them to go diſcreetly, and without Noiſe; and when entred, not to kill any Body till he with his Company ſhould be poſſeſs'd of the King's Tent, and ſhould cauſe the Trumpet to ſound for a Signal.

CHAP. IX.

The taking of Pandraſus.

THEN after he had given them their Inſtructions, they forthwith ſoftly enter the Camp, and taking their appointed Stations,

Digitized by Google

Stations, expected the promis'd Signal; which *Brutus* delay'd not to give as ſoon as he had got before the Tent of *Pandraſus*, to aſſault which was the Thing he moſt deſired. At the hearing of the Signal, they forthwith draw their Swords, enter in among the Men in their Sleep, make quick Deſtruction of them, and allowing no Quarter, in this Manner traverſe the Camp. The reſt awak'd at the Groans of the dying, and ſeeing their Aſſailants are diſmay'd, as Sheep when ſeiz'd on a ſudden; for they diſpair'd of Life, ſince they had neither Time to take Arms, nor to eſcape by Flight. They run up and down without Arms among the armed, whitherſoever the Fury of the Aſſault hurried them; but are on all Sides cut down by the Enemy ruſhing in. Some that could eſcape away half-dead, were in the Eagerneſs of Flight daſh'd againſt Rocks, Trees or Shrubs, and increaſed the Miſery of their Death. Others that had only a Shield, or ſome ſuch Covering for their Defence, in venturing upon the ſame Rocks to avoid Death, fell down in the Hurry and Darkneſs of the Night, and broke either Legs or Arms. Others that eſcap'd both theſe Diſaſters, but not knowing whither to fly, were drowned in the adjacent Rivers; and ſcarce one got away without ſome unhappy Accident befalling him. Beſides the Garriſon in the Town, upon Notice of the coming

Digitized by Google

coming of their Fellow Soldiers, ſallied forth, and redoubled the Slaughter.

CHAP. X.

A Conſultation about what is to be aſked of the Captive King.

BUT *Brutus* (as was ſaid before) having poſſeſſed himſelf of the Kings Tent, made it his Buſineſs to keep him a ſafe Priſoner; for he knew he could more eaſily attain his Ends by preſerving his Life than by killing him: But the Party that was with him allowing no Quarter, made an utter Deſtruction in that Part they had poſſeſſed. The Night being ſpent in this Manner, and the next Morning diſcovering to their View ſo great an Overthrow of the Enemy, *Brutus* in Tranſports of Joy, gave full Liberty to his Men to do what they pleaſed with the Plunder, and then enters the Town with the King, to ſtay there till they had ſhared it among them. Which done, he again fortified the Caſtle, and gave Orders for burying of the Slain, and retired with his Forces to the Woods in great Joy for the Victory. After the Rejoycings of his People on this Occaſion, the renowned General ſummoned the Ancienteſt of them,

Digitized by Google

and asked their Advice, what he had best desire of *Pandrasus*, who being now in their Power, would readily grant whatever they would request of him, in order to regain his Liberty. They according to their different Affections, desired different Things; some moving him to request that a certain Part of the Kingdom might be assigned them for their Habitation; others that he would demand Leave to depart, and to be supply'd with Necessaries for their Voyage. After they had been a long Time in suspence what to do, one of them named *Mempricius* rose up, and after Silence made, spake to them thus.

"What can be the Occasion of your Suspence, Fathers, in a Matter which I think so much concerns your Safety? The only Thing you can request, with any Prospect of a firm Peace and Security to yourselves and your Posterity, is Liberty to depart. For if you make no better Terms with *Pandrasus* for his Life, than only to have some Part of the Country assigned you to live among the *Grecians*, you will never enjoy a lasting Peace while the Brothers, Sons, or Grandsons of those you killed yesterday shall continue to be your Neighbours. So long as the Memory of their Fathers Deaths shall remain, they will be your mortal Enemies,

Digitized by Google

" Enemies, and upon the least trifling Pro-
" vocation will endeavour to revenge them-
" selves. Nor will you be Number enough
" to withstand so great a Multitude of Peo-
" ple: And if you shall happen to fall out
" among yourselves, their Number will
" daily increase, yours diminish. I pro-
" pose therefore that you request of him
" his eldest Daughter *Ignoge* for a Wife
" for our General, and with her, Gold, Sil-
" ver, Corn, and whatever else shall be
" necessary for our Voyage. If we obtain
" this, we may with his Leave remove to
" some other Country.

CHAP. XI.

Pandrasus marries his Daughter Ignoge *to* Brutus, *who after his departing from* Greece, *falls upon a desert Island, where he is told by the Oracle of* Diana *what Place he is to inhabit.*

WHEN he had ended his Speech in Words to this Effect, the whole Assembly acquiesced in his Advice, and moved that *Pandrasus* might be brought in among them, and condemned to a most

Digitized by Google

cruel Death, unleſs he would grant this Requeſt. Immediately he was brought, and being placed in a Chair above the reſt, and informed of the Tortures prepared for him, unleſs he would do what was commanded him, he made them this Anſwer.

" Since my ill Fate has delivered me and
" my Brother *Antigonus* into your Hands,
" I can do no other than grant your Peti-
" tion, leſt a Repulſe may coſt us our Lives,
" which are now entirely in your Power.
" In my Opinion the Advantage and Plea-
" ſure of Life is preferable to all other Con-
" ſiderations; therefore wonder not that I
" am willing to redeem it at ſo great a
" Price. But though it is againſt my In-
" clination that I obey your Commands,
" yet it ſeems Matter of Comfort to me,
" that I am to give my Daughter to ſo
" Noble a Youth, whoſe Deſcent from the
" illuſtrious Race of *Priamus* and *Anchiſes*
" is clear, both from that Greatneſs of Mind
" that appears in him, and the certain Ac-
" counts we have had of it. For who leſs
" than himſelf, could have releaſed from
" their Chains the baniſhed *Trojans*, when
" reduced under Slavery to ſo many and
" great Princes? Who elſe could have en-
" couraged them to make Head againſt the
" *Grecians*? or with ſo ſmall a Body of Men
" vanquiſhed ſo numerous and powerful an
" Army,

Digitized by Google

" Army, and taken their King Priſoner in " the Engagement? And therefore ſince " this noble Youth has gained ſo much " Glory by the Oppoſition he has made me, " I give him my Daughter *Ignoge*, and " alſo Gold, Silver, Ships, Corn, Wine and " Oyl, and whatever you ſhall find neceſ- " ſary for your Voyage. If you ſhall alter " your Reſolution, and think fit to conti- " nue among the *Grecians*, I grant you the " third Part of my Kingdom for your Ha- " bitation; if not, I will faithfully per- " form my Promiſe, and for your greater " Security will ſtay as a Hoſtage with you " till I have made it good.

Accordingly he held a Council, and directed Meſſengers to all the Shores of *Greece*, to get Ships together; which done, he delivered them to the *Trojans*, to the Number of three hundred and twenty four, laden with all manner of Proviſion, and married his Daughter to *Brutus*. He made alſo a Preſent of Gold and Silver to each Man according to his Quality. When every Thing was performed, the King was ſet at Liberty; and the *Trojans* now releaſed from his Power ſet ſail with a fair Wind. But *Ignoge* ſtanding upon the Stern of the Ship ſwooned away ſeveral Times in *Brutus*'s Arms, and with many Sighs and Tears lamented the leaving her Parents and Country, nor ever

Digitized by Google

turned her Eyes from the Shore while it was in Sight. *Brutus* in the mean Time endeavoured to assuage her Grief by kind Words and Embraces intermixed with Kisses, and ceased not from these Blandishments, till she grew weary of crying and fell asleep. During these and other Accidents, the Winds continued fair for two Days and a Night together, when at length they arrived at a certain Island called *Leogecia*, which had been formerly wasted by the Incursions of Pirates, and was then uninhabited. *Brutus* not knowing this, sent three hundred armed Men ashore to see who inhabited it; but they finding no Body, killed several kinds of wild Beasts which they met with in the Groves and Woods, and came to a certain desolate City, in which they found a Temple of *Diana*, and in it a Statue of that Goddess which gave Answers to those that came to consult her. At last loading themselves with the Prey they had taken in hunting, they return to their Ships, and give their Companions an Account of this Country and City. Then they advised their Leader to go to the City, and after offering Sacrifices, to enquire of the Deity of the Place, what Country was allotted them for their Place of Settlement. To this Proposal all consented; so that *Brutus* attended with *Gerion* the Augur, and twelve of the ancientest Men, set forward to the Temple, with

Digitized by Google

with all Things necessary for the Sacrifice. Being arrived at the Place, and presenting themselves before the Shrine with Garlands about their Temples, as the ancient Rites required, they made three Fires to three Deities, *viz. Jupiter*, *Mercury* and *Diana*, and offered Sacrifices to each of them. *Brutus* himself holding before the Altar of the Goddess a consecrated Vessel filled with Wine, and the Blood of a white Hart, with his Face looking up to the Image, broke Silence in these Words.

Diva potens nemorum, terror Sylvestribus apris;
Cui licet amfractus ire per æthereos,
Infernasque domos; terrestria jura resolve,
Et dic quæ terras nos habitare velis?
Dic certam sedem qua te venerabor in ævum,
Qua tibi virgineis templa dicabo choris?

Goddess of Woods, tremendous in the Chace
To Mountain Bores, and all the Savage Race!
Wide o'er th' Æthereal Walks extends thy Sway,
And o'er th' Infernal Mansions void of Day!
On thy third Realm look down! unfold our Fate,
And say what Region is our destin'd Seat?
Where shall we, next thy lasting Temples raise?
And Choirs of Virgins celebrate thy Praise?

These Words he repeated nine Times, after which he took four Turns round the Altar, poured the Wine into the Fire, and then laid himself down upon the Harts-

Digitized by Google

Skin, which he had ſpread before the Altar, where at laſt he fell aſleep. About the third Hour of the Night, the uſual Time for deep Sleep, the Goddeſs ſeemed to preſent herſelf before him, and foretel him his future Succeſs as follows.

Brute ſub occaſum ſolis trans Gallica regna
Inſula in oceano eſt undique clauſa mari:
Inſula in oceano eſt habitata gigantibus olim,
Nunc deſerta quidem; gentibus apta tuis.
Hanc pete, namque tibi Sedes erit illa perennis;
Sic fiet natis altera Troja tuis.
Sic de prole tua reges naſcentur: & ipſis
Totius terræ ſubditus orbis erit.

Brutus there lies beyond the *Gallick* Bounds
An Iſland which the Weſtern Sea ſurrounds,
By Giants once poſſeſs'd; now few remain
To bar thy Entrance, or obſtruct thy Reign.
To reach that happy Shore thy Sails employ:
There Fate decrees to raiſe a ſecond *Troy*,
And found an Empire in thy Royal Line,
Which Time ſhall never deſtroy, nor Bounds confine.

The General awaked by the Viſion was for ſome Time in Doubt with himſelf, whether what he had ſeen was a Dream, or a real Appearance of the Goddeſs herſelf, foretelling him of the Land to which he was to go. At laſt he called to his Companions, and related to them in Order the Viſion he had in his Sleep, at which they very much rejoyced,

Digitized by Google

rejoyced, and were urgent to return to their Ships, and while the Wind favour'd them, to haſten their Voyage towards the Weſt, in Purſuit of what the Goddeſs had promis'd. Without delay therefore they return to their Company, and ſet ſail again, and after a Courſe of thirty Days came to *Africa*, being ignorant as yet whither to ſteer. From thence they came to the the *Philenian* Altars, and to a Place called *Selina*, and ſail'd between *Ruſcicada* and the Mountains of *Azara*, where they underwent great Danger by Pirates, but notwithſtanding vanquiſh'd them, and enrich'd themſelves with their Spoils.

CHAP. XII.

Brutus *enters* Aquitain *with* Corineus.

FROM thence paſſing the River *Malua* they arrived at *Mauritania*, where at laſt for want of Proviſions they were oblig'd to go aſhore; and dividing themſelves into ſeveral Bands they laid waſte that whole Country. When they had well ſtor'd their Ships, they ſteer'd to *Hercules*'s Pillars, where they ſaw ſome of thoſe Sea-Monſters, called *Syrens*, which ſurrounded their Ships, and

Digitized by Google

and had very near overturn'd them. However they made a Shift to escape, and came to the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, upon the Shores of which they found four several Nations descended from the banish'd *Trojans*, that had accompanied *Antenor* in his Flight. The Name of their Commander was *Corineus*, a modest Man in Matters of Council, and excelling in Greatness of Courage and Boldness, who in an Encounter with any Person even of Gigantick Stature, would immediately overthrow him, as if he engag'd with a Child. When they understood from whom he was descended, they join'd Company with him and those under his Government, who from the Name of their Leader were afterwards called the *Cornish* People, and indeed were more serviceable to *Brutus* than the Rest in all his Engagements. From thence they came to *Aquitain*, and entring the Mouth of the *Loire* cast Anchor. There they staid seven Days and view'd the Country. At that Time *Goffarius Pictus* was King of *Aquitain*, who having an Account brought him of the Arrival of a foreign People with a great Fleet upon his Coasts, sent Ambassadors to them to demand, whether they brought with them Peace or War. The Ambassadors therefore in their Way towards the Fleet met with *Corineus*, who was come out with two hundred Men to hunt in the Woods. They demanded of him,

Digitized by Google

him, who gave him Leave to enter the King's Forests, and kill his Game; (which by an ancient Law no Body was to do without Leave from the Prince.) *Corineus* made Answer, That as to that there ought to be no Occasion for Leave; upon which one of them named *Imbertus*, rushing forward, with a full drawn Bow levelled a Shot at him. *Corineus* avoids the Arrow and immediately runs up to him, and with his Bow in his Hand breaks his Head. The rest fled after a narrow Escape, and carried the News of this Disaster to *Goffarius*. The *Pictavian* General was struck with Sorrow for it, and immediately raised a vast Army, to revenge on them the Death of his Ambassador. *Brutus* on the other Hand, upon hearing the Rumour of his coming, sends away the Women and Children to the Ships, which he took Care to be well guarded, and commands them to stay there, while he with the Rest that were able to bear Arms should go to meet the Army. At last when an Assault was made a bloody Fight ensu'd; in which after a great Part of the Day had been spent, *Corineus* was asham'd to see the *Aquitans* so bravely stand their Ground, and the *Trojans* maintaining the Fight without Victory. He takes therefore fresh Courage, and drawing off his Men to the right Wing, breaks in upon the very thickest of the Enemies Ranks, where he made such Slaughter on every

Digitized by Google

every Side, that at last he pierc'd through the Cohort, and put them all to Flight. In this Encounter he had lost his Sword, but by good Fortune met with a Battle-Ax, with which he clave down to the Waste every one that stood in his Way. *Brutus* and every Body else both Friends and Enemies were amaz'd at his Courage and Strength, who brandishing about his Battle-Ax among the flying Troops, did not a little terify them with these insulting Words. "Whither fly ye, Cowards? whither fly "ye, base Wretches? stand your Ground, "that ye may encounter *Corineus*. What, "for shame, do so many Thousands of you "fly one Man? However, take this Com-"fort for your Flight, that you are pur-"su'd by one, before whom the *Tyrrhenian* "Giants could not stand their Ground, but "fell down slain in Heaps together.

CHAP. XIII.

Goffarius *routed by* Brutus.

AT these Words one of them, named *Subardus*, who was a Consul, returns with three hundred Men to assault him: But *Corineus* with his Shield wards off the Blow, and lifting up his Battle-Ax gave him such a

Digitized by Google

a Stroke upon the Top of his Helmet, that at once he clave him down to the Waſte: And then forthwith ruſhing upon the Reſt he made terrible Slaughter by wheeling about his Battle-Ax among them, and running to and fro ſhew'd no leſs Bravery in receiving the Blows, than in the Numbers he kill'd of the Enemy. Some had their Hands and Arms, ſome their very Shoulders, ſome again their Heads, and others their Legs cut off by him. All fought with him only, and he alone engag'd them all. *Brutus* ſeeing him thus beſet, out of meer Affection to him runs with a Band of Men to his Aſſiſtance: At which the Battle is again renew'd with Vigour and with loud Shouts, and great Numbers ſlain on both Sides. But now the *Trojans* preſently gain the Victory, and put *Goffarius* with his *Pictavians* to flight. The King after a narrow Eſcape went to ſeveral Parts of *Gaul*, to procure Succours among ſuch Princes as were related or known to him. At that Time *Gaul* was ſubject to twelve Princes, who with equal Authority poſſeſs'd the Government of that whole Country. Theſe receive him courteouſly, and promiſe with one Conſent, to expel that foreign Nation from the Coaſts of *Aquitain*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIV.

Brutus *after his Victory over* Goffarius, *destroys* Aquitain *with Fire and Sword.*

BRUTUS in Joy for the Victory enriches his Men with the Spoils of the Slain, and then dividing them again into several Bodies, marches into the Country with a Design to lay it wholly waste, and lade his Fleet with the Riches of it. With this View he sets the Cities on Fire, seizes the Riches that were hid in them, destroys the Fields, and makes dismal Slaughter among the Citizens and common People, being unwilling to leave so much as one alive of that wretched Nation. While he was making this Destruction over all *Aquitain*, he came to a Place where the City of *Tours* now stands, which he afterwards built, as *Homer* testifies. As soon as he had look'd out a Place convenient for the Purpose, he pitch'd his Camp there, for a Place of safe Retreat, when occasion should require. For he was afraid on Account of *Goffarius*'s Approach with the Kings and Princes of *Gaul*, and a very great Army, which was now come near the Place, ready to give him Battle. Having therefore finish'd his Camp he expected

Digitized by Google

expected to engage with *Goffarius* in two Days Time, trusting in the Conduct and Courage of the Youth under his Command.

CHAP. XV.

Goffarius's *Fight with* Brutus.

GOFFARIUS upon Advices that the *Trojans* were in those Parts, ceas'd not to march Day and Night, till he came within a close View of *Brutus*'s Camp; and then with a stern Look and disdainful Smile, broke out into these Expressions. "Oh "wretched Fate! Have these base Exiles "made a Camp also in my Kingdom? Arm, "Arm, Soldiers, and march through their "thickest Ranks: We shall quickly take "these pitiful Fellows like Sheep, and send "them about our Kingdom for Slaves." At these Words they prepar'd their Arms, and rang'd in twelve Bodies advance towards the Enemy. *Brutus* on the other Hand with his Forces drawn up in Order goes out boldly to meet them, and gave his Men Directions for their Conduct, that is, where to Assault, and where to be upon the Defensive. At the Beginning of the Attack, the *Trojans* had the Advantage, and made

Digitized by Google

made a quick Slaughter of the Enemy, of whom there fell near two thousand; which so terrify'd the Rest, that they were just ready to fly. But as the Victory generally falls to that Side which has very much the Superiority in Numbers; so the *Gauls* being three to one of the other, though overpower'd at first, yet at last joining in a great Body together broke in upon the *Trojans*; and forc'd them to retire to their Camp with Slaughter. The Victory thus gained, they besieged them in their Camp, with a Design not to suffer them to stir out, before they should either surrender themselves Prisoners in Chains, or be cruelly starv'd to Death with a long Famine.

In the mean Time, *Corineus* the Night following entred into Consultation with *Brutus*, and propos'd to go out that Night by By-ways, and conceal himself in an adjacent Wood till break of Day; and while *Brutus* should sally forth upon the Enemy in the Morning Twilight, he with his Company would surprize them from behind, and put them to Slaughter. *Brutus* was pleas'd with this Stratagem of *Corineus*, who according to his Engagement got out cunningly with three thousand Men, and put himself under the Covert of the Woods. As soon as it was Day *Brutus* marshalled his Men and open'd the Camp to go out to Fight. The *Gauls* quickly meet him and begin the Engage-

Digitized by Google

Engagement: Many Thousands fall on both Sides, neither Party giving any Quarter. There was present a *Trojan*, named *Turonus*, the Nephew of *Brutus*, inferiour to none but *Corineus* in Courage and strength of Body. He alone with his Sword kill'd six hundred Men, but at last was unfortunately slain himself by the *Gauls* pouring in upon him. From him did the City of *Tours* derive its Name, because he was buried there. While both Armies were thus warmly engag'd, *Corineus* came upon them unawares, and fell fiercely upon the Back of the Enemy: Which put new Courage into their Friends on the other Side, and made them exert themselves with much more Vigour. The *Gauls* were astonished at the very shout of *Corineus*'s Men, and thinking their Number to be much greater than it really was, they hastened to quit the Field; but the *Trojans* pursued them, and killed them in the Pursuit; nor desisted till they had got a compleat Victory. *Brutus*, though in Joy for the great Success, yet was afflicted to observe the Number of his Forces daily lessened, while that of the Enemy was still more and more. He was in suspence for some Time, whether he had best continue the War any longer; but at last chose to return to his Ships, while the greater Part of his Followers was yet safe, and hitherto victorious; and to go in quest of the Island, which the

Digitized by Google

Goddess had foretold him of. So without farther delay, he with the Consent of his Company repaired to the Fleet, and lading it with the Riches and precious Spoils he had got, set sail with a fair Wind towards the promised Island; and arrived at the Shore of *Totnes*.

CHAP. XVI.

Albion *divided between* Brutus *and* Corineus.

THE Island was then called *Albion*, and was inhabited by none but a few Giants. Notwithstanding the pleasant Situation of Places, the Plenty of Rivers abounding with Fish, and the engaging Prospect of Woods, made *Brutus* and his Company very desirous to fix their Habitation in it. In their passing therefore through all the Provinces, they force the Giants to fly into the Caves of the Mountains, and divide the Country among them according to the Direction of their Commander. Then they begin to till the Ground and build Houses, so that in a little Time the Country look'd like a Place that had been long inhabited. At last *Brutus* calls the Island after his own Name *Britain*, and his Companions

Digitized by Google

panions *Britains*. For by this Derivation of the Name he was desirous to perpetuate his Memory. From whence afterwards the Language of the Nation, which at first bore the Name of *Trojan*, or rough *Greek*, was called *British*. But *Corineus*, in Imitation of his Leader, called that Part of the Island which fell to his Share, *Corinea*, and his People *Corineans*, after his Name: And though he had his Choice of the Provinces before all the Rest, yet he preferred this Country, which is now called in *Latin Cornubia*, either from its being in Shape of a Horn, (in *Latin Cornu*,) or from the Corruption of the said Name. For it was a Diversion to him to encounter with the Giants, which were in greater Number there, than in all the other Provinces, that fell to the Share of his Companions. Among the Rest was one detestable Monster, named *Goemagot*, in Stature twelve Cubits, and of such prodigious Strength, that at one Shake he pulled up an Oak, as if it had been a Hazel Wand. On a certain Day when *Brutus* was holding a solemn Festival to the Gods, in the Port where they at first landed, this Giant with twenty more of his Companions came in upon the *Britains*, among whom he made a dreadful Slaughter. But the *Britains* at last assembling together in a Body, put them to the Rout, and killed them every one but *Goemagot*.

Digitized by Google

Brutus had given Orders to have him preserved alive, out of a Desire to see a Combat between him and *Corineus*, who took a great Pleasure in such Rencounters. *Corineus* overjoy'd at this, prepares himself, and throwing aside his Arms, challenged him to wrestle with him. At the Beginning of the Rencounter, *Corineus* and the Giant standing Front to Front, strongly fetter each other in their Arms, and pant aloud for Breath; but *Goëmagot* presently grasping *Corineus* with all his Might, broke three of his Ribs, two on his right Side and one on his left. At which *Corineus* highly enraged, roused up his whole Strength, and snatching him upon his Shoulders, ran with him as fast as he was able for the Weight, to the next Shore, and there getting upon the Top of a high Rock, hurled down the savage Monster into the Sea; where falling by the Sides of craggy Rocks, he was cruelly tore to Pieces, and coloured the Waves with his Blood. The Place where he fell, taking its Name from the Giants Fall, is called *Lam-Goëmagot*, that is, *Goëmagot*'s Leap, to this Day.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XVII.

The Building of New Troy *by* Brutus *upon the River* Thames.

BRUTUS having thus at last seen his Kingdom, entred upon a Design of building a City, and in order to it, travelled through the Land to find out a convenient Situation; and coming to the River *Thames*, he walked along the Shore, and at last pitched upon a Place very fit for his Purpose. Here therefore he built a City, which he called *New Troy*; under which Name it continued a long Time after, till at last by the Corruption of the Original Word, it came to be called *Trinovantum*. But afterwards when *Lud*, the Brother of *Cassibellaun*, who made War against *Julius Cæsar*, obtained the Government of the Kingdom, he surrounded it with stately Walls, and Towers of admirable Workmanship, and ordered it to be called after his Name, *Kaer-Lud*, that is, the City of *Lud*. But this very Thing became afterwards the Occasion of a great Quarrel between him and his Brother *Nennius*, who took very heinously his abolishing the Name of *Troy* in this Country. Of this Quarrel *Gildas* the Historian has given a large Account; for

Digitized by Google

which Reason I chuse to pass it over, for fear of debasing by my Account of it, what so great a Writer has so eloquently related.

CHAP. XVIII.

New Troy *being built, and Laws made for the Government of it, it is given to the Citizens that were to inhabit it.*

AFTER *Brutus* had finished the Building of the City, he made Choice of the Citizens that were to inhabit it, and prescribed them Laws for their peaceable Government. At this Time *Eli* the Priest governed in *Judea*, and the Ark of the Covenant was taken by the *Philistines*. At the same Time also, the Sons of *Hector*, after the Expulsion of the Posterity of *Antenor*, reigned in *Troy*; as did *Sylvius Æneas* in *Italy*, he being the Son of *Æneas*, the Uncle of *Brutus*, and the third King of the *Latins*.

THE

THE British History.

The Second Book.

CHAP. I.

After the Death of Brutus, *his three Sons succeed him in the Kingdom.*

DURING these Transactions, *Brutus* had by his Wife *Ignoge* three famous Sons, whose Names were *Locrin*, *Albanact* and *Kamber*. These, after their Fathers Death, which happened in the twenty fourth Year after his Arrival, buried him in the City he had built, and divided the Kingdom of *Britain* among them, and then retired each

Digitized by Google

to his Government. *Locrin* the eldeſt, poſſeſſed the middle Part of the Iſland, called afterwards from his Name, *Loëgria*. *Kamber* had that Part which lies beyond the River *Severn*, now called *Wales*, but which was for a long Time named *Kambria*; and hence that People ſtill call themſelves in their *Britiſh* Tongue *Kambri*. *Albanact* the younger Brother, poſſeſſed the Country he called *Albania*, now *Scotland*. After they had a long Time reigned in Peace together, *Humber* King of the *Huns* arrived in *Albania*, and in Battel killed *Albanact*, and forced his People to fly to *Locrin* for Protection.

CHAP. II.

Locrin *having routed* Humber, *falls in Love with* Eſtrildis.

LOCRIN at the hearing of the News, joined with his Brother *Kamber*, and went attended with the whole Strength of the Kingdom to meet the King of the *Huns* near the River now called *Humber*, where he gave him Battle, and put him to the Rout. *Humber* made towards the River in his Flight, and was drowned in it, on which Occaſion it has ſince born his Name. *Locrin* after the Victory, beſtows the Enemies

Digitized by Google

mies Plunder upon his Men, reserving only for himself the Gold and Silver he found in the Ships, together with three young Ladies of admirable Beauty; whereof one was the Daughter of a King in *Germany*, whom with the other two *Humber* had forcibly brought away with him, after he had ruined their Country. Her Name was *Estrildis*, and her Beauty such as was hardly to be matched. No Ivory, no new fallen Snow, no Lillies could exceed the Whiteness of her Skin. *Locrin* being very much captivated with the Love of her, would have gladly married her; which when *Corineus* found, he was extremely incensed, on Account of the Engagement *Locrin* had entred into with him to marry his Daughter.

CHAP. III.

Corineus *resents* Locrins *Amour*.

HE went therefore to the King, and shaking a Battle-Ax in his right Hand, vented his Rage against him in these Words: "Do you thus reward me, "*Locrin*, for the many Wounds which I "have suffered under your Fathers Com- "mand, in his Wars with strange Nati- "ons,

Digitized by Google

"ous, that you must slight my Daughter, "and debase yourself to marry a Barba- "rian? While there is Strength in this "right Hand, that has been destructive to "so many Giants upon the *Tyrrhenian* "Coasts, I will never put up this Affront." And repeating this again and again with a loud Voice, he shook his Battle-Ax as if he was going to strike him, till the Friends of both interposed, who after they had appeased *Corineus*, obliged *Locrin* to perform his Agreement.

CHAP. IV.

Locrin *at last marries* Guendoloena, *the Daughter of* Corineus.

LOCRIN therefore married *Corineus*'s Daughter, named *Guendolæna*, yet still retained his Love for *Estrildis*, for whom he made Apartments under Ground, in which he entertained her, and caused her to be honourably attended. For he was resolved at least to carry on a private Amour with her, since for fear of *Corineus* he could not live with her openly. In this Manner he concealed her, and made frequent Visits to her for seven Years together, without the Privity of any, but those who were the most inti-

Digitized by Google

intimate of his Domesticks; and all under a Pretence of performing some secret Sacrifices to his Gods; and thus imposed upon the Credulity of every Body. In the mean Time *Estrildis* became big with Child, and was delivered of a most beautiful Daughter, whom she named *Sabre*. *Guendolæna* was also with Child, and brought forth a Son, who was named *Madan*, and put under the Care of his Grandfather *Corineus* for his Education.

CHAP. V.

Locrin *is killed, and* Estrildis *with* Sabre *is thrown into a River.*

BUT in Process of Time when *Corineus* was dead, *Locrin* divorced *Guendolæna*, and advanced *Estrildis* to be Queen. *Guendolæna* provoked beyond Measure at this, retired into *Cornwal*, where she assembled together all the Forces of that Kingdom, and began to raise Disturbances against *Locrin*. At last both Armies join Battle near the River *Sture*, where *Locrin* was killed by the Shot of an Arrow. After his Death, *Guendolæna* took upon her the Government of the whole Kingdom, retaining her Fathers furious Spirit. For she

Digitized by Google

ſhe commanded *Eſtrildis* and her Daughter *Sabre* to be thrown into the River now called *Severn*, and publiſhed an Edict through all *Britain*, that the River ſhould bear the Damſels Name, as being deſirous to perpetuate her Memory, and by that the Infamy of her Husband: So that to this Day the River is called in the *Britiſh* Tongue *Sabren*, which by the Corruption of the Name, is in another Language *Sabrina*.

CHAP. VI.

Guendoloena *delivers up the Kingdom to* Maddan *her Son, after whom ſucceeds* Menpricius.

GUENDOLOENA reigned fifteen Years after the Death of *Locrin*, who had reigned ten, and then advanced her Son *Maddan* (whom ſhe ſaw now at Maturity) to the Throne, contenting herſelf with the Country of *Cornwal* for the Remainder of her Life. At this Time *Samuel* the Prophet governed in *Judea*, *Sylvius Æneas* was yet living, and *Homer* was eſteemed a famous Orator and Poet. *Maddan* now in Poſſeſſion of the Crown, had by his Wife two Sons, *Menpricius* and *Malim*, and ruled the Kingdom in Peace and with Care

Digitized by Google

Care forty Years. As soon as he was dead, the two Brothers quarrelled for the Kingdom, each being ambitious of the Sovereignty of the whole Island. *Menpricius* impatient to attain his ambitious Ends, enters into Treaty with *Malin*, under Colour of making a Composition with him, but by a formed Conspiracy murdered him in the Assembly where their Ambassadors were met. By this Means he obtained the Dominion of the whole Island; over which he exercised such Tyranny, that he scarce left a Nobleman alive in it, and either by Violence or Treachery, oppressed every one that he apprehended might be likely to succeed him, pursuing his Hatred to his whole Race. He also deserted his own Wife, by whom he had a noble Youth named *Ebraucus*, and addicted himself to Sodomy, preferring unnatural Lust to the Pleasure of the Conjugal State. At last in the twentieth Year of his Reign, while he was a Hunting, he retired from his Company into a Valley, where he was surrounded by a great Multitude of ravenous Wolves, and in a horrible Manner devoured by them. Then did *Saul* reign in *Judea*, and *Eurisheus* in *Lacedemonia*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VII.

Ebraucus *the Successor of* Menpricius, *conquers the* Gauls, *and builds the Towns* Kaerebrauc, &c.

MENPRICIUS being dead, *Ebraucus* his Son, a Man of great Stature and wonderful Strength, took upon him the Government of *Britain*, which he held forty Years. He was the first after *Brutus* who invaded *Gaul* with a Fleet, and distressed its Provinces by killing their Men and laying waste their Cities; and having by this Means enriched himself with an infinite Mass of Gold and Silver, he returned Victorious. After this he built a City on the other Side of *Humber*, which from his own Name he called *Kaerebrauc*, that is the City of *Ebraucus*, about the Time that *David* reigned in *Judea*, and *Sylvius Latinus* in *Italy*, and that *Gad*, *Nathan* and *Asaph* prophesied in *Israel*. He also built the City of *Alclud* towards *Albania*, and the Town of Mount *Agned*, called at this Time the *Castle of Maidens*, or the *Mountain of Sorrow*.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Ebraucus's *twenty Sons go to* Germany, *and his thirty Daughters to* Sylvius Alba *in* Italy.

THIS Prince had twenty Sons and thirty Daughters by twenty Wives, and with great Valour governed the Kingdom of *Britain* sixty Years. The Names of his Sons were, *Brutus* surnamed *Greenshield*, *Margadud*, *Sisillius*, *Regin*, *Morivid*, *Bladud*, *Lagon*, *Bodloan*, *Kincar*, *Spaden*, *Gaul*, *Darden*, *Eldad*, *Ivor*, *Gangu*, *Hector*, *Kerin*, *Rud*, *Assarach*, *Buel*. The Names of his Daughters were *Gloigni*, *Ignogni*, *Oudas*, *Guenliam*, *Gaudid*, *Angarad*, *Guendoloe*, *Tangustel*, *Gorgon*, *Medlan*, *Methahel*, *Ourer*, *Malure*, *Kambreda*, *Regan*, *Guel*, *Ecub*, *Nest*, *Cheun*, *Stadud*, *Gladud*, *Ebren*, *Blagan*, *Aballac*, *Angaes*, *Galaes*, the most celebrated Beauty that was then in *Britain* or *Gaul*, *Edra*, *Anaor*, *Stadial*, *Egron*. All these Daughters their Father sent into *Italy* to *Sylvius Alba*, who reigned after *Sylvius Latinus*, where they were married among the *Trojan* Nobility, the *Latin* and *Sabine* Women refusing to match with them. But the Sons under the Conduct of their Brother *Assaracus* departed in a Fleet to *Germany*,

many, and having with the Assistance of *Sylvius Alba* subdued the People there, obtained that Kingdom.

CHAP. IX.

After Ebraucus *reigns* Brutus *his Son, after him* Leil, *and after* Leil, Hudibras.

BUT *Brutus* surnamed *Greenshield*, stay'd with his Father, whom he succeeded in the Government, and reigned twelve Years. After him reigned *Leil* his Son, a peaceable and just Prince, who enjoying a prosperous Reign, built in the North Part of *Britain* a City called by his Name *Kaerleil*; at the same Time that *Solomon* began to build the Temple of *Jerusalem*, and the Queen of *Sheba* came to hear his Wisdom; at which Time also *Sylvius Epitus* succeeded his Father *Alba* in *Italy*. *Leil* reigned twenty five Years, but towards the latter End of his Life grew more remiss in his Government, so that his Neglect of Affairs quickly occasioned a civil Dissension in the Kingdom. After him reigned his Son *Hudibras* thirty nine Years, and composed the civil Dissension among his People. He built *Kaerlem* or *Canterbury*, *Kaerguen*

Digitized by Google

Kaergaen or *Winchester*, and the Town of Mount *Paladur*, now *Shaftsbury*. At this Place an Eagle spoke, while the Wall of the Town was building; and indeed I should not have failed transmitting the Speech to Posterity, had I thought it true as the rest of the History. At this Time reigned *Capys* the Son of *Epitus*; and *Haggai*, *Amos*, *Joel*, and *Azariah* were Prophets in *Israel*.

CHAP. X.

Bladud *succeeds* Hudibras *in the Kingdom, and practises Magical Operations.*

NEXT succeeded *Bladud* his Son, and reigned twenty Years. He built *Kaerbadus*, now *Bath*, and made hot Baths in it for the Benefit of the Publick, which he dedicated to the Goddess *Minerva*; in whose Temple he kept Fires that never went out nor consumed to Ashes, but as soon as they began to decay, were turned into Balls of Stone. About this Time the Prophet *Elias* prayed that it might not rain upon Earth; and it did not reign for three Years and six Months. This Prince was a very ingenious Man, and taught Necromancy in his Kingdom, nor left off pursuing

Digitized by Google

ing his Magical Operations, till he attempted to fly to the upper Region of the Air with Wings he had prepared, and fell down upon the Temple of *Apollo* in the City of *Trinovantum*, where he was dashed to Pieces.

CHAP. XI.

Leir, *the Son of* Bladud, *having no Son, divides his Kingdom among his Daughters.*

AFTER this unhappy Fate of *Bladud*, *Leir* his Son was advanced to the Throne, and nobly governed his Country fixty Years. He built upon the River Soar a City called in the *British* Tongue *Kaerleir*, in the *Saxon Leircestre*. He was without Male Issue, but had three Daughters whose Names were *Gonorilla*, *Regan*, and *Cordeilla*, of whom he was doatingly fond, but especially of his youngest *Cordeilla*. When he began to grow old, he had Thoughts of dividing his Kingdom among them, and of bestowing them on such Husbands, as were fit to be advanced to the Government with them. But to make Tryal who was the worthiest of the best Part of his Kingdom, he went to each of them to ask, which of them

Digitized by Google

them loved him most. The Question being proposed, *Gonorilla* the Eldest made Answer, "That she called Heaven to Witness, she "loved him more than her own Soul." The Father reply'd, "Since you have preferred "my declining Age before your own Life, "I will marry you, my dearest Daughter, to "whomsoever you shall make Choice of, "and give with you the third Part of my "Kingdom." Then *Regan*, the second Daughter, willing after the Example of her Sister, to prevail upon her Fathers good Nature, answered with an Oath, "That she "could not otherwise express her Thoughts, "but that she loved him above all Crea-"tures." The credulous Father upon this made her the same Promise that he did to her elder Sister, that is, the Choice of a Husband, with the third Part of his Kingdom. But *Cordeilla* the youngest, understanding how easily he was satisfied with the flattering Expressions of her Sisters, was desirous to make Tryal of his Affection after a different Manner. "My Father, said "she, Is there any Daughter that can love "her Father more than Duty requires? In "my Opinion, whoever pretends to it, must "disguise her real Sentiments under the "Veil of Flattery. I have always loved "you as a Father, nor do I yet depart from "my purposed Duty; and if you insist to "have something more extorted from me,

Digitized by Google

" hear now the Greatneſs of my Affection, " which I always bear you, and take this " for a ſhort Anſwer to all your Queſtions; " Look how much you have, ſo much is " your Value, and ſo much I love you." The Father ſuppoſing that ſhe ſpoke this out of the Abundance of her Heart, was highly provoked, and immediately reply'd; " Since you have ſo far deſpiſed my Old " age, as not to think me worthy the Love " that your Siſters expreſs for me, you ſhall " have from me the like Regard, and ſhall " be excluded from any Share with your " Siſters in my Kingdom. Notwithſtand- " ing I do not ſay but that ſince you are " my Daughter, I will marry you to ſome " Foreigner, if Fortune offers you any ſuch " Husband; but will never, I do aſſure " you, make it my Buſineſs to procure ſo " honourable a Match for you as for your " Siſters; becauſe though I have hitherto " loved you more than them, you have in " Requital thought me leſs worthy your " Affection than they." And without further Delay, after Conſultation with his Nobility, he beſtowed his two other Daughters upon the Dukes of *Cornwal* and *Albania*; with half the Iſland at preſent, but after his Death, the Inheritance of the whole Monarchy of *Britain*.

It happened after this, that *Aganippus* King of the *Franks*, having heard of the Fame

Fame of *Cordeilla*'s Beauty, forthwith sent his Ambassadors to the King to desire *Cordeilla* in Marriage. The Father retaining yet his Anger to her, made Answer; "That "he was very willing to bestow his Daugh- "ter, but without either Money or Terri- "tories; because he had already given a- "way his Kingdom with all his Treasure, "to his elder Daughters, *Gonorilla* and *Re-* "*gan*." When this was told *Aganippus*, he being very much in Love with the Lady, sent again to King *Leir*, to tell him, "That "he had Money and Territories enough, as "he possessed the third Part of *Gaul*, and "desired no more than his Daughter only, "that he might have Heirs by her." At last the Match was concluded, and *Cordeilla* was sent to *Gaul*, and married to *Aganippus*.

CHAP. XII.

Leir *finding the Ingratitude of his two eldest Daughters, betakes himself to his youngest* Cordeilla *in* Gaul.

A Long Time after this, when *Leir* came to be infirm through Old-age, the two Dukes, upon whom he had bestowed *Britain* with his two Daughters, made an

Digitized by Google

Insurrection against him, and deprived him of his Kingdom, and of all Regal Authority which he had hitherto exercised with great Power and Glory. But at last they came to an Agreement, and *Maglaunus* Duke of *Albania*, one of his Sons-in-Law, was to allow him and sixty Soldiers, who were to be kept for State, a Subsistence at his own House. After two Years Stay with his Son-in-Law, his Daughter *Gonorilla* grudged at the Number of his Men, who began to upbraid the Ministers of the Court with their scanty Allowance; and having spoke to her Husband about it, gave Orders that the Number of her Fathers Attendants be reduced to thirty, and the rest discharged. The Father resenting this Treatment, left *Maglaunus*, and went to *Henuinus*, Duke of *Cornwal*, to whom he had married his Daughter *Regau*. Here he met with an honourable Reception, but before the Year was at an End, a Quarrel happened between the two Families, which raised *Regau*'s Indignation; so that she commanded her Father to discharge all his Attendants but five, and to be contented with their Service. This second Affliction was unsupportable to him, and made him return again to his former Daughter, with Hopes that the Misery of his Condition might move in her some Sentiments of Filial Piety, and that he with his Family might find a Subsistence from her. But she

not

Digitized by Google

not forgetting her Resentments, swore by the Gods, He should not stay with her, unless he would dismiss his Retinue, and be contented with the Attendance of one Man; and with bitter Reproaches, told him how ill his Desire of vain-glorious Pomp suited with his Old-age and Poverty. When he found that she was by no Means to be prevailed upon, he was at last forced to comply, and dismissing the Rest, to take up with one Man. But by this Time he began to reflect more sensibly with himself upon the Grandeur from which he had fallen, and the miserable State he was now reduced to, and to enter upon Thoughts of going beyond Sea to his youngest Daughter. Yet he doubted whether he should be able to move her Commiseration, whom (as was related above) he had treated so unworthily. However disdaining to bear any longer such base Usage, he took Shipping to *Gaul*. In his Passage, he observed he had only the third Place given him among the Princes that were with him in the Ship, at which with deep Sighs and Tears, he burst forth into the following Complaint.

" O irreversible Decrees of the Fates,
" that never swerve from your stated
" Course! Why did you ever advance me to
" an unstable Felicity, since the Punishment
" of lost Happiness is greater than the Sense

Digitized by Google

" of present Misery? The Remembrance of
" the Time when vast Numbers of Men
" obsequiously attended me at the taking
" of Cities and wasting the Enemies Coun-
" tries, more deeply pierces my Heart, than
" the View of my present Calamity, which
" has exposed me to the Derision of those
" who formerly laid at my Feet. O Rage
" of Fortune! Shall I ever again see the
" Day, when I may be able to reward those
" according to their Deserts who have for-
" saken me in my Distress? How true was
" thy Answer, *Cordeilla*, when I asked thee
" concerning thy Love to me, *As much as*
" *you have, so much is your Value, and so much*
" *I love you*? While I had any Thing to give
" they valued me, being Friends not to me,
" but to my Gifts: They loved me then in-
" deed, but my Gifts much more: When
" my Gifts ceased, my Friends vanished.
" But with what Face shall I presume to see
" you my dearest Daughter, since in my
" Anger I married you upon worse Terms
" than your Sisters, who, after all the migh-
" ty Favours they have received from me,
" suffer me to be in Banishment and Poverty?

As he was lamenting his Condition in these and the like Expressions, he arrived at *Karitia*, where his Daughter was, and waited before the City while he sent a Messenger to inform her of the Misery he was fallen into,

Digitized by Google

into, and to desire her Relief to a Father that suffered both Hunger and Nakedness. *Cordeilla* was startled at the News, and wept bitterly, and with Tears asked him how many Men her Father had with him. The Messenger answered, he had none but one Man, who had been his Armour-bearer, and was staying with him without the Town. Then she took what Money she thought might be sufficient, and gave it the Messenger, with Orders to him to carry her Father to another City, and there give out that he was Sick, and to provide for him Bathing, Clothes, and all other Nourishment. She likewise gave Orders that he should take into his Service forty Men well cloathed and accoutred, and when all Things were thus prepared that he should then notify his Arrival to King *Aganippus* and his Daughter. The Messenger quickly returning carried *Leir* to another City, and there kept him concealed, till he had performed every Thing that *Cordeilla* had commanded.

CHAP. XIII.

He is very honourably received by Cordeilla, *and the King of* Gaul.

As soon as he was provided with his Royal Apparel, Ornaments and Retinue, he sent Word to *Aganippus* and his Daughter,

Digitized by Google

Daughter, that he was driven out of his Kingdom of *Britain* by his Sons-in-Law, and was come to them to procure their Assistance for the Recovering of his Dominions. Upon which they being attended with their chief Ministers of State and the Nobility of the Kingdom, went out to meet him, and received him honourably, and submitted to his Management the whole Power of *Gaul*, till such Time as he should be restored to his former Dignity.

CHAP. XIV.

Leir *by the Help of his Son-in-Law and* Cordiella, *being restored to the Kingdom dies.*

IN the mean Time *Aganippus* sent Officers over all *Gaul* to raise an Army, in Order to restore his Father-in-Law to his Kingdom of *Britain*. Which done, *Leir* returned to *Britain* with his Son and Daughter and their Forces they had raised, where he fought with his Sons-in-Law, and routed them. Thus having reduced the whole Kingdom under his Power, he died in the third Year after. *Aganippus* also died; so that *Cordeilla* now obtaining the Government of the Kingdom, buried her Father in a certain

Digitized by Google

tain Vault, which she ordered to be made for him under the River *Sore* in *Leicester*. The Subterraneous Place where he was buried, had been built to the Honour of the God *Janus*. And here all the Workmen of the City, upon the anniversary Solemnity of that Festival, used to begin their yearly Labours.

CHAP. XV.

Cordeilla *being imprisoned kills herself*. Margan *aspiring to the whole Kingdom is killed by* Cunedagius.

AFTER a peaceable Possession of the Government for five Years, *Cordeilla* began to meet with Disturbances from the two Sons of her Sisters, being both young Men of great Spirit, whereof one, named *Margan*, was born to *Maglaunus*, and the other, named *Cunedagius*, to *Henuinus*. These after the Death of their Fathers succeeding them in their Dukedoms, were incensed to see *Britain* subject to the Power of a Woman, and raised Forces in Order to make an Insurrection against the Queen; nor desisted from their Hostilities, till after a general Waste of her Countries, and several Battles fought, they at last took her and put her in Prison; where

Digitized by Google

where for Grief at the Loſs of her Kingdom ſhe killed herſelf. After this they divided the Iſland between them, of which the Part that reaches from the North Side of *Humber* to *Cathneſs*, fell to *Morgan*; the other Part from the ſame River Weſtward was *Cunedagius*'s Share. At the End of two Years, ſome reſtleſs Spirits that took Pleaſure in the Troubles of the Nation, had Acceſs to *Morgan*, and inſpired him with vain Conceits by repreſenting to him, how mean and diſgraceful it was for him not to govern the whole Iſland, which was his due by Right of Birth. Stirred up with theſe and the like Suggeſtions, he marched with an Army through *Cunedagius*'s Country, and began to burn all before him. A War thus breaking out, he was met by *Cunedagius* and all his Forces, and upon an Attack made he killed no ſmall Number of his Men, put *Morgan* to Flight, and purſued him from one Province to another, till at laſt he killed him in a Town of *Kambria*, which ſince his Death has been by the Country People called *Morgan* to this Day. After the Victory, *Cunedagius* gained the Monarchy of the whole Iſland, which he governed gloriouſly for three and thirty Years. At this Time flouriſhed the Prophets *Iſaiah* and *Hoſhea*, and *Rome* was built upon the eleventh of the Calends of *May* by the two Brothers, *Romulus* and *Remus*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XVI.

The Succeſſors of Cunedagius *in the Kingdom:* Ferrex *is killed by his Brother* Porrex, *in a Diſpute for the Government.*

AT laſt *Cunedagius* dying, was ſucceeded by his Son *Rivallo*, a fortunate Youth, who diligently apply'd himſelf to the Affairs of the Government. In his Time it rained Blood three Days together, and there fell vaſt ſwarms of Flies, which was followed by a great Mortality among the People. After him ſucceeded *Gurguſtius* his Son; after him *Siſillius*; after him *Jago* the Nephew of *Gurguſtius*; after him *Kinmarcus* the Son of *Siſillius*; after him *Gorbogudo* who had two Sons, *Ferrex* and *Porrex*. When their Father grew old they began to quarrel about the Succeſſion; but *Porrex*, fired with a greater Ambition, forms a Deſign of killing his Brother by Treachery, which the other diſcovering eſcaped, and paſſed over into *Gaul*. There he procures Aid from *Suard* King of the *Franks*, with which he returned and made War upon his Brother; Coming to an Engagement, *Ferrex* and all the Forces attending him were killed. When their Mother, whoſe Name was *Widen*, came to be

be informed of her Sons Death, she fell into a great Rage, and conceived a mortal Hatred against the other. For she had a greater Affection for the Deceased than for him, so that nothing less would appease her Indignation for his Death, than her revenging it upon her surviving Son. She took therefore her Opportunity when he was asleep, and then fell upon him with her Women assisting her, and tore him to pieces. From that Time a long Civil War oppressed the People, and the Island came to be divided under the Power of five Kings, who mutually harassed one another.

CHAP. XVII.

Dunwallo Molmutius *gains the Sceptre of* Britain, *from whom came the* Molmutine *Laws.*

BUT at length arose a Youth of great Spirit, named *Dunwallo Molmutius*, who was the Son of *Cloten* King of *Cornwal*, and excelled all the Kings of *Britain* in Valour and Gracefulness of Person. When his Father was dead, he was no sooner possessed of the Government of that Country, than he made War against *Imner* King of *Loegria*, and killed him in Battle. Hereupon *Rudaucus*

Digitized by Google

cus King of *Kambria*, and *Staterius* King of *Albania* had a Meeting, wherein they formed an Alliance together, and marched thence with their Armies into *Dunwallo*'s Country to deſtroy all before them. *Dunwallo* met them with thirty thouſand Men, and gave them Battle: And when a great Part of the Day was ſpent in the Fight, and the Victory yet dubious, he drew off ſix hundred of his braveſt Men, and commanded them to put on the Armour of the Enemies that were ſlain, as he himſelf alſo did, and threw aſide his own. Thus accoutred he marched up with ſpeed to the Enemies Ranks, as if he was of their Party, and approaching the very Place where *Rudaucus* and *Staterius* were, commanded his Men to fall upon them. In this Aſſault were the two Kings killed and many others with them. But *Dunwallo Molmutius*, fearing leſt in this Diſguiſe his own Men might fall upon him, returns with his Companions to put off the Enemies Armour, and take his own again; and then encourages them to renew the Aſſault, which they did with great Vigour, and in a ſhort Time got the Victory, by diſperſing and putting to Flight the Enemy. From hence he marches into the Enemies Countries, deſtroys their Towns and Cities, and reduces the People under his Obedience. When he had made an entire Reduction of the whole Iſland, he prepared himſelf a Crown of Gold, and

Digitized by Google

and restored the Kingdom to its ancient State. This Prince established those which the *Britains* call the *Molmutine* Laws, famous among the *English* to this Day. In these among other Things, of which St. *Gildas* wrote a long Time after, he enacted, that the Temples of the Gods, as also Cities, should have the Privilege of giving Sanctuary and Protection to any Fugitive or Criminal, that should fly to them from his Enemy. He likewise enacted, that the Ways leading to those Temples and Cities, as also the Husbandmens Plows, should be allowed the same Privilege. So that in his Days, the Murders and Cruelties committed by Robbers were prevented, and every Body passed safe without any Violence offered him. At last after a Reign of forty Years spent in these and other Acts of Government, he died, and was buried in the City of *Trinovantum* near the Temple of *Concord*, which he himself built at the Establishment of his Laws.

THE

THE British History.

The Third Book.

CHAP. I.

Brennius *breaks Covenant with* Belinus *his Brother, and in order to make War against him, marries the Daughter of the King of the* Norwegians.

AFTER this a violent Quarrel happened between his two Sons *Belinus* and *Brennius*, who were both ambitious of ſucceeding in the Kingdom. The Diſpute was, whether of them ſhould have the Honour of wearing the Crown. After a great many ſharp Con-

Digitized by Google

fleets that passed between them, the Friends of both at last interposed, and brought them to agree upon a Division of the Kingdom on these Terms; That *Belinus* should enjoy the Crown of the Island, with the Dominions of *Loegria*, *Kambria* and *Cornwal*, as being the First born; and because according to the *Trojan* Constitution the Right of Inheritance ought to come to him: And *Brennius*, as being the Younger, should be subject to his Brother, and have for his Share *Northumberland*, which extended from the River *Humber* to *Cathness*. The Covenant therefore being confirmed upon these Conditions, they ruled the Country for five Years in Peace and Justice. But such a State of Prosperity could not long stand against the Endeavours of Faction. For now some lying Incendiaries had Access to *Brennius*, and addressed themselves to him in this Manner.

"What sluggish Spirit has possessed you, "that you can bear Subjection to *Belinus*, "to whom by Parentage and Blood you "are equal; besides your Experience in military Affairs, which you have gained by "several Engagements, when you so often "repulsed *Cheuiphus*, General of the *Morines*, "upon his invading our Country, and drove "him out of your Kingdom? Be no longer "bound by a Treaty which is a Reproach "to you, but marry the Daughter of *Elsinus* King of the *Norwegians*, that with his "Assistance

Digitized by Google

" Assistance you may recover your lost Dig-
" nity. " The Young Man inflamed with these and the like specious Suggestions, hearkened to them, and went to *Norway*, where he married the Kings Daughter, as his Flatterers had instructed him.

CHAP. II.

Brennius's *Sea-Fight with* Guichthlac *King of the* Dacians. Guichthlac *and* Brennius's *Wife, being driven ashore are taken by* Belinus.

IN the mean Time the Brother informed of this, took it heinously, that without his Leave he had presumed to act thus against him. Whereupon he marched into *Northumberland*, and possessed himself of that Country and the Cities in it, which he garisoned with his own Men. *Brennius* upon Notice given him of what his Brother had done, prepares a Fleet to return to *Britain* with a great Army of *Norwegians*. But while he was under Sail with a fair Wind, he was overtaken by *Guichthlac* King of the *Dacians*, who had pursued him. This Prince had been deeply in Love with the young Lady that *Brennius* had married, and out of meer Grief and Vexation for the Loss of

Digitized by Google

her, had prepared a Fleet for the Purſuit of *Brennius* with all Expedition. In the Sea-Fight that happened on this Occaſion, he had the Fortune to take the very Ship in which the Lady was, and brought her in among his Companions. But during the Engagement contrary Winds aroſe on a ſudden, which brought on a Storm, and diſperſed the Ships and drove them upon different Shores: So that the King of the *Dacians* being driven up and down, after a five Days Courſe arrived with the Lady at *Northumberland*, under dreadful Apprehenſions, as not knowing upon what Country this unforeſeen Caſualty had thrown him. When this came to be known to the Country People, they took them and carried them to *Belinus*, who was upon the Sea-Coaſts expecting the Arrival of his Brother. There were with *Guichthlac*'s Ship three others, one of which had belonged to *Brennius*'s Fleet. As ſoon as they had declared to the King who they were, he was overjoy'd at this happy Accident, while he was endeavouring to revenge himſelf on his Brother.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. III.

Belinus *in a Battle routs* Brennius, *who thereupon flies to* Gaul.

IN a few Days after appeared *Brennius*, with his Fleet got together again, and arrived in *Albania*; and then receiving Information of the taking of his Wife and others, and that his Brother had seized the Kingdom of *Northumberland* in his Absence, he sent his Ambassadors to him, to demand the Restitution of his Wife and Kingdom; and if he refused them, to declare that he would destroy the whole Island from Sea to Sea, and kill his Brother whenever he could come to an Engagement with him. On the other Hand *Belinus* absolutely refused to comply with his Demands, and assembling together the whole Power of the Island, went into *Albania* to give him Battle. *Brennius* upon Advice that he had suffered a Repulse, and that his Brother was upon his march against him, advanced to meet him in a Wood called *Calaterium*, in order to an Attack. When they were arrived upon the Field of Battle, each of them divided his Men into several Bodies, and then approaching towards one another, began the Fight. A great Part of the Day was spent in it, be-

Digitized by Google

cauſe on both Sides, the braveſt Men were engaged; and much Blood was ſhed, by Reaſon of the Fury with which they encountred each other. So great was the Slaughter, that the Wounded fell in Heaps, like ſtanding Corn cut down by Reapers. At laſt the *Britains* prevailing, the *Norwegians* fled with their ſhattered Troops to the Ships, but were purſued by *Belinus*, and killed without Mercy. In that Battel fell fifteen thouſand Men; nor were there a thouſand of the Reſt that eſcaped unhurt. *Brennius* with much Difficulty getting one Ship, went as Fortune drove him to the Coaſts of *Gaul*; but the Reſt that had attended him, were forced to ſculk up and down whereſoever their Misfortunes led them.

CHAP. IV.

The King of Dacia, *with* Brennius's *Wife, is releaſed out of Priſon.*

BELINUS after this Victory, called a Council of his Nobility, to adviſe with them what he ſhould do with the King of the *Dacians*, who had ſent a Meſſage to him out of Priſon, that he would ſubmit himſelf and the Kingdom of *Dacia* to him, and alſo pay

Digitized by Google

pay a yearly Tribute, if he might have Leave to depart with his Miſtreſs. He offered likewiſe to confirm this Covenant with an Oath, and giving of Hoſtages. When this Propoſal was laid before the Nobility, they unanimouſly gave their Aſſent, that *Belinus* ſhould grant *Guichthlac* his Petition upon the Terms offered. Accordingly he did grant it, and *Guichthlac* was releaſed from Priſon, and returned with his Miſtreſs into *Dacia*.

CHAP. V.

Belinus *revives and confirms the* Molmutine *Laws, eſpecially about the High-ways.*

BELINUS now finding no Body in the Kingdom of *Britain* able to make Head againſt him, and being poſſeſſed of the Sovereignty of the whole Iſland from Sea to Sea, confirmed the Laws his Father had made, and gave Command for a ſettled Execution of Juſtice through his Kingdom. But eſpecially he ordered that Cities, and the Ways leading to them, ſhould enjoy the ſame Privilege of Peace that *Dunvallo* had eſtabliſhed. But there happened to ariſe a Controverſy about the Ways, becauſe the Limits determining them were unknown. The King therefore willing to

Digitized by Google

clear the Law of all Ambiguities, ſummoned all the Workmen of the Iſland together, and commanded them to pave a Cauſeway of Stone and Mortar, which ſhould run the whole Length of the Iſland, from the Sea of *Cornwal*, to the Shore of *Cathneſs*, and lead directly to the Cities that lay along that Extent. Another he commanded to be made over the Breadth of the Kingdom, leading from *Menevia*, that was ſituated upon the *Demetian* Sea, to *Hamo*'s Port, and to paſs through the interjacent Cities. Other two he alſo made obliquely through the Iſland, for a Paſſage to the reſt of the Cities. Then he confirmed to them all Honours and Privileges, and preſcribed a Law for the Puniſhment of any Injury committed upon them. But if any one is curious to know all that he decreed concerning them, let him read the *Molmutine* Laws, which *Gildas* the Hiſtorian tranſlated from *Britiſh* into *Latin*, and King *Alfred* into *Engliſh*.

CHAP. VI.

Brennius *being made Duke of the* Allobroges, *returns to* Britain *to fight his Brother.*

WHILE *Belinus* was thus reigning in Peace and Tranquillity, his Brother *Brennius*, who (as we ſaid before) was driven

Digitized by Google

ven upon the Coasts of *Gaul*, suffered great Torments of Mind. For it was a great Affliction to him to be banished his Country, and to have no Power of returning to retrieve his Loss. Being ignorant what Course to take, he went among the Princes of *Gaul*, accompanied only with twelve Men; and when he had related his Misfortune to every one of them, but could procure Assistance from none, he went at last to *Seginus*, Duke of the *Allobroges*, from whom he had an honourable Reception. During his Stay here, he contracted such an Intimacy with the Duke, that he became the greatest Favourite in the Court. For in all Affairs both of Peace and War, he shew'd a great Capacity, so that this Prince loved him with a paternal Affection. He was besides of a graceful Aspect, tall and slender in Stature, and expert in Hunting and Fowling, as became his Princely Birth. So great was the Friendship between them, that the Duke resolved to give him his only Daughter in Marriage; and in Case he himself should have no Male Issue, he appointed him and his Daughter to succeed him in his Kingdom of the *Allobroges* after his Death: But if he should yet have a Son, then he promised his Assistance to advance him to the Kingdom of *Britain*. Neither was this the Desire of the Duke only, but of all the Nobility of his Court, with whom he had very much

Digitized by Google

much ingratiated himself. So then without farther Delay, the Marriage was solemnized, and the Princes of the Country paid their Homage to him, as the Successor to the Throne. Scarce was the Year at an End, before the Duke died, and then *Brennius* took his Opportunity of engaging those Princes of the Country firmly in his Interest, whom before he had obliged with his Friendship. And this he did by bestowing generously upon them the Duke's Treasure, which had been hoarded up from the Times of his Ancestors. But that which the *Allobroges* most esteemed him for, was his sumptuous Entertainments, and keeping an open House for all.

CHAP. VII.

Belinus *and* Brennius *being made Friends by the Mediation of their Mother, propose the subduing of* Gaul.

WHEN he had thus gained an universal Affection, he began to consult with himself, how he might take Revenge upon his Brother *Belinus*. And when he had signified his Intentions concerning it to his Subjects, they unanimously concurred

Digitized by Google

curred with him, and expreſſed their Readineſs to attend him to whatever Kingdom he pleaſed to conduct them. Then in a ſhort Time raiſing a vaſt Army, he entred into a Treaty with the *Gauls*, for a free Paſſage through their Country into *Britain*; and having fitted out a Fleet upon the Coaſt of *Neuſtria*, he ſet ſail, and with a fair Wind arrived at the Iſland. Upon hearing the Rumour of his coming, his Brother *Belinus*, accompanied with the whole Strength of the Kingdom, marched out to engage with him. But when the two Armies were drawn out in Order of Battle, and juſt ready to begin the Attack, *Conwenna* their Mother, who was yet living, paſſed in great haſte through the Ranks, out of an Impatience to ſee her Son, whom ſhe had not ſeen of a long Time. As ſoon therefore as ſhe had with trembling Steps reached the Place where he ſtood, ſhe threw her Arms about his Neck, and in Tranſports kiſſed him; then uncovering her Boſom, ſhe addreſſed herſelf to him, in Words interrupted with Sighs, to this Effect.

"Remember, Son, remember theſe "Breaſts you have ſucked, and the Womb "wherein the Creator of all Things formed "you, and from whence he brought you "forth into the World, while I endured "the

Digitized by Google

" the greateſt Anguiſh. By the Pains then
" I have ſuffered for you, I intreat you hear
" my Requeſt: Pardon your Brother, and
" moderate your Anger. You ought not
" to revenge yourſelf upon him that has
" done you no Injury. For what you com-
" plain of, that you was baniſhed your
" Country by him, if you duly conſider
" the Event of it, cannot in Strictneſs be
" called Injuſtice. He did not baniſh you
" to make your Condition worſe, but for-
" ced you to quit a meaner, that you
" might attain a higher Dignity. At firſt
" you enjoy'd only a Part of a Kingdom,
" and that in Subjection to your Brother:
" As ſoon as you loſt that, you became his
" Equal, by gaining the Kingdom of the
" *Allobroges*. What has he then done but
" promoted you from a Viceroy, to be a
" great King? Conſider farther, that the
" Difference betwixt you began not through
" him, but yourſelf, who with the Aſſiſt-
" ance of the King of *Norway*, made Inſur-
" rection againſt him.

Moved with theſe Repreſentations of his Mother, he obeyed her with a compoſed Mind, and putting off his Helmet of his own Accord, went ſtraight with her to his Brother. *Belinus* ſeeing him approach with a peaceable Countenance, threw down his Arms, and ran to embrace him; ſo that

now

Digitized by Google

now without any Difficulty, they became Friends again; and disarming their Forces, marched with them peaceably together to *Trinovantum*. And here after Consultation what Enterprize to undertake, they prepared to conduct their Confederate Army into the Provinces of *Gaul*, and to reduce that whole Country under their Subjection.

CHAP. VIII.

Belinus *and* Brennius *after the Conquest of* Gaul, *march with their Army to* Rome.

THE Year after, they accordingly passed over into *Gaul*, and began to lay waste that Country. The News of which spreading through those several Nations, all the petty Kings of the *Franks* entred into a Confederacy, and went out to fight them. But the Victory falling to *Belinus* and *Brennius*, the *Franks* fled with their broken Forces; and the *Britains* and *Allobroges* elevated with their Success, ceased not to pursue them till they had taken their Kings, and reduced them under their Power. Then fortifying the Cities they had taken, they brought the whole Kingdom under their Subjection in less than a Years Time.

Digitized by Google

Time. At last after a Reduction of all the Provinces, they marched with their whole Army towards *Rome*, and destroyed the Cities and Villages as they passed through *Italy*.

CHAP. IX.

The Romans *make a Covenant with* Brennius, *but afterwards break it; for which Reason* Rome *is besieged and taken by* Brennius.

THE two Consuls of *Rome* were then *Gabius* and *Porsena*, to whose Care the Government of the Country was committed: Who when they saw that no Nation was able to withstand the Power of *Belinus* and *Brennius*, came with the Consent of the Senate to them, to desire Peace and Amity. They likewise offered large Presents of Gold and Silver, and to pay a yearly Tribute, on Condition they might be suffered to enjoy their own in Peace. The two Kings therefore taking Hostages of them yielded to their Petition, and drew back their Forces into *Germany*. While they were employing their Arms in harrassing that People, the *Romans* repented of their Agreement, and taking new Courage, went to assist the *Germans*.

This

Digitized by Google

This Step highly enraged the Kings againſt them, who concerted Meaſures how to carry on a War with both Nations. For the Greatneſs of the *Italian* Army was a Terror to them. The Reſult of their Council was, that *Belinus* with the *Britains* ſtay'd in *Germany*, to engage with the Enemy there; while *Brennius* and his Army marched to *Rome*, to revenge on the *Romans* their Breach of Treaty. As ſoon as the *Italians* perceived their Deſign, they quitted the *Germans*, and haſtened to get before *Brennius*, in his march to *Rome*. *Belinus* had Intelligence of it, and ſpeedily marched back with his Army the ſame Night, and poſſeſſing himſelf of a Valley through which the Enemy was to paſs, there lay hid in expectation of their coming. The next Day the *Italians* came upon a full March to the ſame Place; but when they ſaw the Valley glittering with the Enemy's Armour, they were ſtruck with Confuſion, thinking *Brennius* and the *Galli Senones* were there. At this favourable Opportunity, *Belinus* on a ſudden ruſhed forth, and furiouſly fell upon them: And the *Romans* on the other Hand, in great Surprize, as quickly fly the Field, ſince they neither were armed, nor marched in any Order. But *Belinus* gave them no Quarter, and was only prevented by the Night coming on, from making a total Deſtruction of them. With this Victory he went

Digitized by Google

went ſtraight to *Brennius*, who had now beſieged *Rome* three Days. Then joining their Armies, they aſſault the City on every Side, and endeavour to level the Walls: And to ſtrike a greater Terror into the Beſieged, erected Gallows before the Gates of the City, and threatned to hang up the Hoſtages they had given, unleſs they would ſurrender. But the *Romans* nothing moved at the Sufferings of their Sons and Relations, continued inflexible, and reſolute to defend themſelves. And therefore ſometimes broke the Force of the Enemies Engines, by other Engines of their own, ſometimes repulſed them from the Walls with Showers of Darts. Which ſo incenſed the two Brothers, that they commanded four and twenty of their Nobleſt Hoſtages to be hanged in the Sight of their Parents. But the *Romans* were only more hardened at the Spectacle, and had now received a Meſſage from *Gabius* and *Porſena* their Conſuls, that they would come the next Day to their Aſſiſtance; whereupon they reſolved to march out of the City, and give the Enemy Battle. And accordingly juſt as they were ranging their Troops in Order, appeared the Conſuls with their reaſſembled Forces, marching up to begin the Attack. Theſe therefore advancing in a cloſe Body, fell on the *Britains* and *Allobroges* to their great Surprize, and being joined with the

Digitized by Google

the Citizens that ſally'd forth killed no ſmall Number. The Brothers in great Grief to ſee ſuch Deſtruction made of their Fellow Soldiers, began to Spirit up their Men, and then breaking in upon the Enemy ſeveral Times, forced them to retire. At laſt, after the Loſs of many Thouſands of brave Men on both Sides, the Brothers got the Day, and alſo took the City, *Gabius* being firſt killed and *Porſena* taken Priſoner: Which done they divided among their Men all the hidden Treaſure of the City.

CHAP. X.

Brennius *oppreſſes* Italy *in a moſt tyrannical Manner*. Belinus *returns to* Britain.

THE Victory thus gained, *Brennius* ſtay'd in *Italy*, where he exercisd unheard of Tyranny over the People. But the reſt of his Actions and his Death, ſeeing they are delivered in the *Roman* Hiſtories, I ſhall here paſs over, to avoid Prolixity and meddling with what others have treated of, which is foreign to my Deſign. But *Belinus* returned to *Britain*, which he governed the Remainder of his Life in Peace. Cities that were falling to Ruin he repaired, and

Digitized by Google

built many new ones. Among the rest he built one upon the River *Uske* near the *Severn* Sea, which was for a long Time called *Caerosc*, and was the Metropolis of *Demetia*: But after the Coming in of the *Romans* it lost its first Name, and was called the City of *Legions*, from the *Roman* Legions which used to take up their Winter Quarters in it. He also made a Gate of wonderful Structure in *Trinovantum*, upon the Bank of the *Thames*, which the Citizens call after his Name *Belinsgate* to this Day. Over it he built a prodigious large Tower, and under it a Haven or Key for Ships. He was a strict Observer of Justice, and re-established his Fathers Laws every where through the Kingdom. In his Days there was so great an Affluence of Riches among the People, that no Age before or after is said to have shewn the like. At last when he had finished his Days, his Body was burnt, and the Ashes put up in a golden Urn, which they placed at *Trinovantum* with wonderful Art on the Top of the Tower above-mention'd.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XI.

Gurgiunt Brabtruc *succeeding his Father* Belinus, *reduces* Dacia *that was shaking off his Yoke.*

HE was succeeded by *Gurgiunt Brabtruc* his Son, a sober prudent Prince, who followed the Example of his Father in all his Actions, and was a Lover of Peace and Justice. When some neighbouring Provinces rebelled against him, he inheriting the Bravery of his Father, repressed their Insolence in several fierce Battles, and so reduced them under a perfect Subjection to him. Among many other Things it happened, that the King of the *Dacians*, who paid Tribute in his Fathers Time, refused not only Tribute, but all manner of Homage to him: Which he resented heinously, and passed over in a Fleet to *Dacia*, where he harassed the People with a most cruel War, slew their King, and reduced the Country under its ancient Yoke.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XII.

Ireland *is given to be inhabited by the* Barclenſes, *who had been baniſhed out of* Spain.

AT that Time, as he was returning home from his Conqueſt through the *Orkney* Iſlands, he found thirty Ships fraught with Men and Women; and upon his enquiring of them the Occaſion of their coming thither, their Leader named *Partholoim*, approached him in a reſpectful and ſubmiſſive Manner, and deſired Pardon and Peace. Then he told him, that he had been driven out of *Spain*, and was ſailing round thoſe Seas in queſt of a Habitation. He alſo deſired ſome ſmall Part of *Britain* to dwell in, that they might put an End to their tedious Wandring: For it was now a Year and half ſince he had been driven out of his Country, all which Time he and his Company had been out at Sea. When *Gurgiunt Brabtruc* underſtood that they came from *Spain*, and were called *Barclenſes*, he granted their Petition, and ſent Men with them to *Ireland*, which was then wholly uninhabited, and aſſigned it to them. There they grew up and encreaſed in Number, and have poſſeſſed that Iſland to this very Day. *Gurgiunt Brabtruc*

Digitized by Google

Brabtruc after this ended his Days in Peace, and was buried in the City of *Legions*, which after his Fathers Death he beautified with Buildings and Walls.

CHAP. XIII.

Guithelin *reigning after* Gurgiunt Brabtruc, *the* Martian *Law is instituted by* Martia *a noble Woman.*

AFTER him *Guithelin* wore the Crown, which he enjoy'd all his Life, with Mildneſs and Affection to his People. He had for his Wife a noble Lady named *Martia*, accompliſhed in all kind of Learning. Among many other admirable Productions of her Wit, ſhe was the Author of what the *Britains* call the *Martian* Law. This alſo among other Things King *Alfred* tranſlated, and called it in the *Saxon* Tongue *Pa Marchitie Lage.* Upon the Death of *Guithelin*, the Government of the Kingdom remained in the Hands of this Queen and her Son *Sifillus*, who was then but ſeven Years old, and therefore unfit to take the Government upon himſelf alone.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIV.

Guithelin's *Successors in the Kingdom.*

FOR this Reason the Mother had the sole Management of Affairs committed to her, out of a Regard to her great Sense and Judgment. But she dying, *Sisillius* took the Crown and Government upon himself. After him reigned *Kimarus* his Son, to whom succeeded *Danius* his Brother. He dying the Crown came to *Morvidus*, whom he had by his Concubine *Tanguſtela*. He would have made a Prince of extraordinary Worth, had he not been addicted to immoderate Cruelty, so far that in his Anger he spared no Body, if any Weapon was at Hand. He was of a graceful Aspect, extreamly liberal, and of such vast Strength as was not to be matched in the whole Kingdom.

CHAP. XV.

Morvidus *a most cruel Tyrant, after the Conquest of the King of the* Morines, *is devoured by a Monster.*

IN his Time a certain King of the *Morines* arrived with a great Force in *Northumberland*, and began to destroy the Country. But

Digitized by Google

But *Morvidus* with all the Strength of the Kingdom, marched out againſt him, and fought him. In this Battle, he alone did more than the greateſt Part of his Army, and after the Victory, ſuffered not one to eſcape alive. For he commanded them to be brought to him one after another, that he might ſatisfy his Cruelty in ſeeing them killed: And when he grew ſomewhat tired with this, he gave Orders that they ſhould be flea'd alive and burnt. During theſe and other monſtrous Acts of Cruelty, there happened a Misfortune which put a Period to his Wickedneſs. There was come from the Coaſts of the *Iriſh* Sea, a moſt cruel Monſter, that was continually devouring the People upon the Sea-Coaſts. As ſoon as this News came to him, he ventured to go and encounter it alone; but when he had in vain ſpent all his Darts upon it, the Monſter haſtened up to him, and with open Jaws ſwallowed him up like a ſmall Fiſh.

CHAP. XVI.

Gorbonian *a moſt juſt King of the* Britains.

HE had five Sons, whereof the Firſt-born, named *Gorbonian*, aſcended the Throne. There was not in his Time a

Digitized by Google

greater Lover of Juſtice and Equity, or a more careful Ruler of the People. The performing of due Worſhip to the Gods, and doing Juſtice to the common People, was his continual Employment. Through all the Cities of *Britain*, he repaired the Temples of the Gods, and built many more new ones. In all his Days, the Iſland abounded with all manner of Riches, more than all its neighbouring Countries. For he gave great Encouragement to Husbandmen in their Tillage, by protecting them againſt any Injury or Oppreſſion of their Lords; and the Soldiers he amply rewarded with Money, ſo that no one had occaſion to do wrong to another. Amidſt theſe and many other Acts of his innate Goodneſs, he pay'd the Debt of Nature, and was buried at *Trinovantum*.

CHAP. XVII.

Arthgallo *is depoſed by the* Britains, *and is ſucceeded by* Elidure, *who reſtores him again to the Kingdom.*

AFTER him *Arthgallo* his Brother was dignified with the Crown, who in all his Actions was the very Reverſe of his

Digitized by Google

his Brother. The Nobility he every where endeavoured to depreſs, and advance the baſer Sort of the People. The Rich he plundered, and by that Means heaped to himſelf vaſt Treaſures. But the Nobility diſdaining to bear his Tyranny any longer, made an Inſurrection againſt him, and depoſed him; and then advanced *Elidure* his Brother, who was afterwards ſurnamed the *Pious*, on account of his Commiſeration to him in Diſtreſs. For after five Years Poſſeſſion of the Kingdom, as he happened to be hunting in the Wood *Calaterium*, he met his Brother that had been depoſed. For he had travelled over ſeveral Kingdoms, to deſire Aſſiſtance for the recovering of his loſt Dominions, but had procured none. And being now no longer able to bear the Poverty to which he was reduced, he returned back to *Britain*, attended only with ten Men, with a Deſign to repair to thoſe who had been formerly his Friends. Therefore juſt as he was paſſing through the Wood, his Brother *Elidure*, who little expected it, got a Sight of him, and forgetting all Injuries, ran to him, and affectionately embraced him. And as he had long lamented his Brothers Affliction, he therefore carried him with him to the City *Alclud*, where he hid him in his Bed-chamber. After this, he there feigned himſelf ſick, and ſent his Meſſengers over the whole Kingdom,

Digitized by Google

dom, to signify to all his Prime Nobility that they should come to visit him. Accordingly when they were all met together at the City where he lay, he gave Orders that they should come into his Chamber one by one, softly, and without Noise: His Pretence for which was, that their Talk would be a Disturbance to his Head, should they all crowd in together. So they in Obedience to his Commands, and without the least Suspicion of any Design, entred his House one after another. But *Elidure* had given a Charge to his Servants, who were set ready for the Purpose, to take each of them as they entred, and Cut off their Heads, unless they would again submit themselves to *Arthgallo* his Brother. Thus did he with every one of them apart, and compelled them through Fear, to be reconciled to *Arthgallo*. At last the Agreement being Ratified, *Elidure* conducted *Arthgallo* to *York*, where he took the Crown off his own Head, and put it on his Brothers. From this Act, wherein he shew'd so great Piety to his Brother, he obtained the Surname of *Pious*. *Arthgallo* after this reigned ten Years, and now made Amends for his former Male-Administration, by pursuing Measures quite contrary to his first, in depressing the baser Sort, and advancing Men of good Birth; in suffering every one to enjoy his own, and exercising strict Justice.

At

Digitized by Google

At last Sickneſs ſeizing him, he died, and was buried in the City *Kaerleir*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Elidure *is impriſoned by* Peredure, *after whoſe Death he is a third Time advanced to the Throne.*

THEN was *Elidure* again advanced to the Throne, and reſtored to his former Dignity. But while in his Government he followed the Example of his eldeſt Brother *Gorboniun*, in performing all Acts of Grace; his two remaining Brothers *Vigenius* and *Peredure*, raiſed an Army, and made War againſt him, in which they proved Victorious; ſo that they took him Priſoner, and ſhut him up in the Tower at *Trinovantum*, where they placed a Guard over him. Then they divided the Kingdom betwixt them, the Part that is from the River *Humber* Weſtward, falling to *Vigenius*'s Share, and the Remainder with all *Albania* to *Peredure*'s. After ſeven Years *Vigenius* died, and ſo the whole Kingdom came to *Peredure*. Being now honoured with the Crown, he henceforward governed the People with Generoſity and Mildneſs, ſo that he even excelled his other Brothers that preceeded

Digitized by Google

ceeded him, nor was any Mention now made of *Elidure*. But irresistible Fate took him off at last suddenly, and so made Way for *Elidure*'s quick Release from Prison, and Advancement to the Throne the third Time; who as he had finished the Course of his Life in just and virtuous Actions, after his Death left an Example of Piety to be imitated by all his Successors.

CHAP. XIX.

The Names of Elidures *thirty three Successors.*

ELIDURE being dead, *Gorbonians* Son enjoy'd the Crown, and imitated his Unkles wise and prudent Government. For he abhorred Tyranny, and practised Justice and Mildness towards the People, nor ever swerved from the Rule of Equity. After him reigned *Margan*, the Son of *Arthgallo*, who being instructed by the Examples of his immediate Predecessors, held the Government in Peace. Him succeeded *Enniaunus* his Brother, who took a quite contrary Course in his Reign; in the sixth Year of which he was deposed, for having preferred a tyrannical, before a just and legal Administration. In his Room was placed his Kinsman

Digitized by Google

Kinſman *Idwallo*, the Son of *Vigenius*, who being admoniſhed by *Enniaunus*'s ill Succeſs, became a ſtrict Obſerver of Juſtice and Equity. Him ſucceeded *Runno*, the Son of *Peredure*, whoſe Succeſſor was *Geruntius*, the Son of *Elidure*. After him reigned *Catellus* his Son; after *Catellus*, *Coillus*; after *Coillus*, *Porrex*; after *Porrex*, *Cherin*. This Prince had three Sons, *Fulgenius*, *Eldadus*, and *Andragius*, who all reigned one after another. Then ſucceeded *Urianus*, the Son of *Andragius*; after whom reigned in Order, *Elind*, *Cledaucus*, *Cletonus*, *Gurgintius*, *Merianus*, *Bleduno*, *Cap*, *Oenus*, *Siſilius*, *Blegabred*. This laſt Prince for Songs and Skill in all Muſical Inſtruments, excelled all the Muſicians that had been before him, ſo as he ſeemed worthy of the Title of *The God of Jeſters*. After him reigned *Arthmail* his Brother; after *Arthmail*, *Eldol*; whom ſucceeded in Order *Redion*, *Rederchius*, *Samail-peniſſel*, *Pir*, *Capoir*, and *Cligueillus* the Son of *Capoir*, a Man prudent and mild in all his Actions, and who above all things made it his Buſineſs to exerciſe true Juſtice among his People.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XX.

Heli's *three Sons*; *the first of whom*, viz. Lud, *gives Name to the City of* London.

NEXT to him succeeded *Heli* his Son, and reigned forty Years. He had three Sons, *Lud*, *Cassibellaun*, and *Nennius*; of whom *Lud* being the Eldest, succeeded in the Kingdom after his Fathers Death. He became famous for the building of Cities, and for rebuilding the Walls of *Trinovantum*, which he also surrounded with innumerable Towers. He likewise commanded the Citizens to build Houses, and all other kinds of Structures in it, so that no City in all the Foreign Countries to a great Distance, could shew more beautiful Palaces. He was withal a Warlike Man, and very magnificent in his Feasts and publick Entertainments. And though he had many other Cities, yet he loved this above them all, and resided in it the greater Part of the Year; for which Reason it was afterwards called *Kaerlud*, and by the Corruption of the Word, *Caerlondon*; and again by change of Languages in Process of Time, *London*; as also by Foreigners who arrived here, and reduced this Country under their Subjection, *Londres*. At last he dying, his Body was buried by the

Digitized by Google

the Gate which to this Time is in the *British* Tongue called after his Name *Parthlud*, and in the *Saxon*, *Ludesgata*. He had two Sons, *Androgeus* and *Tenuantius*, who were uncapable of Governing on Account of their Age; and therefore their Unkle *Cassibellaun* was preferred to the Kingdom in their Room. As soon as he was Crowned, he began to display his Generosity and Magnificence to such a Degree, that his Fame reached to distant Kingdoms: Which was the Reason that the Monarchy of the whole Kingdom came to be invested in him, and not in his Nephews. Notwithstanding *Cassibellaun*, from an Impulse of Piety, would not suffer them to be without their Share in the Kingdom, but assigned a large Part of it to them. For the City *Trinovantum*, with the Dukedom of *Kent*, he bestow'd on *Androgeus*; and the Dukedom of *Cornwal* on *Tenuantius*. But he himself as possessing the Crown, had the Sovereignty over them, and all the Princes of the Island.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE British History.

The Fourth Book.

CHAP. I.

Julius Cæsar *infests* Britain.

IN the mean Time it happened, (as is found in the *Roman* Hiſtories,) that *Julius Cæſar* having ſubdued *Gaul*, came to the Shore of *Rutenis*. And when from thence he had got a Proſpect of the Iſland of *Britain*, he enquired of thoſe about him what Country it was, and what People inhabited it. Then fixing his Eyes upon the Ocean, as ſoon as he was informed of the Name of the Kingdom and the People, he ſaid; "In Truth We *Romans* and the *Britains* have the ſame Original,

Digitized by Google

" ginal, since both are descended from the *Trojan* Race. Our first Father after the Destruction of *Troy*, was *Æneas*; theirs *Brutus*, whose Father was *Sylvius*, the Son of *Ascanius*, the Son of *Æneas*. But " I am deceived, if they are not very much " degenerated from us, and know nothing " of the Art of War, since they live sepa- " rated by the Ocean from the whole " World. They may be easily forced to " be our Tributaries, and Subjects to the " *Roman* State. But first we must send " them Word, before the *Romans* offer to " invade or assault them, that they pay " Tribute as other Nations do, and submit " themselves to the Senate; for fear we " should violate the ancient Nobility of our " Father *Priamus*, by shedding the Blood " of our Kinsmen." All which he accordingly took Care to signify, by writing to *Cassibellaun*; who in great Indignation returned him an Answer in the following Letter.

CHAP. II.

Cassibellaunus's *Letter to* Julius Cæsar.

" *CASSIBELLAUN*, King of the " *Britains*, to *Caius Julius Cæsar*.

" We cannot but wonder, *Cæsar*, at the

Digitized by Google

" Avarice of the *Roman* People, since their
" unsatiable Thirst after Money, cannot
" let us alone whom the Dangers of the
" Ocean have placed in a manner out of
" the World; but they must have the Pre-
" sumption to covet our Substance, which
" we have hitherto enjoy'd in Quiet. Nei-
" ther is this indeed sufficient: We must
" also prefer Subjection and Slavery to
" them, before the Enjoyment of our Na-
" tive Liberty. Your Demand therefore,
" *Cæsar*, is scandalous, since the same Vein
" of Nobility flows from *Æneas*, in *Britains*
" and *Romans*, and one and the same Chain
" of Consanguinity shines in both: Which
" ought to be a Band of firm Union and
" Friendship. That was what you should
" have demanded of us, and not Slavery;
" We have learned to admit of the one, but
" never to bear the other. And so much
" have we been accustomed to Liberty,
" that we are perfectly ignorant what it is
" to submit to Slavery. And if even the
" Gods themselves should attempt to de-
" prive us of our Liberty, we would to the
" utmost of our Power resist them in De-
" fence of it. Know then, *Cæsar*, that we
" are ready to fight for that and our King-
" dom, if, as you threaten, you shall at-
" tempt to invade *Britain*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. III.

Cæsar *is routed by* Cassibellaun.

AT the Receipt of this Answer, *Cæsar* makes ready his Fleet, and waits for a fair Wind to execute in Earnest what he had threatned *Cassibellaun* with. As soon as the Wind stood fair, he hoised his Sails, and arrived with his Army at the Mouth of the River *Thames*. The Ships were now just come close to Land, when *Cassibellaun* with all his Forces appeared on his march against them, and coming to the Town of *Dorobellum*, he consulted with his Nobility how to drive out the Enemy. There was present with him *Belinus*, General of his Army, by whose Counsel the whole Kingdom was governed. There were also his two Nephews, *Androgeus* Duke of *Trinovantum*, and *Tenuantius* Duke of *Cornwal*, together with three inferior Kings, *Cridious* King of *Albania*, *Guerthaeth* of *Venedotia*, and *Britael* of *Demetia*, who, as they had encouraged the Rest to fight the Enemy, gave their Advice to march directly to *Cæsars* Camp, and drive them out of the Country before they could take any City or Town. For if he should possess himself of any fortified Places, they said it would be harder to force him out, because he would then know whither to

Digitized by Google

make a Retreat with his Men. To this Propoſal all agreed, and advanced towards the Shore where *Julius Cæſar* had pitched his Camp. And now both Armies drew out in order of Battle, and began the Fight, wherein both Bows and Swords were employ'd. Immediately the Wounded fell in Heaps on each Side, and the Ground was drenched with the Blood of the Slain, as much as if it had been waſhed with the ſudden Return of the Tide. While the Armies were thus engaged, it happened that *Nennius* and *Androgeus*, with the Citizens of *Canterbury* and *Trinovantum*, whom they commanded, had the Fortune to meet with the very Troop where the General himſelf was preſent. And upon an Aſſault made, the Generals Cohort was very near routed by the *Britains* falling upon them in a cloſe Body. During this Action, Fortune gave *Nennius* an Opportunity of encountring with *Cæſar*. *Nennius* therefore boldly made up to him, and was in great Joy that he could but give ſo much as one Blow to ſo great a Man. On the other Hand *Cæſar* being aware of his Deſign, ſtretched out his Shield to receive him, and with all his Might ſtruck him upon the Helmet with his drawn Sword; which he lifted up again with an Intention to finiſh his firſt Blow, and make it Mortal; but *Nennius* carefully prevented him with his Shield, into

Digitized by Google

into which *Cæsars* Sword gliding with great Force from the Helmet, came to be so hard fastned, that when by the breaking in of the Troops, they could no longer continue the Encounter, the General was not able to draw it out again. *Nennius* thus becoming Master of *Cæsars* Sword, threw away his own, and pulling the other out, made haste to employ it against the Enemy. Whomsoever he struck with it, he either cut off his Head, or left him wounded without Hopes of Recovery. While he was thus exerting himself, he was met by *Labienus* a Tribune, whom he killed in the very Beginning of the Encounter. At last, after the greatest Part of the Day was spent, the *Britains* poured in so fast, and made such vigorous Efforts, that by the Blessing of God they obtained the Victory, and *Cæsar* with his broken Forces, retired to his Camp and Fleet. The very same Night, as soon as he had got his Men together again, he went on board his Fleet, rejoycing that he had the Sea for his Camp. And upon his Companions diſſwading him from pursuing the War any longer, he acquiesced in their Advice, and returned back to *Gaul*.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. IV.

Nennius *the Brother of* Cassibellaun, *being wounded in Battle by* Cæsar, *dies.*

CASSIBELLAUN in Joy for this Triumph, returned solemn Thanks to God; and calling the Companions of his Victory together, amply rewarded every one of them, according as they had distinguished themselves. On the other Hand he was very much oppressed with Grief for his Brother *Nennius*, who lay mortally wounded, and at the very Point of Death. For *Cæsar* had wounded him in the Encounter, and the Blow he had given, proved uncurable; so that fifteen Days after the Battle he died of it, and was buried at *Trinovantum*, by the North-Gate. His Funeral Exequies were performed with Regal Pomp, and *Cæsar*'s Sword put into the Tomb with him, which he kept Possession of when struck into his Shield in the Combat. The Name of the Sword was *Crocea Mors*, Yellow Death, as being mortal to every Body that was wounded with it.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. V.

Cæsars *unglorious Return to* Gaul.

AFTER this Flight of *Cæsar*, and his Arrival at the *Gallican* Coast, the *Gauls* attempted to rebel and throw off his Yoke. For they thought he was so much weakned, that his Forces could be no longer a Terror to them. Besides, a general Report was spread among them, that *Cassibellaun* was now out at Sea with a vast Fleet to pursue him in his Flight: On which Account the *Gauls* growing still more bold, began to think of driving him out of their Coasts. *Julius* apprehending their Designs, was not willing to engage in a doubtful War with a fierce People, but rather chose to go to all their Prime Nobility with open Treasures, and reconcile them with Presents. To the common People he promises Liberty, to the Dispossessed the Restitution of their Estates, and even to the Slaves their Freedom. Thus he that had insulted them before with the Fierceness of a Lion, and plundered them of all, does now with the Mildness of a Lamb fawn to them with submissive abject Speeches, and is glad to restore all again. These Meannesses was he forced to condescend to, till he had pacified them, and was able to regain his lost

Digitized by Google

Power. In the mean Time not a Day past without reflecting upon his Flight, and the *Britain*'s Victory.

CHAP. VI.

Cassibellaun *forms a Stratagem for drowning* Cæsar's *Ships.*

AFTER two Years were expired, he prepares to pass the Sea again, and revenge himself on *Cassibellaun*, who having Intelligence of his Design, every where fortified his Cities, repaired the ruined Walls, placed armed Men at all the Ports, and in the River *Thames*, on which *Cæsar* intended to sail up to *Trinovantum*, he caused Iron and Leaden Stakes, each as thick as a Mans Thigh, to be fixed under the Surface of the Water, for *Cæsar* to split his Ships upon. Then he assembled all the Forces of the Island, and took up his Quarters with them near the Sea-Coasts, in Expectation of the Enemy's coming.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VII.

Cæsar *a second Time vanquished by the* Britains.

JULIUS, after he had furnished himself with all Necessaries, embarked with a vast Army, eager to revenge himself on a People that had defeated him; in which he had undoubtedly succeeded, if he could but have brought his Fleet safe to Land; but this he was not able to do. For in sailing up the *Thames* to *Trinovantum*, the Ships happened to strike against the Stakes, which so endangered them all on a sudden, that many Thousands of the Men were drowned, while the Ships being bored through sunk down into the River. *Cæsar* upon this employ'd all his Force to shift his Sails, and hastened to get back again to Land. And so those that remained, after a narrow Escape go on Shore with him. *Cassibellaun*, who was present upon the Bank, with Joy observed the Disaster of the drowned, but grieved at the Escape of the Rest: And upon his giving a Signal to his Men, makes an Attack upon the *Romans*, who notwithstanding the Danger they had suffered in the River, when landed, bravely withstood the *Britains*; and having no other Fence to trust to but their own

Digitized by Google

own Courage, they made no small Slaughter; but yet suffered a greater themselves, than what they were able to give the Enemy. For their Number was considerably diminished by their Loss in the River: Whereas the *Britains* being hourly increased with new Recruits, were three times their Number, and by that Advantage defeated them. *Cæsar* seeing he could no longer maintain his Ground, fled with a small Body of Men to his Ships, and made the Sea his safe Retreat; and as the Wind then stood fair, he hoised his Sails and steered to the *Morine* Shore. From thence he repaired to a certain Tower, which he had built at a Place called *Odnea*, before this second Expedition into *Britain*. For he durst not trust the Instability of the *Gauls*, who he feared would fall upon him a second Time, as we have said already they did before, after his first Flight that he was forced to make before the *Britains*. And on that Account he had built this Tower for a Refuge to himself, that he might be able to maintain his Ground against a rebellious People, if they should make Insurrection against him.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VIII.

Evelinus *kills* Hirelglas. Androgeus *desires* Cæsars *Assistance against* Cassibellaun.

CASSIBELLAUN being elevated with Joy for this second Victory, published a Decree, to summon all the Nobility of *Britain* with their Wives to *Trinovantum*, in order to perform solemn Sacrifices to their Tutelary Gods, who had given them the Victory over so great a Commander. Accordingly they all readily appeared, and prepared Variety of Sacrifices, for which there was a great Slaughter of Cattle. At this Solemnity they offered forty thousand Cows, and a hundred thousand Sheep, and also Fowls of several Kinds, without Number, besides thirty thousand wild Beasts of several Kinds. As soon as they had performed these solemn Honours to their Gods, they feasted themselves of the Remainder, as was usual at Sacrifices, and spent the rest of the Day and Night in various Plays and Sports. Amidst these Diversions, it happened that two noble Youths, whereof one was Nephew to the King, the other to Duke *Androgeus*, wrestled together, and afterwards had a Dispute about the Victory.

The

Digitized by Google

The Name of the Kings Nephew was *Hirelglas*, the other's *Evelinus*. As they were casting Reproaches at each other, *Evelinus* snatched up his Sword and cut off the others Head. This sudden Disaster put the whole Court into a Consternation, upon which the King ordered *Evelinus* to be brought before him, that he might be ready to undergo such Sentence as the Nobility should pass, and that the Death of *Hirelglas* might be revenged upon him, if he was unjustly killed. *Androgeus* suspecting the Kings Intentions, made Answer, that he had a Court of his own, and that whatever should be alledged against his own Men, ought to be determined there. If therefore he had been resolved to demand Justice of *Evelinus*, he might have had it at *Trinovantum*, according to ancient Custom. *Cassibellaun* finding he could not attain his Ends, threatned *Androgeus* to destroy his Country with Fire and Sword, if he would not comply with his Demands. But *Androgeus* now incensed, scorned all Compliance with him. On the other Hand *Cassibellaun* in a great Rage hastened to make good his Threatning, and ravage his Country. This forced *Androgeus* to make use of daily Sollicitations to the King, by Means of such as were related to him, or intimate with him, to divert his Rage. But when he found these Methods ineffectual, he began in Earnest to consider

Digitized by Google

conſider how to oppoſe him. At laſt, when all other Hopes failed, he reſolved to deſire Aſſiſtance of *Cæſar*, and writ a Letter to him to this Effect.

" *Androgeus* Duke of *Trinovantum*, to " *Caius Julius Cæſar*, after Wiſhes of Death, " now wiſhes Health. I repent that ever " I acted againſt you, when you made " War againſt the King. Had I never been " guilty of ſuch Exploits, you would have " vanquiſhed *Caſſibellaun*, who is ſo ſwoln " with Pride ſince his Victory, that he is " endeavouring to drive me out of his " Coaſts, who procured him that Tri- " umph. Is this a fit Reward for my Ser- " vices? I have ſettled him in an Inheri- " tance: And he endeavours to diſinherit " me. I have a ſecond Time reſtored him " to the Kingdom: And he endeavours to " deſtroy me. All this I have done for him " in fighting againſt you. I call the Gods " to witneſs I have not deſerved his Anger, " unleſs I can be ſaid to deſerve it for refu- " ſing to deliver my Nephew, whom he " would have condemned to die unjuſtly. " Of which that you in your diſcerning " Mind may be better able to judge, take " this Account of the Matter. It happened " that for Joy of the Victory, we performed " ſolemn Honours to our Tutelary Gods, " in which after we had finiſhed our Sacri-

" fices,

Digitized by Google

" fices, our Youth diverted themſelves with " Sports. Among the reſt two of our Ne- " phews, encouraged by the Example of " others, entred the Liſts; and when my " Nephew had got the better, the other " without any Cauſe was incenſed, and " juſt going to ſtrike him; but he avoided " the Blow, and taking him by the Hand " that held the Sword, ſtrove to wreſt it " from him. In this Struggle the Kings " Nephew happened to fall upon the " Swords Point, and ſuddenly dy'd upon " the Spot. When the King was informed " of it, he commanded me to deliver up the " Youth, that he might be puniſhed for " Murder. I refuſed to do it; whereupon " he invaded my Provinces with all his " Forces, and has given me very great " Diſturbance. I therefore flying to your " Clemency, deſire your Aſſiſtance, that " by you I may be reſtored to my Dig- " nity, and by me you may gain the Poſ- " ſeſſion of *Britain*. Let no Doubts or " Suſpicion of Treachery in this Matter " detain you. Be ſway'd by the common " Motive of Mankind; let paſt Enmities " beget a Deſire of Friendſhip; and after " Flight be more eager for Victory.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. IX.

Cassibellaun *being put to Flight and beſieged by* Cæſar *deſires Peace.*

CÆSAR having read the Letter, was adviſed by his Friends not to go into *Britain* upon a bare verbal Invitation of the Duke, unleſs he would ſend ſuch Hoſtages as might be for his Security. Without delay therefore *Androgeus* ſent his Son *Scæva* with thirty young Noblemen nearly related to him. Upon delivery of the Hoſtages, *Ceſar* now free'd from Suſpicion reaſſembles his Forces, and with a fair Wind arrived at the Port of *Rutupi*. In the mean Time *Caſſibellaun* had begun to beſiege *Trinovantum* and ravage the Country Towns; but finding *Ceſar* was arrived, he raiſed the Siege and haſted to meet him. As ſoon as he entred a Valley near *Dorobernia*, he ſaw the *Roman* Army preparing their Camp: For *Androgeus* had conducted them to this Place, for the Convenience of making a ſudden Aſſault upon the City. The *Romans* ſeeing the *Britains* advancing towards them, quickly flew to their Arms, and ranged themſelves in ſeveral Bodies. The *Britains* alſo put on their Arms, and placed themſelves in their Ranks. But *Androgeus* with five thouſand Men lay hid in a Wood hard by, to be ready

Digitized by Google

ready to assist *Cæsar*, and spring forth on a sudden upon *Cassibellaun* and his Party. Both Armies now approached to begin the Fight, some with Bows and Arrows, some with Swords, so that much Blood was shed on both Sides, and the Wounded fell down like Leaves in Autumn. While they were thus engaged, *Androgeus* sally's forth of the Wood, and falls upon the Reer of *Cassibellaun*'s Army, upon which the Hopes of the Battle entirely depended. And now what with the Breach the *Romans* had made through them just before, what with the furious Irruption of their own Countrymen, they were no longer able to stand their Ground, but were obliged with their broken Forces to quit the Field. Hard by the Place there stood a rocky Mountain, on the Top of which was a thick Hazel Wood. Hither *Cassibellaun* flies with his Men after he had found himself worsted; and having climbed up to the very Top of the Mountain, bravely defended himself and killed the pursuing Enemy. For the *Roman* Forces with those of *Androgeus* pursued him to disperse his flying Troops, and climbing up the Mountain after them made many Assualts, but all to little Purpose; for the Rockiness of the Mountain and great Height of its Top was a Defence to the *Britains*, and the Advantage of higher Ground gave them an Opportunity of killing great Numbers of the Enemy. *Cæsar* hereupon

Digitized by Google

hereupon besieged the Mountain that whole Night, which had now overtaken them, and shut up all the Avenues to it; intending to reduce the King by Famine, since he could not do it by Force of Arms. Such was the wonderful Valour of the *British* Nation in those Times, that they were able to put the Conquerer of the World twice to Flight. Whom the whole World could not withstand, him did they even when defeated withstand, being ready to die for the Defence of their Country and Liberty. Hence *Lucan* in their Praise says of *Cæsar*,

Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis.

With Pride he sought the *Britains*, but when found,
Dreaded their Force, and fled the hostile Ground.

Two Days were now past, when *Cassibelaun* having consumed all his Provision, feared Famine would oblige him to surrender himself Prisoner to *Cæsar*. For this Reason he sent a Message to *Androgeus* to make his Peace with *Julius*, lest the Honour of the Nation might suffer by his being taken Prisoner. He likewise represented to him, that he did not deserve to be pursued to Death for the Disturbance he had given him. As soon as the Messengers had told this to *Androgeus*, he made Answer; "That Prince "deserves not to be loved, who in War is

" mild as a Lamb, in Peace cruel as a Lion. " Ye Gods of Heaven and Earth! Do's my " Lord then condescend to entreat me now, " whom before he took upon him to com- " mand? Do's he desire to be reconciled " and make his submission to *Cæsar*, of " whom *Cæsar* himself had before desired " Peace? He ought therefore to have consi- " dered, that he who was able to drive so " great a Commander out of the Kingdom, " was able also to bring him back again. I " ought not to have been so unjustly treat- " ed, who had then done him so much Ser- " vice, as well as now so much Injury. He " must be possessed with Madness, who ei- " ther injures or reproaches his Fellow Sol- " diers by whom he defeats the Enemy. " The Victory is not the Commanders, but " theirs who loose their Blood in fighting " for him. Notwithstanding I will procure " his Peace if I can, because the Injury he " has done me is sufficiently revenged upon " him, since he sues for Mercy to me.

CHAP. X.

Androgeus's *Speech to* Cæsar.

ANDROGEUS after this went straight to *Cæsar*, and after a submissive Salutation addressed himself to him in this Manner:

Digitized by Google

ner: "You have ſufficiently revenged your-
"ſelf upon *Caſſibellaun*; and now let Clemen-
"cy take Place. What is there to be done
"more, than that he make his Submiſſion,
"and pay Tribute to the *Roman* State?"
To this *Cæſar* returned him no Anſwer:
Upon which *Androgeus* ſaid again; "My
"whole Engagement with you, *Cæſar*, was
"only to reduce *Britain* under your Power,
"by the Submiſſion of *Caſſibellaun*. Behold!
"*Caſſibellaun* is now vanquiſhed, and *Britain*
"by my Aſſiſtance become ſubject to you.
"What further Service do I owe you? God
"forbid, that I ſhould ſuffer my Sovereign
"who ſues to me for Peace, and makes
"me Satisfaction for the Injury he has done
"me, to be in Priſon or in Chains. It is
"no eaſy Matter to put *Caſſibellaun* to Death
"while I have Life; and if you do not com-
"ply with my Demand, I ſhall not be a-
"ſhamed to give him my Aſſiſtance." *Cæſar*
terrified at theſe Menaces of *Androgeus* was
forced to comply, and entred into Peace
with *Caſſibellaun*, on Condition that he ſhould
pay a yearly Tribute of three thouſand Pounds
of Silver. So then *Julius* and *Caſſibellaun* from
this Time commenced Friends, and made
Preſents to each other. After this, *Cæſar* win-
ter'd in *Britain*, and the Spring following
paſſed over into *Gaul*. At length he aſſem-
bled all his Forces, and marched towards
Rome againſt *Pompey*.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XI.

Tenuantius is made King of Britain after Cassibellaun.

AFTER seven Years had expired, *Cassibellaun* died and was buried at *York*. He was succeeded by *Tenuantius* Duke of *Cornwal*, and Brother of *Androgeus*: For *Androgeus* was gone to *Rome* with *Cæsar*. *Tenuantius* therefore now wearing the Crown, governed the Kingdom with Diligence. He was a warlike Man, and a most strict Observer of Justice. After him *Kymbelinus* his Son was advanced to the Throne, being a great Soldier, and brought up by *Augustus Cæsar*. He had contracted so great a Friendship with the *Romans*, that he freely pay'd them Tribute when he might have very well refused it. In his Days was born our Lord *Jesus Christ*, by whose precious Blood Mankind was redeemed from the Devils Captivity, under which they had been before enslaved.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Upon Guiderius's *refusing to pay Tribute to the* Romans, Claudius Cæsar *invades* Britain.

KYMBELINUS when he had governed *Britain* ten Years, begat two Sons, the elder named *Guiderius*, the other *Arviragus*. Then having finished the Course of his Life, the Government fell to *Guiderius*. This Prince refused to pay Tribute to the *Romans*, for which Reason *Claudius* who was now promoted to be Emperor came against him. He was attended in this Expedition by the Commander of his Army, who was called in the *British* Tongue *Lenis Hamo*, by whose Advice the succeeding War was to be carried on. This Man therefore arriving at the City of *Portcestre*, began to block up the Gates with a Wall, and deny'd the Citizens all Liberty of passing out. For his Design was either to reduce them under Subjection by Famine, or kill them without Mercy.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIII.

Lucius Hamo *a* Roman, *by wicked Treachery kills* Guiderius.

GUIDERIUS upon the News of *Claudius*'s Coming, assembled all the Soldiery of the Kingdom, and went to meet the *Roman* Army. In the Battle that ensued, he began the Assault with great Eagerness, and did more Execution with his own Sword than the greater Part of his Army. *Claudius* was now just upon retreating to his Ships, and the *Romans* very near routed, when the crafty *Hamo* throwing aside his own Armour put on that of the *Britains*, and as a *Britain* fought against his own Men. Then he exhorted the *Britains* to a vigorous Assault, promising them a speedy Victory. For he had learned their Language and Manners, as having been educated among the *British* Hostages at *Rome*. By this Means he approached by little and little to the King, and seeing his Opportunity for Access, stabbed him while under no Apprehension of Danger, and then escaped through the Enemies Ranks to return to his Men with the News of this detestable Exploit. But *Arviragus* his Brother seeing him killed, forthwith put off his own and put on his Brothers Habillements,

Digitized by Google

ments, and as if he had been *Guiderius* himſelf, encouraged the *Britains* to ſtand their Ground. Accordingly they knowing nothing of the Kings Diſaſter made a vigorous Reſiſtance, fought couragiouſly, and killed no ſmall Number of the Enemy. At laſt the *Romans* give Ground, and dividing themſelves into two Bodies baſely quit the Field: For *Cæſar* with one Part to ſecure himſelf retired to his Ships; but *Hamo* to the Woods, becauſe he had not Time to get to the Ships. *Arviragus* therefore thinking that *Claudius* fled along with him, purſued him with ſpeed, nor left off haraſſing them from Place to Place, till he overtook them upon a Part of the Sea Coaſt, which from the Name of *Hamo* is now called *Southampton*. There was at the ſame Place a convenient Haven for Ships, and ſome Merchant Ships at Anchor. And juſt as *Hamo* was attempting to get on board them, *Arviragus* came upon him unawares, and forthwith killed him. And ever ſince that Time the Haven has been called *Hamo*'s Port.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIV.

Arviragus *King of* Britain *makes his Submission to* Claudius, *who with his Assistance conquers the* Orkney *Islands.*

IN the mean Time, *Claudius* with his remaining Forces assaulted the City above-mentioned, which was then called *Kaerperis*, now *Portcester*, and presently levelled the Walls, and having reduced the Citizens under Subjection, went after *Arviragus* who had entred *Winchester*. Afterwards he besieged that City, and employ'd variety of Engines against it. *Arviragus* seeing himself in these Straits, called his Troops together, and opened the Gates, to march out and give him Battle. But just as he was ready to begin the Attack, *Claudius* who feared the Boldness of the King, and the Bravery of the *Britains*, sent a Message to him with a Proposal of Peace; as chusing to reduce them by Wisdom and Policy, rather than hazard a Battle. To this Purpose he offered a Reconciliation with him, and promised to give him his Daughter, if he would only acknowledge the Kingdom of *Britain* subject to the *Roman* State. The Nobility hereupon perswaded him to lay aside Thoughts

Digitized by Google

Thoughts of War, and be contented with *Claudius*'s Promiſe; repreſenting to him at the ſame Time, that it was no Diſgrace to be ſubject to the *Romans*, who enjoy'd the Empire of the whole World. By theſe and many other Arguments he was prevailed upon to hearken to their Advice, and ſo made his Submiſſion to *Cæſar*. Which done, *Claudius* ſent to *Rome* for his Daughter, and then with the Aſſiſtance of *Arviragus* reduced the *Orkney* and the Provincial Iſlands under his Power.

CHAP. XV.

Claudius *gives his Daughter* Genuiſſa *for a Wife to* Arviragus, *and returns to* Rome.

AS ſoon as the Winter was over, thoſe that were ſent for *Claudius*'s Daughter returned with her, and preſented her to her Father. The Damſels Name was *Genuiſſa*, and ſo great was her Beauty, as raiſed the Admiration of all that ſaw her. After her Marriage to the King ſhe gained ſo great an Aſcendant over his Affections, that he in a Manner valued nothing but her alone: Inſomuch that he was deſirous to have the Place honoured where the Nuptials

Digitized by Google

tials were solemnized, and moved *Claudius* to build a City upon it, for a Monument to Posterity, of so great and happy a Marriage. *Claudius* consented to it, and commanded a City to be built, which after his Name is called *Kaerglow*, that is, *Gloucester* to this Day, being seuated in the Confines of *Demetia* and *Loegria*, upon the Banks of the *Severn*. But some say that it derived its Name from one *Glous* a Duke that was born to *Claudius* there, and to whom after the Death of *Arviragus* fell the Dukedom of *Demetia*. The City being finished, and the Island now enjoying Peace, *Claudius* returned to *Rome*, leaving to *Arviragus* the Government of the *British* Islands. At the same Time the Apostle *Peter* founded the Church of *Antioch*; and afterwards coming to *Rome* was Bishop there, and sent *Mark* the Evangelist into *Egypt* to preach the Gospel which he had writ.

CHAP. XVI.

Arviragus *revolting from the* Romans, Vespasian *is sent into* Britain.

AFTER the Departure of *Claudius*, *Arviragus* began to shew his Wisdom and Courage, to rebuild Cities and Towns, and

Digitized by Google

and to exerciſe ſo great Authority over his own People, that he became a Terror to Kings of remote Countries. But this ſo elevated him with Pride that he deſpiſed the *Roman* Power, diſdained any longer Subjection to the Senate, and aſſumed to himſelf the ſole Authority in all Matters. Upon this News *Veſpaſian* was ſent by *Claudius* either to procure a Reconciliation with *Arviragus*, or reduce him under Subjection to the *Romans*. Therefore as *Veſpaſian* was juſt arriving at the Haven of *Rutupi*, *Arviragus* met him, and hindred him from entring the Port. For he had brought ſo great an Army along with him, as was a Terror to the *Romans*, who for fear of his falling upon them durſt not come aſhore. *Veſpaſian* upon this withdrew from that Port, and ſhifting his Sails arrived at the Shore of *Totneſs*. As ſoon as he was landed, he marched directly to beſiege *Kaerpenhuelgoit*, now *Exeter*; and after ſeven Days that he had laid before it, was overtaken by *Arviragus* and his Army, who gave him Battle. That Day great Deſtruction was made in both Armies, but neither got the Victory. The next Morning by the Mediation of Queen *Genuiſſa*, the two Leaders were made Friends, and they ſent their Men over to *Ireland*. As ſoon as Winter was over *Veſpaſian* returned to *Rome*, but *Arviragus* continued ſtill in *Britain*. Afterwards when he grew old, he began to

ſhew

Digitized by Google

shew Respect to the Senate, and to govern his Kingdom in Peace and Tranquillity. The old Laws of his Ancestors he confirm'd, and enacted some new ones, and made very ample Presents to all Persons of Merit. So that his Fame spread over all *Europe*, and he was both loved and feared by the *Romans*, and became the Subject of their Discourse more than any King in his Time. Hence *Juvenal* relates how a certain blind Man, speaking of a Turbot that was taken, said,

Regem aliquem capies aut de temone Britanno
Decidet Arviragus.

Arviragus shall from his Chariot fall,
Or Thee his Lord some captive King shall call.

In War none was more fierce than he, in Peace none more mild, none more jocose, or in his Presents more magnificent. When he had finished his Course of Life, he was buried at *Gloucester*, in a certain Temple which he had built and dedicated to the Honour of *Claudius*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XVII.

Rodric *Leader of the* Picts *is vanquiſhed by* Marius.

HIS Son *Marius* ſucceeded him in the Kingdom, being a Man of admirable Prudence and Wiſdom. In his Reign a certain King of the *Picts*, named *Rodric*, came from *Scythia* with a great Fleet, and arrived in the North Part of *Britain*, which is called *Albania*, and began to ravage that Country. *Marius* therefore raiſing an Army went in queſt of him, and in Battle killed him, and gained the Victory; for a Monument whereof he ſet up a Stone in the Province, which from his Name was afterwards called *Weſtmarland*, where there is an Inſcription retaining his Memory to this Day. *Rodric* being killed, he gave the conquered People that came with him Liberty to inhabit that Part of *Albania* which is called *Cathneſs*, that had been a long Time deſert and uncultivated. And as they had no Wives, they deſired the Daughters and Kinſwomen of the *Britains*. But the *Britains* refuſed them, out of a Diſdain to match with ſuch a People. Having ſuffered a Repulſe here, they ſailed over into *Ireland*, and married the Women of that Country, and by their Off-

ſpring

Digitized by Google

ſpring encreaſed their Number. But let thus much ſuffice concerning them, ſince I do not propoſe to write the Hiſtory of this People, or of the *Scots*, who derived their Original from them and the *Iriſh*. *Marius* after he had ſettled the Iſland in perfect Peace, began to love the *Roman* People, paying the Tribute that was demanded of him; and in Imitation of his Fathers Example practiſed Juſtice, Law, Peace, and every Thing that was honourable in his Kingdom.

CHAP. XVIII.

Marius *dying is ſucceeded by* Coillus.

AS ſoon as he had ended his Days, his Son *Coillus* took upon him the Government of the Kingdom. He had been brought up from his Infancy at *Rome*, and having been taught the Manners of the *Romans*, had contracted a moſt ſtrict Amity with them. He likewiſe pay'd them Tribute, and declined making them any Oppoſition, becauſe he ſaw the whole World ſubject to them, and that no Town or Country was out of the Limits of their Power. By paying therefore what was required of him, he enjoy'd his Kingdom in Peace: And no King ever ſhew'd greater Reſpect to his Nobility, as not only permitting them to enjoy their own

Digitized by Google

own with Quiet, but also engaging them by his continual Bounty and Munificence.

CHAP. XIX.

Lucius *is the First* British *King that embraces the* Christian *Faith, together with his People.*

COILLUS had but one Son named *Lucius*, who obtaining the Crown after his Fathers Decease, imitated all his Acts of Goodness, and seemed to his People to be no other than *Coillus* himself revived. As he had made this good Beginning, he was willing to make a better End: For which Purpose he sent Letters to Pope *Eleutherius*, desiring to be instructed by him in the *Christian* Religion. For the Miracles which *Christs* Disciples performed in several Nations, wrought a Conviction in his Mind; so that being inflamed with an ardent Love of the true Faith, he obtained the Accomplishment of his pious Request. For that holy Pope upon receipt of this devout Petition, sent to him two most religious Doctors, *Faganus* and *Duvanus*, who after they had preached concerning the Incarnation of the Word of God, administred to him Baptism, and made him a Proselyte to

Digitized by Google

to the *Christian* Faith. Immediately upon this, People from all Countries assembling together, followed the Kings Example, and being washed in the same holy Laver, were made Partakers of the Kingdom of Heaven. The holy Doctors after they had almost extinguished Paganism over the whole Island, dedicated the Temples that had been founded in Honour of many Gods, to the One only God and his Saints, and filled them with Congregations of *Christians*. There were then in *Britain* eight and twenty *Flamens*, as also three *Archflamens*, to whose Jurisdiction the other Judges and Enthusiasts were subject. These also, according to the Apostles Command, they delivered from Idolatry, and where they were Flamens made them Bishops, where Archflamens Archbishops. The Seats of the Archflamens were at the three noblest Cities, *viz. London*, *York*, and the City of *Legions*, which its old Walls and Buildings shew to have been situated upon the River *Uske* in *Glamorganshire*. Under these three, now purged from Superstition, were made subject twenty eight Bishops with their Dioceses. To the Metropolitan of *York* were subject *Deira* and *Albania*, which the great River *Humber* divides from *Logria*. To the Metropolitan of *London*, were subject *Logria* and *Cornwal*. These two Provinces the *Severn* divides from *Kambria* or *Wales*, which was subject to the City of *Legions*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XX.

Faganus *and* Duvanus *give an Account at* Rome, *of what they had done in* Britain.

AT last when they had made an entire Reformation here, the two Prelates returned to *Rome*, and desired the Pope to confirm what they had done. As soon as they had obtained a Confirmation, they returned again to *Britain*, accompanied with many others, by whose Doctrine the *British* Nation was in a short Time strengthened in the Faith. Their Names and Acts are recorded in a Book which *Gildas* wrote concerning the Victory of *Aurelius Ambrosius*: And what is delivered in so bright a Treatise, needs not to be repeated here in a meaner Style.

Digitized by Google

THE British History.

The Fifth Book.

CHAP. I.

Lucius *dies without Iſſue, and is a Benefactor to the Churches.*

IN the mean Time, the glorious King *Lucius* highly rejoyced at the great Progreſs the true Faith and Worſhip had made in his Kingdom, and granted that the Poſſeſſions and Territories formerly belonging to the Temples of the Gods, ſhould now be converted to a better Uſe, and appropriated to *Chriſtian*

Digitized by Google

Christian Churches. And becauſe a greater Honour was due to them than to the others, he made large Additions of Lands and Manſion Houſes, and all manner of Privileges to them. Amidſt theſe and other Acts of his great Piety, he departed this Life in the City of *Glouceſter*, and was honourably buried in the Cathedral Church, in the hundred and fifty ſixth Year after our Lords Incarnation. He had no Iſſue to ſucceed him, ſo that after his Deceaſe there roſe a Diſſenſion among the *Britains*, and the *Roman* Power was weakened.

CHAP. II.

Severus *a Senator ſubdues Part of* Britain: *His War with* Fulgenius.

WHEN this News was brought to *Rome*, the Senate diſpatched away *Severus* a Senator, and two Legions along with him, to reduce the Country under the *Roman* Subjection. As ſoon as he was arrived he came to a Battle with the *Britains*; Part of whom he obliged to ſubmit to him, and the other Part which he could not ſubdue he endeavoured to diſtreſs in ſeveral cruel Engagements, and forced them to fly beyond *Deira* into *Albania*. Notwithſtanding

Digitized by Google

they under the Conduct of *Fulgenius* opposed him with all their Might, and often made great Slaughter both of their own Countrymen and of the *Romans*. For *Fulgenius* brought into his Assistance all the People of the Islands that he could find, and so frequently returned with Victory. The Emperor not being able to bear the Irruptions he made, commanded a Wall to be built between *Deira* and *Albania*, to hinder his Excursions upon them: Which they accordingly made upon the common Charge from Sea to Sea, and which did for a long Time hinder the Approach of the Enemy. But *Fulgenius*, when he was unable to make any longer Resistance, made a Voyage into *Scythia*, to desire the Assistance of the *Picts* towards his Restoration. And when he had got together all the Forces of that Country, he returned with a very great Fleet into *Britain*, and besieged *York*. Upon the spreading of this News through the Countries, the greatest Part of the *Britains* deserted *Severus*, and went over to *Fulgenius*. However this did not make *Severus* desist from his Enterprize: But calling together the *Romans*, and the rest of the *Britains* that adhered to him, he marched to the Siege, and fought with *Fulgenius*; but the Engagement proving very sharp, he was killed with many of his Followers: *Fulgenius* also was mortally wounded. Afterwards *Severus* was buried at *York*, which City

Digitized by Google

City was taken by his Legions. He left two Sons, *Bassianus* and *Geta*, whereof *Geta* had a *Roman* for his Mother, but *Bassianus* a *Britain*. Therefore upon the Death of their Father the *Romans* made *Geta* King, favouring him on Account of his being a *Roman* by both his Parents: But the *Britains* rejected him, and advanced *Bassianus*, as being their Countryman by his Mothers Side. This proved the Occasion of a Fight between the two Brothers, in which *Geta* was killed; and so *Bassianus* obtained the Kingdom.

CHAP. III.

Carausius *advanced to be King of* Britain.

AT that Time there was in *Britain* one *Carausius*, a young Man of very mean Birth, who having given a Proof of his Bravery in many Engagements, went to *Rome*, and sollicited the Senate for Leave to defend with a Fleet the maritim Coasts of *Britain*, from the Incursions of *Barbarians*; which if they would grant him, he promised to do more and greater Things for the Honour and Service of the Commonwealth, than if the Kingdom of *Britain* were delivered up to them. The Senate deluded by

Digitized by Google

his ſpecious Promiſes granted him his Requeſt, and ſo with his Commiſſion ſealed, he returned to *Britain*. Then by wicked Practiſes getting a Fleet together, he liſted into his Service a Body of the braveſt Youth, and put out to Sea, and ſailed round all the Shores of the Kingdom, cauſing very great Diſturbance among the People. In the mean Time he invaded the adjacent Iſlands, where he deſtroy'd all before him, Countries, Cities, and Towns, and plundered the Inhabitants of all they had. By this Conduct he encouraged to flock to him all manner of diſſolute Fellows with Hopes of Plunder, and in a very ſhort Time was attended with an Army that no neighbouring Prince was able to oppoſe. This made him begin to ſwell with Pride, and to propoſe to the *Britains*, that they ſhould make him their King; upon which Conſideration he promiſed to kill and baniſh the *Romans*, and free the whole Iſland from the Invaſions of barbarous Nations. Accordingly obtaining his Requeſt, he preſently fell upon *Baſſianus* and killed him, and then took upon him the Government of the Kingdom. For *Baſſianus* was betray'd by the *Picts*, whom *Fulgenius* his Mothers Brother had brought with him into *Britain*, and who being corrupted by the Promiſes and Preſents of *Carauſius*, inſtead of aſſiſting *Baſſianus*, deſerted him in the very Battle, and fell upon his Men; ſo that the reſt

Digitized by Google

reſt were put into a Conſternation, and not knowing their Friends from their Foes, quickly gave Ground, and left the Victory to *Carauſius*. Then he, to reward the *Picts* for this Succeſs, gave them a Place of Habitation in *Albania*, where they continued afterwards mixt with the *Britains*.

CHAP. IV.

Allectus *kills* Carauſius, *but is afterwards himſelf ſlain in Flight by* Aſclepiodotus.

WHEN the News of theſe Proceedings of *Carauſius* arrived at *Rome*, the Senate deputed *Allectus* with three Legions, with a Commiſſion to kill the Tyrant, and reſtore the Kingdom of *Britain* to the *Roman* Power. No ſooner was he arrived, than he fought with *Carauſius*, killed him, and took upon himſelf the Government. After which he miſerably oppreſſed the *Britains*, for having deſerted the Commonwealth, and adhered to *Carauſius*. But the *Britains* not enduring this, advanced *Aſclepiodotus*, Duke of *Cornwal*, to be their King, and then unanimouſly marched againſt *Allectus*, and challenged him to a Battle. He was then at *London*, celebrating a

Digitized by Google

Feast to his Tutelary Gods; but being informed of the coming of *Asclepiodotus*, he quitted the Sacrifice, and went out with all his Forces to meet him, and engaged with him in a most sharp Fight. But *Asclepiodotus* had the Advantage, and dispersed and put to Flight *Allectus*'s Troops, and in the Pursuit killed many thousands, as also King *Allectus* himself. After this Victory gained by him, *Livius Gallus*, the Collegue of *Allectus*, assembled together the rest of the *Romans*, and shut up the Gates of the City, in the Towers and other Fortifications of which, he placed his Men, thinking by this Means either to make a Stand against *Asclepiodotus*, or at least to avoid imminent Death. But *Asclepiodotus* seeing what was done, quickly laid Siege to the City, and sent Word to all the Dukes of *Britain*, how he had killed *Allectus* with a great Number of his Men, and was besieging *Gallus* and the rest of the *Romans* in *London*; and therefore earnestly intreated them to hasten to his Assistance, representing to them withal, how easy it was to extirpate the whole Race of the *Romans* out of *Britain*, provided they would all join their Forces against the besieged. At this Summons came the *Demetians*, *Venedotians*, *Deirans*, *Albanians*, and all others of the *British* Race. As soon as they appeared before the Duke, he commanded vast Numbers of Engines to be made,

Digitized by Google

made, to beat down the Walls of the City. Accordingly every one readily executed his Orders with great Bravery, and made a brisk Assault upon the City, the Walls of which were in a very short Time battered down, and a Passage made into it. After these Preparations, they began a bloody Assault upon the *Romans*, who seeing their Fellow Soldiers falling before them without Intermission, perswaded *Gallus* to offer a Surrender on the bare Terms of only having Quarter granted them, and Leave to depart: For they were now all killed excepting one Legion, which still held out. *Gallus* consented to the Proposal, and accordingly surrendred himself and his Men to *Asclepiodotus*, who was disposed to give them Quarter; but he was prevented by a Body of *Venedotians*, who rushed in upon them, and the same Day cut off all their Heads upon a Brook within the City, which from the Name of the Commander was afterwards called in the *British* Tongue *Nantgallim*, and in the *Saxon Gallemborne*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. V.

Aſclepiodotus *takes the Crown.* Diocleſians *Maſſacre of the* Chriſtians *in* Britain.

THE *Romans* being thus defeated, *Aſclepiodotus* with the Conſent of the People, placed the Crown upon his own Head, and then governed the Country in Juſtice and Peace ten Years, and curbed the Inſolence and Outrages committed by Plunderers and Robbers. In his Days began the Perſecution of the Emperor *Diocleſian*, by which Chriſtianity was almoſt aboliſhed over the whole Iſland, which from the Time of King *Lucius* had continued fixed and undiſturbed. This was very much owing to *Maximianus Herculius*, General of that Tyrant's Army, by whoſe Command all the Churches were pulled down, and all Copies of the Holy Scriptures that could be found, were burnt in the publick Markets. The Prieſts alſo, with the Believers under their Care, were put to Death, and with Emulation preſſed in Crowds together for a ſpeedy Paſſage to the Joys of Heaven, as their proper Dwelling Place. God therefore magnified his Goodneſs to us, foraſmuch as he did in that Time of Perſecution, of his meer Grace light up the bright Lamps of the Holy Martyrs,

Digitized by Google

Martyrs, to prevent the ſpreading of groſs Darkneſs over the People of *Britain*; whoſe Sepulchres and Places of Suffering might have been a Means of inflaming our Minds with the greateſt Fervency of Divine Love, had not the deplorable Impiety of *Barbarians* deprived us of them. Among others of both Sexes that continued firm in the Army of Chriſt, there ſuffered *Alban* of *Verulam*, as alſo *Julius* and *Aaron*, both of the City of *Legions*. Of theſe *Alban*, out of the Fervour of his Charity, when his Confeſſor *Amphibalus* was purſued by the Perſecutors, and juſt ready to be apprehended, firſt hid him in his Houſe, and then offered himſelf to die for him; imitating in this Chriſt himſelf, who laid down his Life for his Sheep. The other two, after being tore Limb from Limb, in a Manner unheard of, took a ſpeedy Flight up to the Gates of the Heavenly *Jeruſalem* with a Crown of Martyrdom.

CHAP. VI.

An Inſurrection againſt Aſclepiodotus *by* Coel, *whoſe Daughter* Helena Conſtantius *marries.*

IN the mean Time *Coel* Duke of *Kaercolvin* or *Colcheſter*, made an Inſurrection againſt King *Aſclepiodotus*, and in a pitched Battle

Battle killed him, and took Poſſeſſion of his Crown. The Senate hearing this, rejoyced at the Kings Death, who had given ſuch Diſturbance to the *Roman* Power: And reflecting withal upon the Damage they had ſuſtained by the Loſs of this Kingdom, they ſent away *Conſtantius* the Senator, who had reduced *Spain* under their Subjection, being a Man of Prudence and Courage, and one who was above all the reſt induſtrious to promote the Good of the Common-Wealth. *Coel* having Information of his coming, was afraid to engage with him in Battle, on Account of a Report, that no King was able to ſtand before him. Therefore as ſoon as *Conſtantius* was arrived at the Iſland, *Coel* ſent Ambaſſadors to him with Offers of Peace and Promiſe of Subjection, provided he might enjoy the Kingdom of *Britain*, and pay no more than the uſual Tribute to the *Roman* State. *Conſtantius* conſented to the Propoſal, and ſo upon giving of Hoſtages the Peace was confirmed between them. The Month after *Coel* was ſeized with a very great Sickneſs, of which he died within eight Days. After his Deceaſe, *Conſtantius* himſelf was Crowned, and married the Daughter of *Coel*, whoſe Name was *Helena*. She ſurpaſſed all the Ladies of the Country in Beauty, as ſhe did all others of her Time in her Skill in Muſick and the liberal Arts. Her Father had

Digitized by Google

had no other Issue to succeed him on the Throne, for which Reason he was very careful about her Education, the better to qualify her to govern the Kingdom. *Constantius* therefore having made her Partner of his Bed, had a Son by her called *Constantine*. After eleven Years were expired, he died at *York*, and bestow'd the Kingdom upon his Son, who within a few Years after he was raised to this Dignity, began to give Proofs of an Heroick Virtue, undaunted Courage, and strict Observation of Justice among his People. He put a Stop to the Depredations of Robbers, suppressed the Insolence of Tyrants, and endeavoured every where to restore Peace.

CHAP. VII.

The Romans *desire* Constantines *Assistance against the Cruelty of* Maxentius.

AT that Time there was a certain Tyrant at *Rome*, named *Maxentius*, who made it his Endeavour to confiscate the Estates of all the best of the Nobility, and oppressed the Commonwealth with his grievous Tyranny. He therefore proceeding in his Cruelty, those that were banished fled

Digitized by Google

fled to *Constantine* in *Britain*, and were honourably entertained by him. At last when a great many such had resorted to him, they endeavoured to raise in him an Abhorrence of the Tyrant, and frequently expostulated with him after this manner. "How long, *Constantine*, will you suffer "our Distress and Banishment? Why do "you delay to restore us to our Native "Country? You are the only Person of "our Nation, that can restore to us what "we have lost by driving out *Maxentius*. "For what Prince is to be compared with "the King of *Britain*, either for brave and "gallant Soldiers, or for large Treasures? "We intreat you restore us to our Estates, "Wives and Children, by conducting us "with an Army to *Rome*.

CHAP. VIII.

Constantine *having reduced* Rome, *obtains the Empire of the World.* Octavius *Duke of the* Wisseans, *is put to Flight by* Trahern.

CONSTANTINE moved with these and the like Speeches, made an Expedition to *Rome*, and reduced it under his Power, and afterwards obtained the Empire

Digitized by Google

pire of the whole World. In this Expedition he carried along with him three Unkles of *Helena*, viz. *Leolin*, *Trahern* and *Marius*, and advanced them to the Degree of Senators. In the mean Time *Octavius*, Duke of the *Wiſſeans*, rebelled againſt the *Roman* Proconſuls, to whom the Government of the Iſland had been committed, and having killed them, took Poſſeſſion of the Throne. *Conſtantine* upon Information hereof, ſent *Trahern* the Unkle of *Helena*, with three Legions to reduce the Iſland. *Trahern* arrived at Shore hard by the City, which in the *Britiſh* Tongue is called *Kaerperis*, which he aſſaulted, and in two Days Time took it. This News ſpreading over the whole Country, King *Octavius* aſſembled all the Forces of the Land, and went to meet him not far from *Wincheſter*, in a Field called in the *Britiſh* Tongue *Maiſuriam*, where he engaged with him in Battle, and routed him. *Trahern* upon this Loſs, betook himſelf with his broken Forces to his Ships, and in them made a Voyage to *Albania*, in the Provinces of which he made great Deſtruction. When *Octavius* again had Intelligence of it, he followed him with his Forces, and encountred him in *Weſtmarland*, but fled without the Victory. On the other Hand *Trahern* when he found the Day was his own, purſued *Octavius*, nor ever ſuffered him to be at reſt till he had diſpoſſeſſed him both

Digitized by Google

both of his Cities and Crown. *Octavius* in great Grief for the Loſs of his Kingdom, went in a Fleet to *Norway*, to obtain Aſſiſtance from King *Gombert*. In the mean Time he had given Orders to his moſt intimate Adherents, to watch carefully all Opportunities of killing *Trahern*; which accordingly did not long fail of being executed, by the Magiſtrate of a certain privileged Town, who had a more than ordinary Love for him. For as *Trahern* was one Day upon a Journey from *London*, he lay hid with a hundred Men in the Vale of a Wood, through which he was to paſs, and there fell upon him unawares, and killed him in the midſt of his Men. This News being brought to *Octavius*, he returned back to *Britain*, where he diſperſed the *Romans*, and recovered the Throne. In a ſhort Time after this, he arrived to ſuch Greatneſs and Wealth, that he feared no Body; and poſſeſſed the Kingdom till the Time of *Gratian* and *Valentinian*.

CHAP. IX.

Maximian *is deſired for a King of* Britain.

AT laſt in his Old Age, being willing to ſettle the Government, he asked his Council, whom of his Family they deſired to

Digitized by Google

to have for their King after his Deceaſe. For he had no Son, and but one Daughter, to whom he might leave the Crown. Some therefore adviſed him to beſtow his Daughter with the Kingdom upon ſome noble *Roman*, to the End they might enjoy a firmer Peace. Others were of Opinion, that *Conan Meriadoc* his Nephew ought to be preferred to the Throne, and the Daughter married to ſome Prince of another Kingdom with a Dowry in Money. While theſe Things were in Agitation among them, there came *Caradoc* Duke of *Cornwal*, and gave his Advice to invite over *Maximian* the Senator, and to beſtow the Lady with the Kingdom upon him, which would be a Means of ſecuring to them a laſting Peace. For his Father *Leolin*, the Unkle of *Conſtantine*, whom we mentioned before, was a *Britain*, but by his Mother and Place of Birth he was a *Roman*, and by both Parents was deſcended of Royal Blood. And there was a ſure Proſpect of a firm and ſecure Peace under him, upon Account of the Right he had to *Britain* by his Deſcent from the Emperors, and alſo from the *Britiſh* Blood. But the Duke of *Cornwal* by delivering this Advice, brought upon himſelf the Diſpleaſure of *Conan*, the Kings Nephew, who was very ambitious of ſucceeding to the Kingdom, and put the whole Court into a Diſorder upon it. However *Caradoc* being

Digitized by Google

unwilling to recede from his Propoſal, ſent his Son *Mauricius* to *Rome* to acquaint *Maximian* with what had paſſed. *Mauricius* was a Perſon of large and well-proportioned Stature, as well as great Courage and Boldneſs, and could not bear to have his Judgment contradicted without a Recourſe to Arms and Duelling. As ſoon as he preſented himſelf before *Maximian*, he met with a Reception from him ſuitable to his Quality, and had the greateſt Honours paid him of any that were about him. There happened to be then a very great Conteſt betweeen *Maximian* and the two Emperors, *Gratian* and his Brother *Valentinian*, on Account of his being refuſed the third Part of the Empire, which he demanded. When therefore *Mauricius* ſaw *Maximian* ill treated by the Emperors, he took Occaſion from thence to addreſs himſelf to him in this manner. "What need you, *Maximian*, "ſtand in fear of *Gratian*, when you have "ſo fair an Opportunity of wreſting the "Empire from him? Go along with me "into *Britain*, and you ſhall take Poſſeſſi-"on of that Crown. For King *Octavius* "being now grown old and infirm, deſires "nothing more than to find ſome ſuch "proper Perſon, to beſtow his Kingdom "and Daughter upon. He has no Male "Iſſue, and therefore has asked the Advice "of his Nobility, to whom he ſhould marry "his

Digitized by Google

" his Daughter with the Kingdom; and
" they to his Satisfaction have passed a De-
" cree, that the Kingdom and Lady be gi-
" ven to you, and have sent me to acquaint
" you with it. So that if you go with me,
" and accomplish this Affair, you may with
" the Treasure and Forces of *Britain* be able
" to return back to *Rome*, drive out the
" Emperors, and gain the Empire to your-
" self. For in this manner did your Kins-
" man *Constantius*, and several others of our
" Kings who raised themselves to the Em-
" pire.

CHAP. X.

Maximian *coming into* Britain; *artfully declines fighting with* Conan.

MAXIMIAN was pleased with the Offer, and took his Journey to *Britain*; but in his Way subdued the Cities of the *Franks*, by which he amassed to himself a great Treasure of Gold and Silver, and raised Men for his Service in all Parts. Afterwards he set sail with a fair Wind, and arrived at *Hamo*'s Port; the News whereof extreamly surprized the King with Fear and Astonishment, who took this to be a

Digitized by Google

hostile Invasion. Whereupon he called to him his Nephew *Conan*, and commanded him to raise all the Forces of the Kingdom, and go meet the Enemy. *Conan* having made the necessary Preparations, marched accordingly to *Hamo*'s Port, where *Maximian* had pitched his Tents; who upon seeing the Approach of so numerous an Army, was under the greatest Perplexities what Course to take. For as he was attended with a smaller Body of Men, and had no Hopes of being entertained peaceably, he dreaded both the Number and Courage of the Enemy. Under these Difficulties he called a Council of the ancientest Men, together with *Mauricius*, to ask their Advice what was to be done at this critical Juncture. "It is not for us, said *Mauricius*, to hazard "a Battle with such a numerous and puis- "sant Army: Neither was the Reduction "of *Britain* in a hostile Manner the End "of our coming. Our Business must be to "desire Peace and a hospitable Treatment, "till we can learn the Kings Mind. Let "us say that we are sent by the Emperors "upon an Embassy to *Octavius*, and let us "with artful Speeches pacify the People." When all had shewn themselves pleased with this Advice, he took with him twelve aged Men with gray Hairs, eminent beyond the rest for their Quality and Wisdom, and bearing Olive-Branches in their right Hands, and

Digitized by Google

and went to meet *Conan*. The *Britains* seeing they were Men of a venerable Age, and that they bore Olive-Branches as a Token of Peace, rose up before them in a respectful Manner, and opened a Way for their free Access to their Commander. Then they presenting themselves before *Conan Meriadoc*, saluted him in the Name of the Emperors and the Senate, and told him, that *Maximian* was sent to *Octavius* upon an Embassy from *Gratian* and *Valentinian*. *Conan* made Answer; "Why is he then "attended with so great a Multitude? "This does not look like the Appearance "of Ambassadors, but the Invasion of "Enemies." To which *Mauricius* reply'd; "It did not become so great a Man to ap- "pear abroad in a mean Figure, or with- "out Soldiers for his Guard; especially con- "sidering, that by Reason of the *Roman* "Power, and the Actions of his Ancestors, "he is become obnoxious to many Kings. "If he had had but a small Retinue, he might "perhaps have been killed by the Enemies "of the Commonwealth. He is come in "Peace, and it is Peace he desires. For from "the Time of our Arrival, our Behaviour "has been such as to give no Offence to any "Body. We have bought Necessaries at our "own Expences, as peaceable People do, and "have taken nothing from any by Violence." While *Conan* was in suspence, whether to give

Digitized by Google

them Peace, or begin the Battle, *Caradoc* Duke of *Cornwal*, with others of the Nobility came to him, and diſſwaded him from proceeding in the War after this Repreſentation: Whereupon, though much againſt his Will, he laid down his Arms, and granted them Peace. Then he conducted *Maximian* to *London*, where he gave the King an Account of the whole Proceeding.

CHAP. XI.

The Kingdom of Britain *is beſtowed on* Maximian.

CARADOC after this, taking along with him his Son *Mauricius*, commanded every Body to withdraw from the Kings Preſence, and then addreſſed himſelf to him in theſe Words. "Behold, that which "your more faithful and loyal Subjects "have long wiſhed for, is now by the good "Providence of God brought about. You "commanded your Nobility to give their "Advice, how to diſpoſe of your Daughter "and Kingdom, as being willing to hold "the Government no longer on Account of "your great Age. Some therefore were "for having the Kingdom delivered up to "*Conan* your Nephew, and a ſuitable Match "procured

Digitized by Google

" procured for your Daughter elſewhere;
" as fearing the Ruin of our People, if any
" Prince that is a Stranger to our Language
" ſhould be ſet over us. Others were for
" granting the Kingdom to your Daughter,
" and ſome Nobleman of our own Coun-
" try, who ſhould ſucceed you after your
" Death. But the major Part recommended
" ſome Perſon deſcended of the Family of
" the Emperors, on whom you ſhould be-
" ſtow your Daughter and Crown. For
" they promiſed themſelves a firm and laſt-
" ing Peace, as the Conſequence of ſuch a
" Marriage, ſince they would be under the
" Protection of the *Roman* State. See then!
" God has vouchſafed to bring to you a
" young Man, who is both a *Roman*, and
" alſo of the Royal Family of *Britain*; and
" to whom, if you follow my Advice, you
" will not delay to marry your Daughter.
" And indeed ſhould you refuſe him, what
" Right could you plead to the Crown of
" *Britain* againſt him. For he is the Couſin
" of *Conſtantine*, and the Nephew of King
" *Coel*, whoſe Daughter *Helena* poſſeſſed
" the Crown by an undeniable Hereditary
" Right." When *Caradoc* had repreſented theſe Things to him, *Octavius* acquieſced, and with the general Conſent of his People forthwith beſtowed the Kingdom and his Daughter upon him. *Conan Meriadoc* finding how Things went, was beyond Expreſ-

Digitized by Google

sion incensed, and retiring into *Albania*, used all his Interest to raise an Army, that he might give Disturbance to *Maximian*. And when he had got a great Body of Men together, he passed the *Humber*, and wasted the Provinces on each Side of it. At the News whereof, *Maximian* hastened to assemble his Forces against him, and then gave him Battle, and returned with Victory. But this proved no decisive Blow to *Conan*, who with his reassembled Troops still continued to ravage the Provinces, and provoked *Maximian* to return again and renew the War, in which he had various Success, being sometimes Victorious, sometimes vanquished. At last, after great Damages done on both Sides, they were brought by the Mediation of Friends to a Reconciliation.

CHAP. XII.

Maximian *overthrows the* Armoricans; *his Speech to* Conan.

FIVE Years after this, *Maximian* swelling with Pride, by Reason of the vast Treasures that daily flow'd in upon him, fitted out a great Fleet, and assembled together all the Forces in *Britain*. For this Kingdom

Digitized by Google

Kingdom was not now sufficient for him; he had an Ambition of adding *Gaul* also to it. With this View he set sail, and arrived first at the Kingdom of *Armorica*, now called *Britain*, and began Hostilities upon the *Gallick* People that inhabited it. But the *Gauls*, under the Command of *Inbaltus*, met him, and engaged him in Battle, in which the greater Part being endangered, they were forced to fly, and leave *Inbaltus* with fifteen thousand Men killed, all of them *Armoricans*. This vast Overthrow was Matter of the greatest Joy to *Maximian*, who knew the Reduction of that Country would be very easy, after the Loss of so many Men. Upon this Occasion he called to him *Conan* aside from the Army, and smiling said; "See, we have already conquered "one of the best Kingdoms in *Gaul*: We "may now have Hopes of gaining all the "rest. Let us make haste to take the "Cities and Towns, before the Rumour "of their Danger spread to the remoter "Parts of *Gaul*, and raise all the People "up in Arms. For if we can but get Pos-"session of this Kingdom, I make no "Doubt of reducing all *Gaul* under our "Power. Be not therefore concerned that "you have yielded up the Island of *Britain* "to me, notwithstanding the Hopes you "once had of succeeding to it; because "whatever you have lost in it, I will re-"store

Digitized by Google

" ſtore to you in this Country. For my " Deſign is to advance you upon the Throne " of this Kingdom; and this ſhall be ano- " ther *Britain*, which we will people with our " own Countrymen, and drive out the old " Inhabitants. The Land is fruitful in Corn, " the Rivers abound with Fiſh, the Woods " afford a beautiful Proſpect, and the Fo- " reſts are every where pleaſant; nor is " there in my Opinion any where a more " delightful Country." Upon this *Conan* with a ſubmiſſive Bow gave him his Thanks, and promiſed to continue loyal to him as long as he lived.

CHAP. XIII.

Redonum *taken by* Maximian.

AFTER this they marched with their Forces to *Redonum*, and took it the ſame Day. For the Citizens hearing of the Bravery of the *Britains*, and what Slaughter they had made, fled away with haſte, leaving their Wives and Children behind them. And the reſt of the Cities and Towns ſoon followed their Example; ſo that there was an eaſy Acceſs to them, for the *Britains*, who wherever they entred killed all they found left of the Male Sex, and ſpared only the Women.

Digitized by Google

Women. At last when they had wholly extirpated the Inhabitants of all those Provinces, they garrison'd the Cities and Towns with *British* Soldiers, and made Fortifications in several Places. The Fame of *Maximians* Exploits spreading over the rest of the Provinces of *Gaul*, all their Dukes and Princes were under a dreadful Consternation, and had no other Hopes left but in their Prayers to their Gods. They fled every where from the Country Villages into the Cities and Towns, and other Places of Strength and Safety. *Maximian* finding he had struck a Terror into them, began to think still of bolder Attempts, and by profusely distributing of Presents augmented his Army. For all manner of Persons that he knew greedy of Plunder, he listed into his Service, and by plentifully bestowing his Money and other valuable Things among them, kept them firm to his Interest.

CHAP. XIV.

Maximian *after the Conquest of* Gaul *and* Germany, *makes* Triers *the Seat of his Empire.*

BY this Means he raised such a numerous Army, as he thought would be sufficient for the Conquest of all *Gaul*. Notwithstanding

Digitized by Google

withſtanding he ſuſpended the Exerciſe of his Arms for a little Time, till he had ſettled the Kingdom he had taken, and peopled it with *Britains*. To this End he publiſhed a Decree, for the aſſembling together of a hundred thouſand of the common People of *Britain*, who were to come over to him; beſides thirty thouſand Soldiers, to defend them in the Country from all hoſtile Invaſions. As ſoon as the People were arrived according to his Orders, he diſtributed them through all the Countries of the Kingdom of *Armorica*, and made another *Britain* of it, and then beſtow'd it on *Conan Meriadoc*. But he himſelf, with the reſt of his Fellow Soldiers, marched into the farther Part of *Gaul*, which after many bloody Battles he ſubdued, as he did alſo all *Germany*, being every where victorious. But the Seat of his Empire he made at *Triers*, and fell ſo furiouſly upon the two Emperors *Gratian* and *Valentinian*, that he killed the one, and forced the other to fly from *Rome*.

CHAP. XV.

A Fight between the Aquitans *and* Conan.

IN the mean Time the *Gauls* and *Aquitans* gave Diſturbance to *Conan*, and the *Armorican Britains*, and infeſted them with their frequent

Digitized by Google

frequent Incurſions; but he as often defeated them, and bravely defended the Country committed to them. After he had entirely vanquiſhed them, he had a Mind to beſtow Wives on his Fellow Soldiers, by whom they might have Iſſue to keep perpetual Poſſeſſion of the Country: And to avoid all mixture with the *Gauls*, he ſent over to the Iſland of *Britain* for Wives for them. In order to this, Meſſengers were ſent to recommend the Management of this Affair to *Dianotus* King of *Cornwal*, who had ſucceeded his Brother *Caradoc* in that Kingdom. He was a very noble and powerful Prince, and to him *Maximian* had committed the Government, while he was employ'd in Affairs abroad. He had alſo a Daughter of wonderful Beauty, named *Urſula*, whom *Conan* was moſt paſſionately in Love with.

CHAP. XVI.

Guanius *and* Melga *murder eleven thouſand Virgins.* Maximian *is killed at* Rome.

DIANOTUS, upon this Meſſage ſent him by *Conan*, was very ready to execute his Orders, and ſummoned together the Daughters of the Nobility from all Provinces,

Digitized by Google

vinces, to the Number of eleven thousand; but of those of the meaner Sort sixty thousand; and commanded them all to appear together at the City of *London*. He likewise ordered Ships to be brought from all Shores, for their Transportation to their future Husbands. And though in so great a Multitude many were pleased with this Order, yet it was displeasing to the greater Part, as having a greater Affection for their Relations and native Country. Nor perhaps were there wanting some, who preferring Virginity to the married State, would have rather lost their Lives in any Country, than enjoy'd the greatest Plenty in Wedlock. In short, most of them had Views and Wishes different from one another, had they been left to their own Liberty. But now the Ships being ready, they went on board them, and sailing down the *Thames* made towards the Sea. At last as they were steering towards the *Armorican* Coast, contrary Winds rose and dispersed the whole Fleet. In this Storm the greater Part of the Ships were drowned; but the Women that escaped the Danger of the Sea, were driven upon strange Islands, and by a barbarous People either murdered or made Slaves. For they happened to fall into the Hands of the cruel Army of *Guanius* and *Melga*, who by the Command of *Gratian* were making terrible Destruction among the maritim

Digitized by Google

ritim Nations and *Germany*. *Guanius* was King of the *Huns*, and *Melga* of the *Picts*, whom *Gratian* had engaged in his Party, and had sent into *Germany*, to infest along the Sea Coasts all those of *Maximians* Party. While they were thus exercising their barbarous Rage, they happened to light upon these Virgins, driven on those Parts, and were so inflamed with their Beauty, that they courted them to their brutish Embraces; which when the Women would not submit to, the *Ambrons* fell upon them, and without the least Remorse murder'd the greatest Part of them. This done, the two wicked Leaders of the *Picts* and *Huns*, *Guanius* and *Melga*, being the Partizans of *Gratian* and *Valentinian*, when they had learned that the Island of *Britain* was drained of all its Soldiers, made a speedy Voyage towards it; and taking into their Assistance the People of the adjacent Islands, arrived in *Albania*. Then joining all in a Body, they invaded the Kingdom which was left without either Government or Defence, and made miserable Destruction among the common People. For *Maximian*, as we have already related, had carried away with him all the warlike Youth that could be found, and had left behind him only the Husbandmen, who had neither Sense nor Arms, for the Defence of their Country. *Guanius* and *Melga* finding they were not able to give them the least

Digitized by Google

least Oppoſition, began to domineer moſt inſolently, and to lay waſte their Cities and Countries, as if they had only been Penns of Sheep. The News of this grievous Calamity coming to *Maximian*, he ſent away *Gratian Municeps*, with two Legions to their Aſſiſtance; who as ſoon as they arrived, fought with the Enemy, and after a moſt bloody Victory over them, forced them to fly over into *Ireland*. In the mean Time *Maximian* was killed at *Rome* by *Gratians* Friends: And the *Britains* he had carried with him, were alſo ſlain and diſperſed. Thoſe of them that could eſcape, went to their Countrymen in *Armorica*, which was now called the other *Britain*.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE

British History.

The Sixth Book.

CHAP. I.

Gratian *being advanced to the Throne is killed by the common People. The* Britains *desire the* Romans *to defend them against* Guanius *and* Melga.

BUT *Gratian Municeps* hearing of the Death of *Maximian*, seized the Crown, and made himself King. After this he exercised such Tyranny, that the common People fell upon him in a tumultuous Manner, and murdered him. When this News had

Digitized by Google

reached other Countries, their former Enemies returned back from *Ireland*, and bringing with them the *Scots*, *Norwegians*, and *Danes*, made dreadful Devastations with Fire and Sword over the whole Kingdom from Sea to Sea. Upon this most grievous Calamity and Oppression, Ambassadors are dispatched with Letters to *Rome*, to beseech with Tears and Vows of perpetual Subjection, that a Body of Men might be sent to revenge their Injuries, and drive out the Enemy from them. The Ambassadors in a short Time prevailed so far, as to have one Legion committed to them, that was unmindful of past Injuries, which was transported in a Fleet to their Country, where they encountred the Enemy. At last after the Slaughter of a vast Multitude of them, they drove them entirely out of their Coasts, and rescued the miserable Commonalty from their outrageous Cruelty. Then they gave Orders for a Wall to be built between *Albania* and *Deira*, from one Sea to the other, for a Terror to the Enemy, and Safeguard to the Country. At that Time *Albania* wholly lay waste, by the frequent Invasions of barbarous Nations; and whatever Enemies made an Attempt upon the Country, met with a convenient Landing Place here. So that the Inhabitants were diligent in working upon the Wall, which they finished partly at the publick, partly upon private Charge.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. II.

Guethelins *Speech to the* Britains, *at the* Romans *returning home.*

THE *Romans* after this declared to the *Britains*, that they ſhould not be able for the Future to undergo the Fatigue of ſuch laborious Expeditions; and that it was beneath the Dignity of the *Roman* State, to haraſs ſo great and brave an Army, both by Land and Sea, againſt baſe and vagabond Robbers: But rather they ought to apply themſelves to the Uſe of Arms, and to fight bravely in defending to the utmoſt of their Power, their Country, Riches, Wives, Children, and, what is dearer than all theſe, their Liberty and Lives. As ſoon as they had given them this Exhortation, they commanded all the Men of the Iſland, that were fit for War, to appear together at *London*, becauſe the *Romans* were about to return home. When therefore they were all aſſembled, *Guethelin* the Metropolitan of *London* had Orders to make a Speech to them, which he did in theſe Words.

" Though I am appointed by the Princes " here preſent to ſpeak to you, I find my- " ſelf rather ready to burſt out into Tears,

Digitized by Google

" than disposed to make an eloquent Ora-
" tion. It is a most sensible Affliction to
" me, to observe the Weakness and Orphan
" State into which you are fallen, since the
" Time that *Maximian* drew away with
" him all the Forces and Youth of this King-
" dom. You that were left were People
" wholly unexperienced in War, and taken
" up with other Employments, as tilling
" the Ground, and several Kinds of mecha-
" nical Trades. So that when your Ene-
" mies from foreign Countries came upon
" you, as Sheep wandring without a Shep-
" herd, they forced you to quit your Folds,
" till the *Roman* Power restored you to them
" again. Must your Hopes therefore al-
" ways depend upon foreign Assistance?
" And will you never use yourselves to
" handle Arms against a Band of Robbers,
" that are by no Means stronger than
" yourselves, if you are not dispirited by
" Sloth and Cowardice? The *Romans* are
" now tired with the continual Voyages,
" wherewith they are harassed to defend you
" against your Enemies: They rather chuse
" to remit to you the Tribute you pay them,
" than undergo any longer this Fatigue by
" Land and Sea. What though you were
" only the common People at the Time
" when we had Soldiers of our own, do you
" therefore think that Manhood has quite
" forsaken you? Are not Men in the Course

" of

Digitized by Google

" of human Generation often the Reverſe
" of one another? Does not a Ploughman
" beget a Soldier, and a Soldier a Plough-
" man? Does not the ſame Diverſity hap-
" pen in a Mechanick and a Soldier? Since
" then in this Manner one produces ano-
" ther, I cannot think it poſſible for Man-
" hood to be loſt among them. As then
" you are Men, behave yourſelves like Men:
" Call upon the Name of *Chriſt*, that he
" would pleaſe to inſpire you with Courage
" to defend your Liberties.

No ſooner had he concluded his Speech, than the People raiſed ſuch a Shout, that one would have thought them on a ſudden inſpired with Courage.

CHAP. III.

The Britains *are again cruelly infeſted by* Guanius *and* Melga.

AFTER this the *Romans* ſpirited up the timorous People as much as they could, and left them Patterns of their Arms. They likewiſe commanded Towers, having a Proſpect to the Sea, to be placed at proper Diſtances all along the South-Coaſt, where their Ships were, and from whence

Digitized by Google

they feared the Invasions of the *Barbarians*. But according to the Proverb, *It is easier to make a Hawk of a Kite, than a Scholar presently of a Ploughman*: All Learning to him, is but as a Pearl thrown before Swine. For no sooner had the *Romans* taken their Farewel of them, than the two Leaders, *Guanius* and *Melga*, issued forth from their Ships, in which they had fled over into *Ireland*, and with their Bands of *Scots*, *Picts*, *Norwegians*, *Dacians*, and others they had brought along with them, seized upon all *Albania* to the very Wall. Understanding likewise that the *Romans* were gone back never to return any more, they now in a more insolent Manner than before, begin their Devastations in the Island. Hereupon the Country Fellows were placed upon the Battlements of the Walls, where they sat Night and Day with quaking Hearts, not daring to stir from their Seats, and readier for Flight than making the least Resistance. In the mean Time the Enemies ceased not with their Hooks to pull them down headlong, and dash the wretched Herd to pieces upon the Ground; who gained at least this Advantage by their speedy Death, as to avoid the Sight of that most deplorable Calamity, which forthwith threatned their Relations and dearest Children. Such was the terrible Vengeance of God, for that most wicked Madness of *Maximian*, in draining the Kingdom

Digitized by Google

Kingdom of all its Forces; who had they been present would have repulsed any Nation that invaded them. An evident Proof of which they gave, by the vast Conquests they made abroad even in remote Countries; and also by maintaining their own Country in Peace, while they continued here. But thus it happens when a Kingdom is left to the Defence of Country Clowns. In short, quitting their high Wall and their Cities, the Country People are forced again to fly, and to suffer a more fatal Dispersion, a more furious Pursuit of the Enemy, a more cruel and more general Slaughter than ever they did before: And like Lambs before Wolves, so was that miserable People torn to Pieces by the merciless Barbarians. Again therefore the wretched Remainder send Letters to *Agitius*, a Man of great Power among the *Romans*, to this Effect. "To *Agitius* thrice "Consul, the Groans of the *Britains*." And after some few other Complaints they add. "The Sea drives us to the Barbarians, and "the Barbarians drive us back to the Sea: "Thus are we tossed to and fro between "two Kinds of Death, being either Drown-"ed or put to the Sword." Notwithstanding this most moving Address procured them no Relief, and the Ambassadors returning back in great Heaviness, declared to their Countrymen, how they had suffered a Repulse.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. IV.

Guethelin *desires Succours of* Aldroen.

HEREUPON after a Consultation together, *Guethelin* Archbishop of *London*, passed over into lesser *Britain*, called then *Armorica* or *Letavia*, to desire Assistance of their Brethren. At that Time *Aldroen* reigned there, being the fourth King from *Conan*, to whom, as has been already related, *Maximian* had given that Kingdom. This Prince seeing a Prelate of so great Dignity arrived, received him with Honour, and enquired after the Occasion of his Coming. To whom *Guethelin*.

" Your Majesty can be no Stranger to the " Misery, we your *Britains* have suffered, " (which may even demand your Tears,) " since the Time that *Maximian* drained " our Island of its Soldiers, and made a De- " cree for their peopling the Kingdom you " enjoy; and God grant you may long en- " joy it in Peace. For against us the poor " Remains of the *British* Race, rose all the " People of the adjacent Islands, and made " an utter Devastation in our Country, " which then abounded with all kind of " Riches;

Digitized by Google

" Riches; ſo that the People now are whol-
" ly deſtitute of all manner of Suſtenance,
" but what they can get in Hunting. Nor
" had we any left among us either of Power
" or Knowledge of Military Affairs, to en-
" counter the Enemy. For the *Romans* are
" grown tired of us, and have abſolutely
" refuſed their Aſſiſtance. So that now
" being deprived of all other Hope, we
" come to implore your Clemency, that
" you would furniſh us with Forces, and
" protect a Kingdom, which is of Right
" your own, from the Incurſions of Bar-
" barians. For who but your ſelf ought,
" without your Conſent, to wear the
" Crown of *Conſtantine* and *Maximian*, ſince
" the Right your Anceſtors had to it is
" now devolved upon you? Prepare then
" your Fleet, and go with me: Behold I
" deliver the Kingdom of *Britain* into your
" Hands.

To this *Aldroen* made Anſwer; " There
" was a Time formerly when I would not
" have refuſed to accept of the Iſland of
" *Britain*, if it had been offered me; for I
" do not think there was any where a
" fruitfuller Country, while it enjoy'd Peace
" and Tranquility. But now ſince the Ca-
" lamities that have befallen it, it is become
" of leſs Value, and odious both to me and
" all other Princes. But above all Things

" the

Digitized by Google

" the Power of the *Romans* was so destructive " to it, that no Body could enjoy any set- " led State or Authority in it, without Loss " of Liberty, and bearing the Yoke of " Slavery under them. And who would " not prefer the Possession of a lesser Coun- " try with Liberty, to all the Riches of " that Island under Servitude? The King- " dom that is now under my Subjection I " enjoy with Honour, and without paying " the least Homage to any Superior; so " that I prefer it to all other Countries, " since I can govern it without being con- " troled. Notwithstanding out of Respect " to the Right that my Ancestors for many " Generations have had to your Island, I " deliver to you my Brother *Constantine* " with two thousand Men, that with the " good Providence of God he may free " your Country from the Incodes of Barba- " rians, and obtain the Crown for himself. " For I have a Brother called by that " Name, who is an expert Soldier, and in " all other Respects an accomplished Man. " If you please to accept of him, I will not " refuse to send him with you, together " with the said Number of Men; for in- " deed a larger Number I do not mention " to you, because I am daily threatned " with Disturbance from the *Gauls*." He had scarce done speaking before the Arch-bishop returned him his Thanks, and when

Constantine

Digitized by Google

Conſtantine was called in, broke out into theſe Expreſſions of Joy; "*Chriſt* conquers; "*Chriſt* commands; *Chriſt* reigns: Behold "the King of deſolate *Britain*! Be *Chriſt* "only preſent, and behold our Defence, "our Hope and Joy." In ſhort, the Ships being got ready, the Men who were choſen out from all Parts of the Kingdom, were delivered to *Guethelin*.

CHAP. V.

Conſtantine *being made King of* Britain, *leaves three Sons.*

WHEN they had made all neceſſary Preparations, they embarked, and arrived at the Port of *Totneſs*; and then without Delay aſſembled together the Youth that was left in the Iſland, and encountred the Enemy; over whom, by the Merit of the holy Prelate, they obtained the Victory. After this the *Britains*, before diſperſed, flocked together from all Parts, and in a Council held at *Silceſtre*, promoted *Conſtantine* to the Throne, and there performed the Ceremony of his Coronation. They alſo married him to a Lady, whom Archbiſhop *Guethelin* had educated, being deſcended from a noble Family of the *Romans*, and

Digitized by Google

and by whom the King had afterwards three Sons, named *Conſtans*, *Aurelius Ambroſius*, and *Uther Pendragon*. *Conſtans*, who was the eldeſt, he delivered to the Church of *Amphibalus* in *Winchester*, that he might there take upon him the Monaſtick Order. But the other two, *viz.* *Aurelius* and *Uther*, he committed to the Care of *Guethelin* for their Education. At laſt, after ten Years were expired, there came a certain *Pict*, who had entred himſelf in his Service, and under Pretence of holding ſome private Diſcourſe with him, in a Nurſery of young Trees where no Body was preſent, ſtabbed him with a Dagger.

CHAP. VI.

Conſtans *is by* Vortegirn *Crowned King of* Britain.

UPON the Death of *Conſtantine*, a Diſſenſion aroſe among the Nobility, about a Succeſſor to the Throne. Some were for ſetting up *Aurelius Ambroſius*; others *Uther Pendragon*; others again ſome other Perſons of the Royal Family. At laſt when they could come to no Concluſion, *Vortegirn*, Conſul of the *Gewiſſens*, who was himſelf very ambitious of the Crown, went to

Digitized by Google

to *Conſtans* the Monk, and thus addreſſed himſelf to him. "You ſee your Father is "dead, and your Brothers on Account of "their Age are uncapable of the Govern-"ment; neither do I ſee any of your Fa-"mily beſides yourſelf, whom the People "ought to promote to the Kingdom. If "you will therefore follow my Advice, and "enlarge my Eſtate, I will diſpoſe the "People to favour your Advancement, "and free you from that Habit, notwith-"ſtanding it be againſt the Rule of your "Order." *Conſtans* overjoy'd at the Propoſal, promiſed with an Oath, that upon theſe Terms he would grant him whatever he would deſire. Then *Vortegirn* took him, and inveſting him in his Regal Habiliments, conducted him to *London*, and made him King, though not with the free Conſent of the People. Archbiſhop *Guethelin* was then dead, nor was there any other that durſt perform the Ceremony of his Unction, on Account of his having quitted the Monaſtick Order. However this proved no Hindrance to his Coronation, the Ceremony of which *Vortegirn* himſelf performed inſtead of a Biſhop.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VII.

Vortegirn *treacherously contrives to get King* Conſtans *aſſaſſinated.*

CONSTANS being thus advanced, committed the whole Government of the Kingdom to *Vortegirn*, and ſurrendred himſelf up ſo entirely to his Counſels, that he did nothing without his Order. His own Incapacity for Government obliged him to it, as having learned other Things than State Affairs within his Cloiſter. *Vortegirn* became ſenſible of this, and therefore began to deliberate with himſelf what Courſe to take to obtain the Crown, of which he had been before extremely ambitious. He ſaw that now was his proper Time to gain his End eaſily, when the Kingdom was wholly intruſted to his Management; and *Conſtans*, who bore the Title of King, was no more than the Shadow of a Prince. For he was of a ſoft Temper, of no Judgment in Matters of Right, and not in the leaſt feared, either by his own People, or by any neighbouring States. And as for his two Brothers, *Uther Pendragon*, and *Aurelius Ambroſius*, they were only Children in their Cradles, and therefore uncapable of the Government. There was likewiſe this farther Misfortune, that all the ancienter Perſons

Digitized by Google

ſons of the Nobility was dead; ſo that *Vortegirn* ſeemed to be the only Man ſurviving, that had Craft, Policy and Experience in Matters of State; and all the reſt in a manner Children, or raw Youths, that only inherited the Honours of their Parents and Relations that had been killed in the former Wars. *Vortegirn* finding a Concurrence of ſo many favourable Circumſtances, contrived how he might eaſily and cunningly depoſe *Conſtans* the Monk, and immediately eſtabliſh himſelf in his Place. But in order to it, he deferred doing any Thing againſt him, till he had firſt well eſtabliſhed his Power and Intereſt in ſeveral Countries. He therefore petitioned to have in his own Cuſtody the Kings Treaſures, as alſo his fortified Cities; pretending there was a Rumour, that the neighbouring Iſlanders deſigned an Invaſion of the Kingdom. This being granted him, he placed his own Creatures in thoſe Cities, to ſecure them for himſelf. Then having formed a Scheme how to execute his treaſonable Deſigns, he went to the King, and repreſented to him the Neceſſity of augmenting the Number of his Domeſticks, that he might more ſafely oppoſe the Invaſion of the Enemy. "Have not I left all Things to your Diſpo- "ſal, ſaid *Conſtans*: Do what you will as "to that, ſo they be but faithful to me." *Vortegirn* reply'd; "I am informed the *Picts* "are

" are going to bring the *Dacians* and *Nor-*
" *wegians* in upon us, with a Deſign to give
" us very great Diſturbance. I would
" therefore adviſe you, and in my Opinion
" it is the beſt Courſe you can take, that
" you maintain ſome *Picts* in your Court,
" who may do you good Service among
" thoſe of that Nation. For if it is true
" that they are preparing to begin a Rebel-
" lion, you may employ them as Spies up-
" on their Countrymen in their Plots and
" Stratagems, ſo as eaſily to eſcape them."
This was the dark Treaſon of a ſecret Enemy; for he did not recommend this, out of any Regard to the Safety of *Conſtans*, but becauſe he knew the *Picts* to be a giddy People, and ready for all manner of Wickedneſs; ſo that in a Fit of Drunkenneſs or Paſſion, they might eaſily be incenſed againſt the King, and make no Scruple to aſſaſſinate him. And ſuch an Accident, when it ſhould happen, would make an open Way for his Acceſſion to the Throne, which he had ſo often had in View. Hereupon he diſpatches away Meſſengers into *Scotland*, with an Invitation to a hundred *Pictiſh* Soldiers, whom accordingly he received into the Kings Houſhold: And when admitted, he ſhew'd them more Reſpect than all the Reſt of the Domeſticks, by making them ſeveral Preſents, and allowing them a luxurious Table; inſomuch that

Digitized by Google

that they looked upon him as the King. So great was the Adoration they had for him, that they made Songs of him about the Streets, the Subject of which was, That *Vortegirn* deserved the Government, deserved the Sceptre of *Britain*; but that *Constans* was unworthy of it. This encouraged *Vortegirn* to shew them still more and more of his Bounty, the more firmly to engage them in his Interest; and when by these Practices he had made them entirely his Creatures, he took an Opportunity, when they were drunk, to tell them, that he was going to retire out of *Britain*, to see if he could get a better Estate; for the small Revenue he had then, he said, would not so much as enable him to maintain a Retinue of fifty Men. Then putting on a Look of Sadness, he withdrew to his own Apartment, and left them drinking in the Hall. The *Picts* at this Sight were in unexpressible Sorrow, as thinking what he had said was true, and murmuring said one to another; "Why do we suffer this Monk to live? "Why do not we kill him, that *Vortegirn* "may enjoy his Crown? For who so fit to "succeed as he? A Man so generous to "us, is worthy to Rule, and deserves all "Honour and Dignity.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VIII.

Aurelius Ambroſius, *and* Uther Pendragon *flying* Vortegirn, *go to leſſer* Britain.

AFTER this, breaking into *Conſtans*'s Bed-chamber, they fell upon him and killed him, and carried his Head to *Vortegirn*. At the Sight of it, he putting on a mournful Countenance burſt forth into Tears, tho' at the ſame Time he was almoſt tranſported with Joy. However he ſummoned together the Citizens of *London*, (for there the Fact was committed,) and commanded all the Aſſaſſins to be bound, and their Heads to be Cut off for this abominable Parricide. In the mean Time there were thoſe who had a Suſpicion, that this Piece of Villany was wholly the Contrivance of *Vortegirn*, and that the *Picts* were only his Inſtruments to execute it. Others again as poſitively aſſerted his Innocence. At laſt the Matter being left in Doubt, the Governors of the two Brothers, *Aurelius Ambroſius*, and *Uther Pendragon*, fled over with them into leſſer *Britain*, for fear of being killed by *Vortegirn*. There they were kindly received by King *Budec*, who took Care to give them an Education ſuitable to their Royal Birth.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. IX.

Vortegirn *makes himself King of* Britain.

BUT *Vortegirn* now seeing no Body to rival him in the Kingdom, placed the Crown on his own Head, and so gained the Preeminence over all the rest of the Princes. At last his Treason being discovered, the People of the adjacent Islands, whom the *Picts* had brought into *Albania*, made Insurrection against him. For the *Picts* were enraged on Account of their Fellow Soldiers, that had been put to Death for the Murder of *Constans*, and endeavoured to revenge that Injury upon him. *Vortegirn* therefore was daily in great Distress, and lost a considerable Part of his Army in the War with them. He had likewise no less Trouble from another Quarter, for fear of *Aurelius Ambrosius*, and his Brother *Uther Pendragon*, who, as we said just now, had fled on his Account into lesser *Britain*. For he had his Ears stunned with a daily Rumour, that being now come up to Mens Estate, they had built a vast Fleet, with a Design to return back to the Kingdom, which was their undoubted Right.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. X.

Vortegirn *takes the* Saxons *that were New-comers, into his Aſſiſtance.*

IN the mean Time arrived in the Parts of *Kent* three Brigandines, or long Gallies, fraught with armed Men, under the Command of two Brothers *Horſus* and *Hengiſt*. *Vortegirn* was then at *Dorobernia*, now *Canterbury*, which City he uſed often to viſit; and being informed of the Arrival of ſome tall Strangers in large Ships, he ordered that they ſhould be received peaceably, and conducted to his Preſence. As ſoon as they were brought before him, he caſt his Eyes upon the two Brothers, who excelled all the reſt both in Nobility and Graceſulneſs of Perſon; and having taken a View of the whole Company, asked them of what Country they were, and what was the Occaſion of their coming into his Kingdom. To whom *Hengiſt*, (whoſe Years and Wiſdom intituled him to a Precedence,) in the Name of the reſt, made the following Anſwer.

" Moſt Noble King, *Saxony*, which is " one of the Countries of *Germany*, was " the

Digitized by Google

" the Place of our Birth; and the Occasion
" of our coming, was to offer our Service
" to you or some other Prince. For we
" were driven out of our Native Country,
" for no other Reason, but that the Custom
" of the Kingdom required it. It is the
" Custom of that Place, that when it
" comes to be overstocked with People,
" our Princes from all Provinces meet toge-
" ther, and command all the Youth of the
" Kingdom to assemble before them: Then
" casting Lots, they make Choice of the
" strongest and ablest of them, for to go
" into Foreign Nations, to procure them-
" selves a Subsistence, and free their Na-
" tive Country from a superfluous Multi-
" titude of People. Our Country there-
" fore being of late actually overstocked,
" our Princes met, and after Lots cast,
" made Choice of the Youth which you
" see in your Presence, and have obliged
" us to obey the Custom that has been
" established of old. And us two Brothers,
" *Hengist* and *Horsus*, they made Generals
" over them, out of Respect to our An-
" cestors who enjoy'd the same Honour.
" In Obedience therefore to the Laws so
" long established, we put out to Sea,
" and under the good Guidance of *Mercury*,
" have arrived in your Kingdom.

Digitized by Google

The King at the Name of *Mercury* looking earneſtly upon them, asked them what Religion they profeſſed. "We worſhip, "reply'd *Hengiſt*, our Country Gods, *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, and the reſt that govern "the World; but eſpecially *Mercury*, "whom in our Language we call *Woden*, "and to whom our Anceſtors conſecrated "the fourth Day of the Week, ſtill called "after his Name *Wodenſday*. Next to him "we worſhip the moſt powerful Goddeſs "*Frea*, to whom they alſo dedicated the "ſixth Day, which after her Name we call "*Friday*." *Vortegirn* reply'd, "For your "Credulity, or rather Incredulity, I am "very much grieved, but as much rejoyce "at your Arrival, which is brought about, "whether by God, or by whomſoever elſe, "very ſeaſonably for me in the Straits I "am under. For I am oppreſſed by my "Enemies on every Side, and if you will "engage with me in my Wars, I will "entertain you honourably in my King-"dom, and beſtow upon you Lands and "other Poſſeſſions." The Barbarians readily accepted of his Offer, and the Agreement between them being ratified, they reſided in his Court. Preſently after this the *Picts* iſſuing forth from *Albania*, made up a very great Army, and began to lay waſte the Northern Parts of the Iſland. When *Vortegirn* had information of it, he aſſembled

Digitized by Google

assembled his Forces, and went to meet them beyond *Humber*. Upon their Engagement, the Battle proved very fierce on both Sides, though there was but little Occasion for the *Britains* to meddle in it; for the *Saxons* fought so bravely, that the Enemy, who used to be Victorious, they presently put to Flight.

CHAP. XI.

Hengist *brings over great Numbers of* Saxons *into* Britain: *His crafty Petition to* Vortegirn.

VORTEGIRN therefore, as he owed the Victory to them, increased his Bounty to them, and gave their General *Hengist* large Possessions of Land in *Lindesia*, for the Subsistence of himself and his Fellow Soldiers. Hereupon *Hengist*, who was a Man of Experience and Subtilty, finding how much Interest he had with the King, addressed himself to him in this manner. "Sir, your Enemies give you Disturbance "from all Quarters, and few of your Sub- "jects love you. They all threaten you, "and say, they are going to bring over "*Aurelius Ambrosius* from *Armorica*, in or- "der to depose you, and make him King.

Digitized by Google

"If you please, let us send to our Country "to invite over some more Soldiers, that "with our Forces increased we may be "better able to oppose them. But there "is one Thing I would desire of your Cle- "mency, if I did not fear a Repulse." *Vorte- girn* made Answer; "Send away then your "Messengers to *Germany*, and invite over "whom you please, and you shall have no "Repulse from me in whatever you shall "desire." *Hengist* with a low Bow re- turned him Thanks, and said; "The Pos- "sessions you have given me in Land and "Houses, are very large, but you have "not yet done me that Honour which "becomes my Station and Birth; because "among other Things, I should have had "some Town or City granted me, that I "might be intituled to a greater Esteem "among the Nobility of your Kingdom. "I ought to have been made a Consul or "Prince, since my Ancestors enjoyed both "those Dignities." "It is not in my Power, "reply'd *Vortegirn*, to do you so much Ho- "nour, because you are Strangers and Pa- "gans; neither am I yet acquainted with "your Manners and Customs, so far as "to set you upon a Level with my natural "born Subjects. And indeed if I did "esteem you as my Subjects, I should not "be forward to give you what the Nobi- "lity of my Kingdom would dissuade me "from."

Digitized by Google

" from." "Give your Servant, said *Hen-*
" *giſt*, only ſo much Ground in the Place
" you have aſſigned me, as I can encom-
" paſs with a Leathern Thong, for to build
" a Fortreſs upon, for a Place of Retreat if
" Occaſion ſhould require. For I am, have
" been, and always will be faithful to you,
" and purſue no other Deſign in the Re-
" queſt I make." With theſe Words the King was prevailed upon to grant him his Petition; and ordered him to diſpatch away Meſſengers into *Germany*, to invite the Men over ſpeedily to his Aſſiſtance. *Hengiſt* immediately executed his Orders, and then took a Bulls Hide, and made but one Thong of the whole; with which he encompaſſed a rocky Place that he had carefully made Choice of, and within that Circuit began to build a Caſtle; which, when finiſhed, took its Name from the Thong wherewith it had been meaſured. For it was afterwards called in the *Britiſh* Tongue *Kaercorrei*, in the *Saxon Thancaſtre*, that is *Thong-Caſtle*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XII.

Vortegirn *marries* Rowen, *the Daughter of* Hengiſt.

IN the mean Time the Meſſengers returned from *Germany*, with eighteen Ships fraught with the beſt Soldiers they could chuſe. They alſo brought along with them *Rowen* the Daughter of *Hengiſt*, one of the moſt accompliſhed Beauties of that Age. After their Arrival, *Hengiſt* invited the King to his Houſe, to view his new Buildings, and the new Soldiers that were come over. The King readily accepted of his Invitation, and went, but privately, and highly commended the Magnificence of the Structure, and then entred the Men into his Service. Here he was entertained at a Royal Banquet; and when that was over, the young Lady came out of her Chamber bearing a Golden Cup full of Wine, with which ſhe approached the King, and making a low Courteſy, ſaid to him, *Laverd King Waeht heil.* The King at the Sight of the Lady's Face, was on a ſudden both ſurprized and inflamed with her Beauty; and calling to his Interpreter, asked him what ſhe ſaid, and what Anſwer he ſhould make her. "She called you *Royal Lord*, "ſaid

Digitized by Google

" ſaid the Interpreter, and offered to drink " your Health; and your Anſwer to her " muſt be *Drinc heil.*" *Vortegirn* accordingly anſwered, *Drinc heil*, and bid her drink: Which done, he took the Cup from her Hand, kiſſed her, and then drunk himſelf. From that Time to this, it has been the Cuſtom in *Britain*, that he who drinks to any one ſays, *Wacht heil*, and he that pledges him, anſwers *Drinc heil.* *Vortegirn* being now drunk with the Variety of Liquors, the Devil took this Opportunity to enter into his Heart, and to make him in Love with the Damſel, ſo that he became Suitor to her Father for her. It was, I ſay, by the Devils entring into his Heart, that he who was a *Chriſtian*, ſhould fall in Love with a Pagan. By this Inſtance, *Hengiſt* being a prudent Man, diſcovered the Kings Levity, and conſulted with his Brother *Horſus*, and the other ancient Men preſent, what to do in relation to the Kings Requeſt. They unanimouſly adviſed him to give him his Daughter, and in Conſideration of her, to demand the Province of *Kent*. Accordingly the Daughter was without Delay delivered to *Vortegirn*, and the Province of *Kent* to *Hengiſt*, without the Privity of *Gorangan*, who had the Government of it. The King the ſame Night married the Pagan Lady, and became extremely delighted with her; by which he quickly brought

Digitized by Google

brought upon himſelf the Hatred of the Nobility, and of his own Sons. For he had already three Sons, whoſe Names were *Vortimer*, *Katigern*, and *Paſcentius*.

CHAP. XIII.

The Biſhops, German *and* Lupus, *reſtore the* Chriſtian Faith *that had been corrupted in* Britain. Octa *and* Ebiſſa *are four Times routed by* Vortimer.

AT that Time came St. *German* Biſhop of *Auxerre*, and *Lupus* Biſhop of *Troyes*, to preach the Goſpel to the *Britains*. For the *Chriſtian Faith* had been corrupted among them, partly by the Pagans whom the King had brought into Society with them, partly by the *Pelagian* Hereſy, with the Poiſon whereof they had been a long Time infected. But by the preaching of theſe Holy Men, the true Faith and Worſhip was again reſtored, the many Miracles they wrought giving Succeſs to their Labours. *Gildas* has in his Treatiſe given an elegant Account of the many Miracles God wrought by them. The King being now, as we have ſaid, poſſeſſed of the Lady,

Hengiſt

Digitized by Google

Hengist said to him; "As I am your Father, "I claim the Right of being your Counseller: Do not therefore slight my Advice, since it is to my Countrymen that "you must owe the Conquest of all your "Enemies. Let us yet invite over my Son "*Octa*, and his Brother *Ebissa*, who are "brave Soldiers, and give them the Countries that are in the Northern Parts of "*Britain*, by the Wall, between *Deira* "and *Albania*. For they will hinder the "Inroads of the Barbarians, and so you "shall enjoy Peace on the other Side of "*Humber*." *Vortegirn* comply'd with his Request, and ordered them to invite over whomsoever they knew able to assist him. Immediately upon the Receit of this Message, came *Octa*, *Ebissa*, and *Cherdich*, with three hundred Ships filled with Soldiers, who were all kindly received by *Vortegirn*, and had ample Presents made them. For by their Assistance he vanquished his Enemies, and in every Engagement proved Victorious. *Hengist* in the mean Time continued to invite over more and more Ships, and to augment his Numbers daily. Which when the *Britains* had observed, they were afraid of being betray'd by them, and moved the King to banish them out of his Coasts. For it was contrary to the Rule of the Gospel, that *Christians* should hold Fellowship, or have any Intercourse with Pagans.

Digitized by Google

gans. Beſides that, the Number of thoſe that were come over was now ſo great, that they were a Terror to his Subjects; and no Body could now know who was a Pagan, who a *Chriſtian*, ſince Pagans married the Daughters and Kinſwomen of *Chriſtians*. Theſe Things they repreſented to the King, and endeavoured to diſſwade him from entertaining them, leaſt they might by ſome treacherous Conſpiracy prove an Overmatch for the Native Inhabitants. But *Vortegirn*, who loved them above all other Nations on Account of his Wife, was deaf to their Advice. For this Reaſon the *Britains* quickly deſert him, and unanimouſly ſet up *Vortimer* his Son for their King; who at their Inſtigation began to drive out the Barbarians, and to make dreadful Incurſions upon them. Four Battles he fought with them, and was Victorious in all: The firſt upon the River *Derwent*; the ſecond upon the Ford of *Epiffrod*, where *Horſus* and *Catigern*, another Son of *Vortegirn*, met, and after a ſharp Encounter killed each other; the third upon the Sea-Shore, where the Enemies fled ſhamefully to their Ships, and then betook themſelves for Refuge to the Iſle of *Thanet*. But *Vortimer* beſieged them there, and daily diſtreſſed them with his Fleet. And when they were no longer able to bear the Aſſaults of the *Britains*, they ſent King *Vortegirn*, who was preſent with them in

Digitized by Google

in all those Wars, to his Son *Vortimer*, to desire Leave to depart, and return back safe to *Germany*. And while there was held a Conference upon this Subject, they in the mean Time went on board their long Gallies, and leaving their Wives and Children behind them, returned back to *Germany*.

CHAP. XIV.

Vortimer's *Kindness to his Soldiers at his Death.*

VORTIMER after this great Success, began to restore his Subjects to their Possessions that had been taken from them, and to shew them all Marks of his Affection and Esteem, and at the Instance of St. *German* to rebuild their Churches. But his Goodness quickly stirred up the Devils Enmity against him, who entring into the Heart of his Stepmother *Rowen*, excited her to contrive his Death. For this Purpose she consulted with the Poisoners, and procured one that was intimate with him, whom she had corrupted with large and numerous Presents, to give him a poisonous Draught; so that this brave Soldier, as soon as he had taken it, was seized with a sudden Illness, that put him past all Hopes of Life. Hereupon

Digitized by Google

Hereupon he forthwith ordered all his Men to come to him, and having ſhewn them how near he was his End, diſtributed among them all the Treaſure his Predeceſſors had heaped up, and endeavoured to comfort them in their Sorrow and Lamentation for him, telling them, he was only going the Way of all Fleſh. But thoſe brave and warlike Youngmen, that uſed to attend him in all his Victories, he exhorted to perſiſt couragiouſly in the Defence of their Country againſt all hoſtile Invaſion; and from an impulſe of wonderful greatneſs of Mind, commanded a brazen Pyramid to be made, and placed in the Port where the *Saxons* uſed to land. He alſo ordered his Body when dead to be buried on the Top of it, that the Sight of his Tomb might fright back the Barbarians to *Germany*. For he ſaid none of them would dare approach the Country, that ſhould but get a Sight of his Tomb. Such was the admirable Bravery of this great Man, who as he had been a Terror to them while living, endeavoured to be no leſs ſo when dead. Notwithſtanding after his Deceaſe, the *Britains* had no regard to his Orders, but buried him at *London*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XV.

Hengiſt *having moſt wickedly murdered the Princes of* Britain, *keeps* Vortegirn *Priſoner.*

VORTEGIRN, after the Death of his Son, was again reſtored to the Kingdom, and at the Requeſt of his Wife ſent over Meſſengers into *Germany* to *Hengiſt*, with an Invitation to return into *Britain*, but privately and with a ſmall Retinue, to prevent a Quarrel between the *Barbarians* and his Subjects. But *Hengiſt*, hearing that *Vortimer* was dead, raiſed an Army of no leſs than three hundred thouſand Men, and fitting out a Fleet returned with them to *Britain*. When *Vortegirn* and the Nobility heard of the Arrival of ſo vaſt a Multitude, they were immoderately incenſed, and after Conſultation together, reſolved to fight them, and drive them from their Coaſts. *Hengiſt*, upon Information of their Deſign by Meſſengers ſent from his Daughter, immediately entred into Deliberation what Courſe to purſue againſt them. After ſeveral Stratagems had been conſidered, what he judged moſt feaſible, was to impoſe upon the Nation by making a ſhew of Peace. In order to this he ſent Ambaſſadors to the

Digitized by Google

King, to declare to him, that he had not brought with him ſo great a Number of Men, with an Intention either to ſtay with him, or to offer any Violence to the Country. But the Reaſon why he brought them, was becauſe he thought *Vortimer* was yet living, and that he ſhould have Occaſion for them againſt him, in Caſe of an Aſſault. But now ſince he no longer doubted of his being dead, he ſubmitted himſelf and his People to the Diſpoſal of *Vortegirn*; ſo that he might retain as many of them as he ſhould think fit, and whom he rejected, *Hengiſt* would allow to return back without Delay to *Germany*. And if theſe Terms pleaſed *Vortegirn*, then he deſired he would appoint a Time and Place for their Meeting, and having Matters adjuſted according to his Pleaſure. When theſe Things were repreſented to the King, he was mightily pleaſed, as being very unwilling to part with *Hengiſt*; and at laſt ordered his Subjects and the *Saxons* to meet upon the Calends of *May*, which were now very near, at the Monaſtery of *Ambrius*, for the ſettling of the Matters above-mentioned. The Appointment being agreed to on both Sides, *Hengiſt* with a new Deſign of Villany in his Head, ordered his Soldiers to carry every one of them a long Dagger under their Garments; and while the Conference ſhould be held with the *Britains*, who would have no

Suſpicion

Digitized by Google

Suſpicion of them, he would give them this Word of Command, *Nemet oure Saxas*; at which Moment they were all to be ready to ſeize boldly every one his next Man, and with his drawn Dagger ſtab him. Accordingly at the Time and Place appointed they all met, and began to treat of Peace; and when a fit Opportunity for executing his Villany ſerved, *Hengiſt* cry'd out, *Nemet oure Saxas*, and the ſame Inſtant ſeized *Vortegirn*, and held him by his Cloak. The *Saxons*, upon the Signal given, drew out their Daggers, and falling upon the Princes, that little ſuſpected any ſuch Deſign, aſſaſſinated them to the Number of four hundred and ſixty of the Barons and Conſuls: To whoſe Bodies St. *Eldad* afterwards gave *Chriſtian* Burial, not far from *Kaercaradane*, now *Salisbury*, in a Burying-Place by the Monaſtery of *Ambrius* the Abbot, who was the Founder of it. For they all came without Arms, as having no Thoughts of any Thing but treating of Peace; which gave the others that came upon a villanous Deſign a fairer Opportunity of deſtroying them. Notwithſtanding the Pagans did not eſcape unpuniſhed while they acted this Wickedneſs; a great Number of them being killed during this Maſſacre of their Enemies. For the *Britains* taking up Clubs and Stones from the Ground, reſolutely defended themſelves, and did good Execution upon the Traitors.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XVI.

Eldols *valiant Exploit.* Hengist *forces* Vortegirn *to yield up the strongest Fortifications in* Britain, *in Consideration of his Release.*

THERE was present one *Eldol* Consul of *Gloucester*, who at the sight of this Treachery, took up a Stake he happened to find, and made that his Defence. Every Blow he gave carry'd Death along with it; and by breaking either the Head, Arms, Shoulders or Legs of a great many, he struck no small Terror into the Traitors, nor moved from the Spot, before he had killed with that Weapon seventy Men. But being no longer able to stand his Ground against such Numbers, he made his Escape from them, and retired to his own City. Many fell on both Sides, but the *Saxons* got the Victory, because the *Britains* having no Suspicion of Treachery, came unarmed, and therefore made a weaker Defence. After the Commission of this detestable Villany, the *Saxons* would not kill *Vortegirn*, but having threatned him with Death and bound him, demanded his Cities and fortified Places in Consideration of their granting him his Life. He, to secure himself, deny'd them nothing they

Digitized by Google

they asked; and when they had made him confirm his Grants with an Oath, they releaſed him from his Chains, and then marched firſt of all to *London*, which they took, as they did afterwards *York*, *Lincoln*, and *Wincheſter*; waſting the Countries thro' which they paſſed, and deſtroying the People, as Wolves do Sheep when left by their Shepherds. When *Vortegirn* had ſeen the Deſolation they made, he retired into the Parts of *Cambria*, as not knowing what to do againſt ſo barbarous a People.

CHAP. XVII.

Vortegirn, *after Conſultation with Magicians, orders a Youth to be brought that never had a Father.*

AT laſt, he had Recourſe to Magicians for their Advice, and commanded them to tell him what Courſe to take. They adviſed him to build a very ſtrong Tower for his own Safety, ſince he had loſt all his other fortified Places. Accordingly he made a Progreſs about the Country, to find out a convenient Situation, and came at laſt to Mount *Erir*, where he aſſembled Workmen from ſeveral Countries, and ordered them to build the Tower. The Builders

Digitized by Google

therefore began to lay the Foundation, but whatever they did one Day, the Earth swallowed up the next, so as to leave no Appearance of their Work. *Vortegirn* being informed of this, again consulted with his Magicians concerning the Cause of it; who told him that he must find out a Youth that never had a Father, and kill him, and then sprinkle the Stones and Cement with his Blood; for by that Means, they said, he would have a firm Foundation. Hereupon Messengers are forthwith dispatched away over all the Provinces, to enquire out such a Man. In their Travels they came to a City, called afterwards *Kaermerdin*, where they saw some young Men, playing before the Gate, and went up to them: But being weary with their Journey, they sat down in the Ring, to see if they could meet with what they were in Quest of. As it began to be late in the Day, there happened on a sudden a Quarrel between two of the young Men, whose Names were *Merlin* and *Dabutius*. In the Dispute, *Dabutius* said to *Merlin*: "You Fool, do you presume to quarrel "with me? Is there any equality in our "Birth? I am both by my Father and Mo-"thers Side, descended of Royal Race. As "for you, no Body knows what you are; "for you never had a Father." At that Word the Messengers looked earnestly upon *Merlin*, and asked the By-standers who he was.

Digitized by Google

was. They told him, it was not known who was his Father; but that his Mother was Daughter to the King of *Demetia*, and and that she lived in St. *Peter*'s Church among the Nuns of that City.

CHAP. XVIII.

Vortegirn *enquires of* Merlins *Mother concerning her Conception of him.*

THE Messengers upon this hastened to the Governor of the City, and ordered him in the Kings Name, to send *Merlin* and his Mother to the King. As soon as the Governor understood the occasion of their Message, he readily obeyed the Order, and sent them to *Vortegirn* to compleat his Design. When they were introduced into the Kings Presence, he received the Mother in a very respectful Manner, on Account of her noble Birth; and then began to enquire of her, by what Man she had conceived. "My "Sovereign Lord, said she, by the Life of "your Soul and mine, I know no Body "that begot him of me. Only this I know, "that as I was one Time with my Com- "panions in our Chambers, there appear- "ed to me a Person in the Shape of a most "beautiful young Man, who often and most

Digitized by Google

" eagerly embraced me in his Arms, and " kiſſed me; and when he had ſtay'd a " little Time, he ſuddenly vaniſhed out of " my Sight. But many Times after this he " would be talking with me when I ſat alone, " without making any viſible Appearance. " When he had a long Time haunted me " in this manner, he at laſt laid with " me ſeveral Times in Shape of a Man, " and left me with Child. And I do af- " firm to you, my Sovereign Lord, that " excepting that young Man, I know no " Body that begot him of me." The King full of Admiration at this Account, ordered *Maugantius* to be called, that he might ſatisfy him as to the Poſſibility of what the Woman had related. *Maugantius* being introduced, and having heard the whole Matter repeated to him, ſaid to *Vortegirn*; " In the Books of our Phi- " loſophers, and in a great many Hiſto- " ries, I have found that ſeveral Men " have had the like Original. For, as " *Apuleius* informs us in his Book concern- " ing the Demon of *Socrates*, between the " Moon and the Earth inhabit thoſe Spi- " rits, which we call *Incubuſes*. Theſe are " of the Nature partly of Men, and part- " ly of Angels, and whenever they pleaſe, " aſſume human Shapes, and lie with Wo- " men. Perhaps one of them appeared to " this Woman, and begot that young Man " of her.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIX.

Merlin's *Speech to the Kings Magicians, and Advice about the building of the Tower.*

MERLIN in the mean Time was attentive to all that had paſſed, and then approached the King, and ſaid to him; "For "what Reaſon am I and my Mother introduced into your Preſence?" "My "Magicians, anſwered *Vortegirn*, adviſed "me to inquire out a Man that had no "Father, with whoſe Blood my Building "is to be ſprinkled, in order to make it "ſtand." Order your Magicians, ſaid "*Merlin*, to come before me, and I will "convict them of a Lye." The King was ſurprized at his Words, and preſently ordered the Magicians to come, and ſit down before *Merlin*, who ſpoke to them after this manner. "Becauſe you are ignorant what it is that hinders the Foundation of the Tower, you have recommended the ſhedding of my Blood for "Cement to it, as if that would preſently "make it ſtand. But tell me now, what "is there under the Foundation? For ſomething there is that will not ſuffer it to "ſtand." The Magicians at this began to be afraid, and made him no Anſwer. Then ſaid

ſaid *Merlin*, who was alſo called *Ambroſe*; "I intreat your Majeſty would command "your Workmen to dig into the Ground, "and you will find a Pond which cauſes "the Foundation to ſink." This accordingly was done, and then preſently they found a Pond deep under Ground, which had made it give way. *Merlin* after this went again to the Magicians, and ſaid, "Tell me ye, falſe Sycophants, what is "there under the Pond." But they were ſilent. Then ſaid he again to the King; "Command the Pond to be drained, and "at the Bottom you will ſee two hollow "Stones, and in them two Dragons aſleep." The King made no Scruple of believing him, ſince he had found true what he ſaid of the Pond, and therefore ordered it to be drained. Which done, he found as *Merlin* had ſaid; and now was poſſeſſed with the greateſt Admiration of him. Nor were the reſt that were preſent leſs amazed at his Wiſdom, thinking it to be no leſs than Divine Inſpiration.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE

British History.

The Seventh Book,

Which is concerning the

Prophesies of *Merlin*.

CHAP. I.

Jeffrey *of* Monmouth's *Preface to* Merlins *Prophesy*.

I Had not got so far as this Place of the *History*, when the Subject of publick Discourse happening to be concerning *Merlin*, I was obliged to publish his Prophesies at the Request of my Acquaintance, but especially of *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincoln*, a Prelate of the

Digitized by Google

the greateſt Piety and Wiſdom. There was not any Perſon either among the Clergy or Laity, that was attended with ſuch a Train of Knights and Noblemen, whom his ſettled Piety and great Munificence engaged in his Service. Out of a Deſire therefore to gratify him, I tranſlated theſe Propheſies, and ſent them to him with the following Letter.

CHAP. II.

Jeffrey's *Letter to* Alexander *Biſhop of* Lincoln.

"THE Regard I owe to your great "Worth, moſt Noble Prelate, "has obliged me to undertake the Tranſ- "lation of *Merlin*'s Propheſies out of *Britiſh* "into *Latin*, before I had made an End of "the *Hiſtory*; which I had begun concern- "ing the Acts of the *Britiſh Kings*. For "my Deſign was to have finiſhed that firſt, "and afterwards to have explained this "Work; leſt by having both upon my "Hands at once, I ſhould be leſs capable "of attending with any Exactneſs to either. "Notwithſtanding ſince the Deference that "is paid to your penetrating Judgment, "will I know skreen me from Cenſure:

"I have

Digitized by Google

" I have therefore employ'd my rude Pen, " and in a vulgar Style preſent you with a " Tranſlation out of a Language, with " which you are unacquainted. At the " ſame Time, I cannot but admire at your " recommending this Matter to one of my " low Genius, when you might have obli- " ged ſo many Men of greater Learning, " and a richer Vein of Wit, to have under- " taken it; who with their ſublime Strains " would have much more agreeably enter- " tained you. Beſides, without any Diſ- " paragement to all the Philoſophers in " *Britain*, I muſt take the Liberty to ſay, " that you yourſelf, if the Buſineſs of " your high Station would give you Lei- " ſure, are capable of furniſhing us with " loftier Productions of this Kind, than " any Man living. However, ſince it was " your Pleaſure, that *Jeffrey of Monmouth* " ſhould be employ'd in this Propheſy, " he hopes you will favourably accept of " his Performance, and vouchſafe to give " a finer Turn to whatever you ſhall find " unpoliſhed, or otherwiſe faulty in it.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The Propheſy of MERLIN.

AS *Vortegirn*, King of the *Britains*, was ſitting upon the Bank of the drained Pond, the two Dragons, one of which was white, the other red, came forth, and approaching one another, began a terrible Fight, and caſt forth Fire with their Breath. But the white Dragon had the Advantage, and made the other fly to the End of the Lake. And he for Grief at his Flight, renewed the Aſſault upon his Purſuer, and forced him to retire. After this Battle of the Dragons, the King commanded *Ambroſe Merlin* to tell him what it portended. Upon which he burſting out into Tears, delivered what his Prophetical Spirit ſuggeſted to him, as follows.

"WO to the red Dragon, for his Ba-
"niſhment haſteneth. His lurking
" Holes ſhall be ſeized by the white Dragon;
" which ſignifies the *Saxons* whom you invit-
" ed over: But the red denotes the *Britiſh*
" Nation, which ſhall be oppreſſed by the
" white. Therefore ſhall its Mountains
" be levelled as the Valleys, and the Rivers
" of the Valleys ſhall run with Blood. The
" Exerciſe of Religion ſhall be deſtroyed,
" and

Digitized by Google

" and Churches lay open to Ruin. At last
" the oppressed shall prevail, and oppose
" the Cruelty of Foreigners. For a Boar
" of *Cornwal* shall give his Assistance, and
" trample their Necks under his Feet. The
" Islands of the Ocean shall be subject to
" his Power, and he shall possess the Forests
" of *Gaul*. The House of *Romulus* shall
" dread his Courage; and his End shall be
" doubtful. He shall be celebrated in the
" Mouths of the People; and his Exploits
" shall be Food to those that relate them.
" Six of his Posterity shall sway the Sceptre,
" but after them shall arise a *German* Worm.
" He shall be advanced by a Sea-Wolf,
" whom the Woods of *Africa* shall accom-
" pany. Religion shall be again abolished,
" and there shall be a Translation of the
" Metropolitan Sees. The Dignity of *Lon-*
" *don* shall adorn *Durobernia*, and the seventh
" Pastor of *York* shall be resorted to in the
" Kingdom of *Armorica*. *Menevia* shall put
" on the Pall of the City of *Legions*, and a
" Preacher of *Ireland* shall be dumb on Ac-
" count of an Infant growing in the Womb.
" It shall rain a Shower of Blood, and a
" raging Famine shall afflict Mankind.
" When these Things happen, the red one
" shall be grieved; but when his Fatigue is
" over shall grow strong. Then shall Mis-
" fortunes hasten upon the white one, and
" the Buildings of his Gardens shall be pul-

" led

Digitized by Google

" led down. Seven that sway the Sceptre " shall be killed, one of whom shall be- " come a Saint. The Bellies of Mothers " shall be ript up, and Infants be abortive. " There shall be a most grievous Punish- " ment of Men, that the Natives may be " restored. He that shall do these Things " shall put on the brazen Man, and upon " a brazen Horse shall a long Time guard " the Gates of *London*. After this shall the " red Dragon return to his proper Man- " ners, and turn his Rage upon himself. " Therefore shall the Revenge of the Thun- " derer shew itself, for every Field shall " disappoint the Husbandmen. Mortality " shall snatch away the People, and make " a Desolation over all Countries. The " Remainder shall quit their native Soil, " and make foreign Plantations. A blessed " King shall prepare a Fleet, and shall be " reckoned the twelfth in the Court among " the Saints. There shall be a miserable " Desolation of the Kingdom, and the " Floors of Harvests shall return to the " fruitful Forests. The white Dragon shall " rise again, and invite over a Daughter of " *Germany*. Our Gardens shall be again " replenished with foreign Seed, and the " red one shall pine away at the End of " the Pond. After that shall the *German* " Worm be Crowned, and the brazen " Prince buried. He has his Bounds as-

" signed

Digitized by Google

" ſigned him, which he ſhall not be able to
" paſs. For a hundred and fifty Years he
" ſhall continue in Trouble and Subjection,
" but ſhall bear Sway three hundred. Then
" ſhall the North-wind riſe againſt him,
" and ſhall ſnatch away the Flowers which
" the Weſt-wind produced. There ſhall
" be Gilding in the Temples, nor ſhall the
" Edge of the Sword ceaſe. The *German*
" Dragon ſhall hardly get to his Holes, be-
" cauſe the Revenge of his Treaſon ſhall
" overtake him. At laſt he ſhall flouriſh
" for a little Time, but the Deciſiation of
" *Neuſtria* ſhall hurt him. For a People
" in Wood and in Iron Coats ſhall come,
" and revenge upon him his Wickedneſs.
" They ſhall reſtore the ancient Inhabitants
" to their Dwellings, and there ſhall be an
" open Deſtruction of Foreigners. The
" Seed of the white Dragon ſhall be ſwept
" out of our Gardens, and the Remainder
" of his Generation ſhall be decimated.
" They ſhall bear the Yoke of Slavery, and
" wound their Mother with Spades and
" Ploughs. After this ſhall ſucceeed two
" Dragons, whereof one ſhall be killed
" with the Sting of Envy, but the other
" ſhall return under the Shadow of a Name.
" Then ſhall ſucceed a Lion of Juſtice, at
" whoſe Roar the *Gallican* Towers and the
" Iſland Dragons ſhall tremble. In thoſe
" Days Gold ſhall be ſqueezed from the

Digitized by Google

" Lilly and the Nettle, and Silver shall flow
" from the Hoofs of bellowing Cattle. The
" Frizled shall put on various Fleeces, and
" the outward Habit denote the inward
" Parts. The Feet of Barkers shall be cut
" off: Wild Beasts shall enjoy Peace:
" Mankind shall be grieved at their Pu-
" nishment; The Form of Commerce shall
" be divided: The half shall be round.
" The Ravenousness of Kites shall be de-
" stroyed, and the Teeth of Wolves blunted.
" The Lions Whelps shall be transformed
" into Sea-Fishes; and an Eagle shall build
" her Nest upon Mount *Aravius*. *Venedotia*
" shall grow red with Mothers Blood, and
" the House of *Corineus* kill six Brethren.
" The Island shall be wet with Night-
" Tears; so that all shall be provoked to
" all Things. Wo to thee, *Neustria*, be-
" cause the Lions Brain shall be poured up-
" on Thee; and he shall be banished with
" shattered Limbs from his Native Soil.
" Posterity shall endeavour to fly above the
" highest Places; but the Favour of New-
" comers shall be exalted. Piety shall hurt
" the Possessor of Things got by Impiety,
" till he shall have put on his Father.
" Therefore being armed with the Teeth
" of a Boar, he shall ascend above the Tops
" of Mountains, and the Shadow of him
" that wears a Helmet. *Albania* shall be
" enraged, and assembling her Neighbours,

" shall

Digitized by Google

" shall be employ'd in shedding Blood.
" There shall be put into her Jaws a Bridle
" that shall be made in the Coast of *Armo-*
" *rica*. The Eagle of the broken Cove-
" nant shall gild it over, and rejoyce in her
" third Nest. The roaring Whelps shall
" watch, and leaving the Woods, shall
" hunt within the Walls of Cities. They
" shall make no small Slaughter of those
" that oppose them, and shall cut off the
" Tongues of Bulls. They shall load the
" Necks of roaring Lions with Chains,
" and restore the Times of their Ancestors.
" Then from the first to the fourth,
" from the fourth to the third, from the
" third to the second, the Thumb shall roll
" in Oil. The sixth shall overturn the
" Walls of *Ireland*, and change the Woods
" into a Plain. He shall reduce several
" Parts to one, and be Crowned with the
" Head of a Lion. His Beginning shall lay
" open to wandring Affection, but his End
" shall carry him up to the Blessed above.
" For he shall restore the Seats of Saints in
" their Countries, and settle Pastors in con-
" venient Places. Two Cities he shall in-
" vest with two Palls, and shall bestow
" Virgin Presents upon Virgins. He shall
" merit by this the Favour of the Thun-
" derer, and shall be placed among the
" Saints. From him shall proceed a Lynx
" penetrating all Things, who shall be bent

Digitized by Google

" upon the Ruin of his own Nation: For
" through him *Neuſtria* ſhall loſe both
" Iſlands, and be deprived of its ancient
" Dignity. Then ſhall the Natives return
" back to the Iſland; for there ſhall ariſe a
" Diſſenſion among Foreigners. Alſo a
" hoary Old-man, ſitting upon a Snow-
" white Horſe, ſhall turn the Courſe of the
" River *Periron*, and ſhall meaſure out a
" Mill upon it with a white Rod. *Cad-*
" *wallader* ſhall call upon *Conan*, and take
" *Albania* into Alliance. Then ſhall there
" be a Slaughter of Foreigners; then ſhall
" the Rivers run with Blood. Then ſhall
" break forth the Fountains of *Armorica*,
" and they ſhall be Crowned with the Di-
" adem of *Brutus*. *Cambria* ſhall be filled
" with Joy; and the Oaks of *Cornwal* ſhall
" flouriſh. The Iſland ſhall be called by
" the Name of *Brutus*: And the Name gi-
" ven it by Foreigners ſhall be aboliſhed.
" From *Conan* ſhall proceed a Warlike Boar,
" that ſhall exerciſe the Sharpneſs of his
" Tuſks within the *Gallican* Woods. For
" he ſhall cut down all the larger Oaks, and
" ſhall be a Defence to the ſmaller. The
" *Arabians* and *Africans* ſhall dread him;
" for he ſhall purſue his furious Courſe to
" the farther Part of *Spain*. There ſhall
" ſucceed the Goat of the *Venereal Caſtle*,
" having golden Horns and a ſilver Beard;
" who ſhall breath ſuch a Cloud out of his
" Noſtrils,

" Noſtrils, as ſhall darken the whole Sur-
" face of the Iſland. There ſhall be Peace
" in his Time; and Corn ſhall abound, by
" Reaſon of the Fruitfulneſs of the Soil.
" Women ſhall become Serpents in their
" Gate, and all their Motions ſhall be full
" of Pride. The Camp of *Venus* ſhall be
" reſtored; nor ſhall the Arrows of *Cupid*
" ceaſe to wound. The Fountain of a Ri-
" ver ſhall be turned into Blood; and two
" Kings ſhall fight a Duel at *Stafford* for a
" Lioneſs. Luxury ſhall overſpread the
" whole Ground; and Fornication not ceaſe
" to debauch Mankind. All theſe Things
" ſhall three Ages ſee; till the buried Kings
" ſhall be expoſed to publick View in the
" City of *London*. Famine ſhall again re-
" turn; Mortality ſhall return; and the In-
" habitants ſhall grieve for the Deſtruction
" of their Cities. Then ſhall come the
" Boar of Commerce, who ſhall recall the
" ſcattered Flocks to the Paſture they had
" loſt. His Breaſt ſhall be Food to the
" Hungry, and his Tongue Drink to the
" Thirſty. Out of his Mouth ſhall flow
" Rivers, that ſhall water the parched
" Jaws of Men. After this ſhall be pro-
" duced a Tree upon the Tower of *London*,
" which having no more than three Branch-
" es, ſhall overſhadow the Surface of the
" whole Iſland with the Breadth of its
" Leaves. Its Adverſary the North-wind

Digitized by Google

" shall come upon it, and with its noxious
" Blast shall snatch away the third Branch;
" but the two remaining ones shall possess
" its Place, till they shall destroy one ano-
" ther by the Multitude of their Leaves;
" And then shall it obtain the Place of those
" two, and shall give Sustenance to Birds
" of Foreign Nations. It shall be esteemed
" hurtful to Native Fowls; for they shall
" not be able to fly freely for Fear of its
" Shadow. There shall succeed the Age
" of Wickedness, swift against the Gold-
" smiths; but slow against the Ravenous-
" ness of Wolves. In those Days the Oaks
" of the Forests shall burn, and Acorns
" grow upon the Branches of Teil Trees.
" The *Severn* Sea shall discharge itself
" through seven Mouths, and the River
" *Uske* burn seven Months. Fishes shall
" die with the Heat thereof; and of them
" shall be engendred Serpents. The Baths
" of *Badon* shall grow cold, and their salu-
" brious Waters engender Death. *London*
" shall mourn for the Death of twenty
" thousand; and the River *Thames* shall
" be turned into Blood. The Monks in
" their Cowls shall be forced to marry,
" and their Cry shall be heard upon the
" Mountains of the *Alps*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. IV.

The Continuation of the Propheſy.

"THREE Springs ſhall break forth "in the City of *Wincheſter*, whoſe "Rivulets ſhall divide the Iſland into three "Parts. Whoever ſhall drink of the firſt, "ſhall enjoy long Life; nor ſhall ever be "afflicted with Sickneſs. He that ſhall "drink of the ſecond, ſhall die of Hunger; "and Paleneſs and Horror ſhall ſit in his "Countenance. He that ſhall drink of the "third, ſhall be ſurprized with ſudden "Death, neither ſhall his Body be capable "of Burial. Thoſe that are willing to "eſcape ſo great a Surfeit, will endeavour "to hide it with ſeveral Coverings: But "whatever bulk ſhall be laid upon it, ſhall "receive the Form of another Body. For "Earth ſhall be turned into Stones; Stones "into Water; Wood into Aſhes; Aſhes "into Water, if caſt over it. Alſo a Dam-"ſel ſhall be ſent from the City of the Fo-"reſt of *Canute*, to adminiſter a Cure; who "after ſhe ſhall have practiſed all her Arts, "ſhall dry up the noxious Fountains only "with her Breath. Afterwards as ſoon as "ſhe ſhall have refreſhed herſelf with the "wholſome Liquor, ſhe ſhall bear in her

Digitized by Google

" right Hand the Wood of *Caledon*, and in
" her left the Forts of the Walls of *London*.
" Wherever ſhe ſhall go, ſhe ſhall make
" ſulphureous Steps, which will ſmoke with
" a double Flame. That Smoke ſhall rouſe
" up the City of *Ruteni*, and ſhall make
" Food for the Inhabitants of the Deep.
" She ſhall overflow with rueful Tears, and
" ſhall fill the Iſland with her dreadful cry.
" She ſhall be killed by a Hart with ten
" Branches, four of which ſhall bear golden
" Diadems; But the other ſix ſhall be turn-
" ed into Buffles Horns, whoſe hideous
" ſound ſhall aſtoniſh the three Iſlands of
" *Britain*. The *Danean* Wood ſhall be ſtir-
" red up, and breaking forth into a human
" Voice, ſhall cry; Come, O *Cambria*, and join
" *Cornwal* to thy Side, and ſay to *Wincheſter*,
" the Earth ſhall ſwallow the up. Tranſlate
" the Seat of thy Paſtor to the Place where
" Ships come to Harbour, and the reſt of
" the Members will follow the Head. For
" the Day haſteneth, in which thy Citizens
" ſhall periſh on Account of the Guilt of
" Perjury. The whiteneſs of Wool has been
" hurtful to Thee, and the variety of its
" Tinctures. Wo to the perjured Nation,
" for whoſe Sake the renowned City ſhall
" come to Ruin. The Ships ſhall rejoyce
" at ſo great an Augmentation, and one
" ſhall be made out of two. It ſhall be
" rebuilt by *Exic* loaden with Apples, to

" the

Digitized by Google

" the ſmell whereof the Birds of ſeveral " Woods ſhall flock together. He ſhall " add to it a vaſt Palace, and Wall it round " with ſix hundred Towers. Therefore " ſhall *London* envy it, and triply encreaſe " her Walls. The River *Thames* ſhall en- " compaſs it round, and the Fame of the " Work ſhall paſs beyond the *Alps*. *Eric* " ſhall hide his Apples within it, and ſhall " make ſubterraneous Paſſages. At that " Time ſhall the Stones ſpeak, and the Sea " towards the *Gallick* Coaſt be contracted " into a narrow Space. On each Bank ſhall " one Man hear another, and the Soil of " the Iſland ſhall be enlarged. The Se- " crets of the Deep ſhall be revealed, and " *Gaul* ſhall tremble for Fear. After theſe " Things ſhall come forth a Hern from the " Foreſt of *Calaterium*, which ſhall fly round " the Iſland for two Years together. With " her nocturnal Cry ſhe ſhall call together " the winged Kind, and aſſemble to her " all ſorts of Fowls. They ſhall invade " the Tillage of Husbandmen, and devour " all the Grain of the Harveſts. Then ſhall " follow a Famine upon the People, and a " grievous Mortality upon the Famine. " But when this Calamity ſhall be over, a " deteſtable Bird ſhall go to the Valley of " *Galabes*, and ſhall raiſe it to be a high Moun- " tain. Upon the Top thereof it ſhall alſo " plant an Oak, and build its Neſt in its " Branches.

Digitized by Google

" Branches. Three Eggs ſhall be produced
" in the Neſt, from whence ſhall come forth
" a Fox, a Wolf, and a Bear. The Fox
" ſhall devour her Mother, and bear the
" Head of an Aſs. In this monſtrous Form
" ſhall ſhe fright her Brothers, and make
" them fly into *Neuſtria*. But they ſhall
" ſtir up the tusky Boar, and returning
" in a Fleet ſhall encounter with the Fox;
" who at the Beginning of the Fight ſhall
" feign her ſelf dead, and move the Boar to
" Compaſſion. Then ſhall the Boar ap-
" proach her Carcaſe, and ſtanding over
" her, ſhall breath upon her Face and Eyes.
" But ſhe not forgetting her Cunning, ſhall
" bite his left Foot, and pluck it off from his
" Body. Then ſhall ſhe leap upon him,
" and ſnatch away his right Ear and Tail,
" and hide herſelf in the Caverns of the
" Mountains. Therefore ſhall the deluded
" Boar require the Wolf and Bear to re-
" ſtore him his Members; who as ſoon
" as they ſhall enter into the Cauſe, ſhall
" promiſe two Feet of the Fox, together
" with the Ear and Tail, and of theſe they
" ſhall make up the Members of a Hog.
" With this he ſhall be ſatisfied, and ex-
" pect the promiſed Reſtitution. In the
" mean Time ſhall the Fox deſcend from
" the Mountains, and change herſelf into
" a Wolf, and under Pretence of holding a
" Conference with the Boar, ſhe ſhall go

" to

Digitized by Google

" to him, and craftily devour him. After " that ſhe ſhall transform herſelf into a " Boar, and feigning a Loſs of ſome Mem- " bers, ſhall wait for her Brothers; but as " ſoon as they are come, ſhe ſhall ſudden- " ly kill them with her Tusks, and ſhall " be crowned with the Head of a Lion. " In her Days ſhall a Serpent be brought " forth, which ſhall be a Deſtroyer of Man- " kind. With its Length it ſhall encom- " paſs *London*, and devour all that paſs by " it. The Mountain Ox ſhall take the Head " of a Wolf, and whiten his Teeth in the " *Severn*. He ſhall gather to him the Flocks " of *Albania* and *Cambria*, which ſhall drink " the River *Thames* dry. The Aſs ſhall call " the Goat with the long Beard, and ſhall " borrow his Shape. Therefore ſhall the " Mountain Ox be incenſed, and having " called the Wolf, ſhall become a horned " Bull againſt them. In the Exerciſe of " his Cruelty he ſhall devour their Fleſh " and Bones, but ſhall be burned upon the " Top of *Urian*. The Aſhes of his Funeral- " pile ſhall be turned into Swans, that ſhall " ſwim on dry Ground as on a River. " They ſhall devour Fiſhes in Fiſhes, and " ſwallow up Men in Men. But when " old Age ſhall come upon them, they ſhall " become Sea-wolves, and practiſe their " Frauds in the Deep. They ſhall drown " Ships, and collect no ſmall quantity of " Silver.

Digitized by Google

" Silver. The *Thames* ſhall again flow, and
" aſſembling together the Rivers, ſhall paſs
" beyond the Bounds of its Chanel. It ſhall
" cover the adjacent Cities, and overturn
" the Mountains that oppoſe its Courſe.
" Being full of Deceit and Wickedneſs, it
" ſhall make Uſe of the Fountain *Galabes*.
" Hence ſhall ariſe Factions provoking the
" *Venedotians* to War. The Oaks of the Fo-
" reſts ſhall meet together, and encounter
" with the Rocks of the *Gewiſſeans*. A Ra-
" ven ſhall attend with the Kites, and de-
" vour the Carcaſes of the Slain. An Owl
" ſhall build her Neſt upon the Walls of
" *Gloceſter*, and in her Neſt ſhall be brought
" forth an Aſs. The Serpent of *Malvernia*
" ſhall bring him up, and put him upon
" many fraudulent Practices. Having taken
" the Crown he ſhall aſcend on high, and
" frighten the People of the Country with
" his hideous Braying. In his Days ſhall the
" *Pachaian* Mountains tremble, and the
" Provinces be deprived of their Woods.
" For there ſhall come a Worm with a fiery
" Breath, and with the Vapour it ſends
" forth ſhall burn up the Trees. Out of it
" ſhall proceed ſeven Lions deformed with
" the Heads of Goats. With the Stench of
" their Noſtrils they ſhall corrupt Women,
" and make Wives turn common Proſti-
" tutes. The Father ſhall not know his
" own Son, becauſe they ſhall grow wan-

" ton

Digitized by Google

" ton like brute Beasts. Then shall come
" the Giant of Wickedness, and terrify all
" with the Sharpness of his Eyes. Against
" him shall arise the Dragon of *Worcester*,
" and shall endeavour to banish him. But
" in the Engagement the Dragon shall be
" worsted, and oppressed by the Wicked-
" ness of the Conqueror. For he shall
" mount upon the Dragon, and putting off
" his Garment shall sit upon him naked.
" The Dragon shall bear him up on high,
" and beat his naked Rider with his Tail
" erected. Upon this the Giant rousing up
" his whole Strength, shall break his Jaws
" with his Sword. At last the Dragon
" shall fold itself up under its Tail, and
" die of Poison. After him shall succeed
" the Boar of *Totness*, and oppress the Peo-
" ple with grievous Tyranny. *Gloucester*
" shall send forth a Lion, and shall disturb
" him in his Cruelty in several Battles. He
" shall trample him under his Feet, and
" terrify him with open Jaws. At last the
" Lion shall quarrel with the Kingdom,
" and get upon the Backs of the Nobility.
" A Bull shall come into the Quarrel, and
" strike the Lion with his right Foot. He
" shall drive him through all the Inns in the
" Kingdom, but shall break his Horns a-
" gainst the Walls of *Oxford*. The Fox of
" *Kaerdubalum* shall take Revenge on the
" Lion, and destroy him entirely with her
" Teeth.

Digitized by Google

" Teeth. She shall be encompassed by the
" Adder of *Lincoln*, who with a horrible
" Hiss shall give Notice of his Presence to
" a Multitude of Dragons. Then shall the
" Dragons encounter, and tear one another
" to Peices. The Winged shall oppress
" that which wants Wings, and fasten its
" Claws into the poisonous Cheeks. Others
" shall come into the Quarrel, and kill one
" another. A fifth shall succeed those that
" are slain, and by various Stratagems shall
" destroy the rest. He shall get upon the
" Back of one with his Sword, and sever
" his Head from his Body. Then throw-
" ing off his Garment, he shall get upon
" another, and put his right and left Hand
" upon his Tail. Thus being naked shall
" he overcome him, whom when cloathed
" he was not able to deal with. The rest
" he shall gall in their Flight, and drive them
" round the Kingdom. Upon this shall
" come a roaring Lion dreadful for his mon-
" strous Cruelty. Fifteen Parts shall he re-
" duce to one, and shall alone possess the
" People. The Giant of the Snow-white
" Colour shall shine, and cause the white
" People to flourish. Pleasures shall effe-
" minate the Princes, and they shall sud-
" denly be changed into Beasts. Among
" them shall arise a Lion swelled with hu-
" mane Gore. Under him shall a Reaper
" be placed in the standing Corn, who
" while

Digitized by Google

" while he is reaping, ſhall be oppreſſed by
" him. A Charioteer of *York* ſhall appeaſe
" them, and having baniſhed his Lord,
" ſhall mount upon the Chariot which he
" ſhall drive. With his Sword unſheathed
" ſhall he threaten the Eaſt, and fill the
" Tracts of his Wheels with Blood. After-
" wards he ſhall become a Sea-Fiſh, who
" being rouſed up with the Hiſſing of a
" Serpent, ſhall engender with him. From
" hence ſhall be produced three thundering
" Bulls, who having eat up their Paſtures
" ſhall be turned into Trees. The firſt
" ſhall carry a Whip of Vipers, and turn
" his Back on the next. He ſhall endea-
" vour to ſnatch away the Whip, but ſhall
" be taken by the laſt. They ſhall turn
" away their Faces from one another, till
" they have thrown away the poiſoned
" Cup. Him ſhall ſucceed a Husbandman
" of *Albania*, at whoſe Back ſhall be a Ser-
" pent. He ſhall be employ'd in plowing
" the Ground, that the Country may be-
" come white with Corn. The Serpent
" ſhall endeavour to diffuſe his Poiſon, in
" Order to blaſt the Harveſt. A grievous
" Mortality ſhall ſweep away the People,
" and the Walls of Cities ſhall be made
" deſolate. There ſhall be given for a
" Remedy the City of *Claudius*, which ſhall
" interpoſe the Nurſe of the Scourger. For
" ſhe ſhall bear a Doſe of Medicine, and

" in

Digitized by Google

" in a ſhort Time the Iſland ſhall be re-
" ſtored. Then ſhall two ſucceſſively ſway
" the Sceptre, whom a horned Dragon
" ſhall ſerve. One ſhall come in Armour;
" and ſhall ride upon a flying Serpent.
" He ſhall ſit upon his Back with his
" naked Body, and caſt his right Hand up-
" on his Tail. With his Cry ſhall the Seas
" be moved, and he ſhall ſtrike Terror in-
" to the Second. The Second therefore
" ſhall enter into Confederacy with the
" Lion; but a Quarrel happening, they
" ſhall encounter one another. They ſhall
" diſtreſs one another, but the Courage of
" the Beaſt ſhall gain the Advantage. Then
" ſhall come one with a Drum, and appeaſe
" the Rage of the Lion. Therefore ſhall
" the People of the Kingdom be at Peace,
" and provoke the Lion to a Doſe of Phy-
" ſick. In his eſtabliſhed Seat he ſhall ad-
" juſt the Weights, but ſhall ſtretch out
" his Hands into *Albania*. For which Rea-
" ſon the northern Provinces ſhall be griev-
" ed, and open the Gates of the Temples.
" The Sign-bearing Wolf ſhall lead his
" Troops, and ſurround *Cornwal* with his
" Tail. He ſhall be oppoſed by a Soldier
" in a Chariot, who ſhall transform that
" People into a Boar. The Boar therefore
" ſhall ravage the Provinces, but ſhall hide
" his Head in the Depth of *Severn*. A
" Man ſhall embrace a Lion in Wine, and
" the

Digitized by Google

" the dazling brightneſs of Gold ſhall blind
" the Eyes of Beholders. Silver ſhall whiten
" in the Circumference, and torment ſeve-
" ral Wine-preſſes. Men ſhall be drunk
" with Wine, and regardleſs of Heaven
" ſhall be intent upon the Earth. From
" them ſhall the Stars turn away their Faces,
" and confound their uſual Courſe. Corn
" will wither at their malign Aſpects; and
" there ſhall fall no Dew from Heaven.
" The Roots and Branches will change
" their Places, and the Novelty of the
" Thing ſhall paſs for a Miracle. The
" Brightneſs of the Sun ſhall fade at the
" Amber of *Mercury*, and Horror ſhall ſieze
" the Beholders. *Stilbon* of *Arcadia* ſhall
" change his Shield; the Helmet of *Mars*
" ſhall call *Venus*. The Helmet of *Mars*
" ſhall make a Shadow; and the Rage of
" *Mercury* paſs his Bounds. Iron *Orion* ſhall
" unſheath his Sword: The marine *Phœbus*
" ſhall torment the Clouds; *Jupiter* ſhall
" go out of his lawful Paths; and *Venus*
" forſake her ſtated Lines. The malignity
" of the Star *Saturn* ſhall fall down in Rain,
" and ſlay Mankind with a crooked Sickle.
" The twelve Houſes of the Stars ſhall la-
" ment the irregular Excurſions of their
" Gueſts; and *Gemini* omit their uſual
" Embraces, and call the Urn to the Foun-
" tains. The Scales of *Libra* ſhall hang
" obliquely, till *Aries* put his crooked Horns

Digitized by Google

" under them. The Tail of *Scorpio* ſhall
" produce Lightning, and *Cancer* quarrel
" with the Sun. *Virgo* ſhall mount upon
" the Back of *Sagittarius*, and darken her
" Virgin Flowers. The Chariot of the
" Moon ſhall diſorder the *Zodiack*, and the
" *Pleiades* break forth into Weeping. No
" Offices of *Janus* ſhall hereafter return,
" but his Gate being ſhut ſhall lie hid in
" the Chinks of *Ariadne*. The Seas ſhall
" riſe up in the Twinkling of an Eye, and
" the Duſt of the Ancients ſhall be reſtored.
" The Winds ſhall fight together with a
" dreadful Blaſt, and their Sound ſhall reach
" the Stars.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE British History.

The Eighth Book.

CHAP. I.

Vortegirn *asks* Merlin *concerning his own Death.*

MERLIN, by delivering these and many other Prophesies, caused in all that were present an Admiration at the Ambiguity of his Expressions. But *Vortegirn* above all the rest both admired and applauded the Wisdom, and prophetical Spirit of the young Man; For that Age had produced none that ever talked in such a Manner before him. Being therefore curious to learn his own Fate, he desired the young Man to tell him what

Digitized by Google

he knew concerning that Particular. *Merlin* answered; "Fly the Fire of the Sons of "*Constantine*, if you are able to do it: Now "are they fitting out their Ships: Now "are they leaving the *Armorican* Shore: "Now are they spreading out their Sails "to the Wind. They will steer towards "*Britain*: They will invade the *Saxon* Na-"tion; they will subdue that wicked Peo-"ple; but they will first burn you being "shut up in a Tower. To your own Ruin "did you prove a Traytor to their Father, "and invite the *Saxons* into the Island. You "invited them for your Safe-guard; but "they came for a Punishment to you. Two "Deaths instantly threaten you; nor is it "easy to determine, which you can best "avoid. For on the one Hand the *Saxons* "shall lay waste your Country, and endea-"vour to kill you: On the other shall ar-"rive the two Brothers, *Aurelius Ambrosius* "and *Uther Pendragon*, whose Business will "be to revenge their Father's Murder upon "you. Seek out some Refuge if you can: "To morrow they will be on the Shore of "*Totness*. The Faces of the *Saxons* shall "look red with Blood, and *Hengist* being "killed *Aurelius Ambrosius* shall be crown'd. "He shall bring Peace to the Nation; he "shall restore the Churches; but shall die "of Poison. His Brother *Uther Pendragon* "shall succeed him, whose Days also shall

"be

Digitized by Google

" be cut ſhort by Poiſon. There ſhall be
" preſent at the Commiſſion of this Trea-
" ſon your own Iſſue, whom the Boar of
" *Cornwal* ſhall devour. Accordingly the
" next Day early, arrived *Aurelius Ambro-*
" *ſius* and his Brother, attended with ten
" thouſand Men.

CHAP. II.

Aurelius Ambroſius *being anointed King of* Britain, *burns* Vortegirn *beſieged in a Tower.*

AS ſoon as the News of his coming was divulged, the *Britains* who had been diſperſed in ſo great a Calamity, met together from all Parts, and gaining this new Acceſſion of Strength from their Countrymen, become more cheerful than ordinary. Then having aſſembled together the Clergy, they anointed *Aurelius* King, and paid him the cuſtomary Homage. And when the People were urgent to fall upon the *Saxons*, he diſſwaded them from it, becauſe his Deſire was to purſue *Vortegirn* firſt. For the Treaſon committed againſt his Father ſo very much affected him, that he thought nothing done till that was firſt revenged. In Purſuance therefore of this Deſign, he

Digitized by Google

marches with his Army into *Cambria*, to the Town of *Genoreu*, whither *Vortegirn* had fled for a safe Refuge. That Town was in the Country of *Hergin*, upon the River *Gania*, in the Mountain called *Charius*. As soon as *Ambrosius* was arrived there, he bearing in his Mind the Murder of his Father and Brother, spake thus to *Eldol* Duke of *Gloceſter*.

"See, most Noble Duke, whether the "Walls of this City are able to protect "*Vortegirn* against my sheathing this Sword "in his Bowels. He deserves to die, and "you cannot, I suppose, be ignorant of his "Desert. O most villainous of Men, whose "Crimes deserve unexpressible Tortures! "First he betray'd my Father *Constantine*, "who had delivered him and his Country "from the Inrodes of the *Picts*; afterwards "my Brother *Constans*, whom he made "King on Purpose to destroy him. Again, "when by his Craft he had usurped the "Crown, he introduced Pagans among "the Natives, in order to suppress those "who continued stedfast in their Loyalty "to me: But by the good Providence of "God, he unwarily fell into the Snare, "which he had laid for my faithful Sub-"jects. For the *Saxons* when they found "him out in his Wickedness, drove him "from the Kingdom; for which no Body

"ought

Digitized by Google

" ought to be concerned. But this I think " Matter of just Grief, that this odious " People, whom that detestable Traitor " invited over, has expelled the Nobility, " laid waste a fruitful Country, destroy'd " the Holy Churches, and almost extin- " guished *Christianity* over the whole King- " dom. Now therefore, my Countrymen, " shew yourselves Men; first revenge your " selves upon him that was the Occasion of " all these Disasters; then let us turn our " Arms against our Enemies that are just " upon us, and free our Country from " their brutish Tyranny.

Immediately therefore they set their Engines to work, and laboured to beat down the Walls. But at last, when all other Attempts failed, they had Recourse to Fire, which meeting with proper Fuel, ceased not to rage, till it had burnt down the Tower and *Vortegirn* in it.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. III.

The Praise of Aurelius's *Valour: The Levity of the* Scots *exposed. Forces raised against* Hengist.

HENGIST with his *Saxons* was struck with Terror at this News; for he dreaded the Valour of *Aurelius*. Such was the Bravery and Courage this Prince was Master of, that while he was in the Parts of *Gaul*, there was none durst encounter with him. For in all Rencounters he either dismounted his Adversary, or broke his Spear. Besides he was magnificent in his Presents, constant at his Devotions, temperate in all Respects, and above all Things hated a Lye. A brave Soldier on Foot, a better on Horseback, and expert in the Discipline of an Army. Reports of these his noble Accomplishments, while he yet continued in *Armorican Britain*, were daily brought over into the Island. Therefore the *Saxons* for fear of him, retired beyond the *Humber*, and in those Parts fortified the Cities and Towns; for that Country always lay open for a Place of Refuge to them; their Safety lying in the Neighbourhood of *Scotland*, which used to watch all Opportunities of distressing the Nation.

For

Digitized by Google

For that Country being in itſelf a frightful Place to live in, and wholly uninhabited, had been a ſafe Receptacle for Strangers. By its Situation it lay open to the *Picts*, *Scots*, *Danians*, *Norwegians* and others, that came to plunder the Iſland. Being therefore ſecure of a ſafe Reception in this Country, they fled towards it, that if there ſhould be Occaſion, they might retreat into it as into their own Camp. This was very good News to *Aurelius*, and made him conceive greater Hopes of Victory. So aſſembling his People quickly together, he augmented his Army, and made an expeditious March towards the Northern Parts. In his Paſſage through the Countries, he was grieved to ſee the Deſolation made in them, but eſpecially that the Churches lay level with the Ground; and promiſed to rebuild them, if he gained the Victory.

CHAP. IV.

Hengiſt *marches with his Army againſt* Aurelius, *into the Field* Maiſbeli.

BUT *Hengiſt* upon his Approach took Courage again, and choſe out the braveſt of his Men, whom he ſpirited up to

Digitized by Google

to make a gallant Defence, and not be daunted at *Aurelius*; who, he told them, had but few *Armorican Britains* along with him, since their Number did not exceed ten thousand. And as for the Island *Britains* he made no Account of them, since they had been so often defeated by him. He promised them therefore the Victory, and that they should come off safely, considering the Superiority of their Number, which amounted to two hundred thousand Men in Arms. After he had in this Manner animated all his Men, he advanced with them towards *Aurelius*, into a Field called *Maisheli*, through which *Aurelius* was to pass. For his Desire was to make a sudden Assault by a Surprize, and fall upon the *Britains* before they were prepared. But *Aurelius* perceived the Design, and yet did not upon that Score delay going to the Field, but rather pursued his March with more Expedition. When he was come within Sight of the Enemy, he put his Troops in Order, commanding three thousand *Armoricans* to attend the Cavalry, and drew out the rest into the Line of Battle with the Islanders. The *Demetians* he placed upon the Hills, and the *Venedotians* in the adjacent Woods. His Reason for which was, that they might be there ready to fall upon the *Saxons*, in Case they should fly thither.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. V.

A Battle between Aurelius *and* Hengist.

IN the mean Time *Eldol* Duke of *Glocester*, went to the King, and said, "This one "Day should suffice for all the Days of my "Life, if by good Providence I could but "get an Opportunity to engage with *Hen-* "*gist*: For one of us should die before we "parted. I still retain deep fixed in my "Memory, the Day appointed for our "peaceably treating together; but which "he villainously made use of for the assassi- "nating all that were present at the Treaty, "excepting my self only, who stood up- "on my Defence with a Stake I acciden- "tally found, till I made my Escape. "That very Day proved fatal, through "his Treachery, to no less than four hun- "dred and sixty Barons and Consuls, who "all went unarmed. From that Conspi- "racy God was pleased to deliver me, by "throwing a Stake in my Way, where- "with I defended my self and escaped." Thus *Eldol*. Then *Aurelius* exhorted his Companions to place all their Hope in the Son of God, and to make a brave Assault with one Consent upon the Enemy, in De-

fence

Digitized by Google

fence of their Country. Nor was *Hengist* less busy on the other Hand in forming his Troops, and giving them Directions how to behave themselves in the Battle; and walked himself through their several Ranks the more to spirit them up. At last both Armies being drawn out in Order of Battle, began the Attack, which they maintain'd with great Bravery, and no small Loss of Blood, both of the *Britains* and *Saxons*. *Aurelius* animates the *Christians*, *Hengist* the Pagans; and all the Time of the Engagement, *Eldols* chief Endeavour was to encounter *Hengist*, but he had no Opportunity for it. For *Hengist* when he found his own Men routed, and that the *Christians*, by the especial Favour of God, had the Advantage, fled to the Town called *Kaerconan*, now *Cunungeburg*. *Aurelius* pursues him, and either kills or makes Slaves of all he found in the Way. When *Hengist* saw that he was pursued by *Aurelius*, he would not enter the Town, but assembled his Troops, and prepared them to stand another Engagement. For he knew the Town would not hold out against *Aurelius*, and that his whole Security now lay in his Sword. At last *Aurelius* overtook him, and after marshalling his Forces, began another most furious Fight. And here the *Saxons* unanimously maintained their Ground, notwithstanding the Numbers that fell. On both Sides

Digitized by Google

Sides was great Execution done, the Groans of the dying causing a greater Rage in those that survived. In short the *Saxons* would have gained the Day, had not a Detachment of Horse of the *Armorican Britains*, come in upon them. For *Aurelius* had appointed them the same Station which they had in the former Battle; so that upon their advancing, the *Saxons* gave Ground, and being a little dispersed, were not able to rally again. The *Britains* incouraged by this Advantage, exerted themselves, and laboured with all their Might to distress the Enemy. All the Time was *Aurelius* fully employed, not only in giving Commands, but encouraging his Men by his own Example: For with his own Hand he killed all that stood in his Way, and pursued those that fled. Nor was *Eldol* less active in all Parts of the Field, running to and fro to infest his Adversaries; but still his main Endeavour was to find an Opportunity of encountring *Hengist*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VI.

Hengiſt *in a Duel with* Eldol, *is taken by him. The* Saxons *are ſlain by the* Britains *without Mercy.*

AS there were therefore ſeveral Motions made by the Parties engaged on each Side, there happened an Opportunity for their meeting, and briskly engaging each other. In this Rencounter of the two greateſt Champions in the Field, the Fire ſparkled with the claſhing of their Arms, and every Stroke in a manner produced both Thunder and Lightning. For a long Time was the Victory in Suſpence, as it ſeemed ſometimes to favour the one, ſometimes the other. While they were thus hotly engaged, *Gorlois* Duke of *Cornwal* came up to them with the Party he commanded, and did great Execution upon the Enemies Troops. At the Sight of him *Eldol*, now more aſſured of Victory, faſtned upon the Helmet of *Hengiſt*, and by main Force dragged him in among the *Britains*, and then in Tranſports of Joy cry'd out with a loud Voice, "God has fulfilled my Deſire! My "brave Soldiers, down, down with your "Enemies the *Ambrons*. The Victory is "now

Digitized by Google

" now in your Hands: Since *Hengiſt* is de-
" feated, the Day is your own. " In the mean Time the *Britains* failed not to perform every one their Parts againſt the Pagans, upon whom they made many vigorous Aſſaults; and though they were obliged ſometimes to give Ground, yet their Courage failed them not in making a good Reſiſtance; ſo that they gave the Enemy no Reſpite till they had vanquiſhed them. The *Saxons* therefore fled whitherſoever their Conſternation hurried them, ſome to the Cities, ſome to the Woods upon the Hills, and others to their Ships. But *Octa*, the Son of *Hengiſt*, made his Retreat with a great Body of Men to *York*: And *Eoſa* his Kinſman to the City of *Alclud*, where he had a very large Army for his Guard.

CHAP. VII.

Hengiſt *is beheaded by* Eldol.

AURELIUS after this Victory took the City of *Conan* above-mentioned, and there ſtay'd three Days. During this Time he gave Orders for the Burial of the Slain, for curing the Wounded, and for the Eaſe and Refreſhment of his Forces that were fatigued.

Digitized by Google

fatigued. Then he called a Council of his principal Officers, to deliberate what was to be done with *Hengist*. There was present at the Assembly *Eldad* Bishop of *Gloucester*, and Brother of *Eldol*, being a Prelate of very great Wisdom and Piety. As soon as he beheld *Hengist* standing in the Kings Presence, he demanded Silence, and said; "Though all should be unanimous for setting him at Liberty, yet would I cut him "to Peices. The Prophet *Samuel* is my "Warrant, who when he had *Agag* King "of *Amalech* in his Power, hew'd him in "Peices, saying, *As thy Sword hath made Women childless, so shall thy Mother be childless "among Women.* Do you therefore the "same to *Hengist*, who is a second *Agag*." Accordingly *Eldol* took his Sword, and drew him out of the City, and then cut off his Head. But *Aurelius* who shew'd a Moderation in all his Conduct, commanded him to be buried, and a Heap of Earth to be raised over his Body, according to the Custom of the Pagans.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VIII.

Octa *being beſieged in* York, *ſurrenders himſelf to the Mercy of* Aurelius.

FROM hence *Aurelius* conducted his Army to *York*, to beſiege *Octa Hengiſt*'s Son. When the City was inveſted, *Octa* was doubtful whether he ſhould give him any Oppoſition, and ſtand a Seige againſt ſuch a powerful Army. After Conſultation upon it, he went out with his principal Nobility that were preſent, carrying a Chain in his Hand, and Sand upon his Head, and preſented himſelf to the King with this Addreſs: "My Gods are vanquiſhed, and I "doubt not but the Sovereign Power is in "your God, who has compelled ſo many "noble Perſons to come before you in this "ſuppliant Manner. Be pleaſed therefore "to accept of Us, and of this Chain. If "you do not think Us fit Objects of your "Clemency, we here preſent ourſelves ready to be fettered, and to undergo whatever Puniſhment you ſhall adjudge Us to." *Aurelius* was moved with Commiſeration at the Spectacle, and demanded the Advice of his Council what was to be done with them. After various Propoſals

Digitized by Google

upon this Subject, *Eldad* the Biſhop roſe up, and delivered his Opinion in theſe Words; "The *Gibeonites* came voluntarily to the "Children of *Iſrael* to deſire Mercy, and "they obtained it. And ſhall we *Chriſtians* "be worſe than the *Jews*, in refuſing them "Mercy? It is Mercy they beg, and let "them have it. The Iſland of *Britain* is "large, and in many Places uninhabited. "Let us make a Covenant with them, and "ſuffer them at leaſt to inhabit the deſert "Places, that they may be our Vaſſals for "ever." The King acquieſced in *Eldad*'s Advice, and ſuffered them to partake of his Clemency. After this *Roſa* and the reſt that fled, being encouraged by *Octa*'s Succeſs, came alſo, and were admitted to the ſame Favour. The King therefore granted them the Country bordering upon *Scotland*, and made a firm Covenant with them.

CHAP. IX.

Aurelius *having entirely routed the Enemies, reſtores all Things in* Britain, *eſpecially Eccleſiaſtical, to their Ancient State.*

THE Enemies being now entirely reduced, the King ſummoned the Conſuls and Princes of the Kingdom together at

Digitized by Google

at *York*, where he gave them Orders for the Reſtauration of the Churches, which the *Saxons* had deſtroyed. He himſelf undertook the rebuilding of the Metropolitan Church of that City, as alſo the other Cathedral Churches in that Province. After fifteen Days when he had ſettled Workmen in ſeveral Places, he went to *London*, which City had not eſcaped the Fury of the Enemy. He beheld the Deſtruction made in it with great Sorrow, and recalled the Remainder of the Citizens from all Parts, and began the Reſtauration of it. Here he ſettled the Affairs of the whole Kingdom, revived the Laws, reſtored the Right Heirs to the Poſſeſſions of their Anceſtors; and thoſe Eſtates, whereof the Heirs had been loſt in the late grievous Calamity, he diſtributed among his Fellow Soldiers. And in theſe important Concerns, of reſtoring the Nation to its ancient State, of repairing the Churches, of re-eſtabliſhing Peace and Law, and of ſettling the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, was his Time and Thoughts wholly employed. From hence he went to *Winchester*; to repair the Ruins of it, as he did of other Cities; and when the Work was finiſhed there, he went, at the Inſtance of Biſhop *Eldad*, to the Monaſtery near *Kaercaradoc*, now *Salisbury*, where the Conſuls and Princes, whom the wicked *Hengiſt* had treacherouſly murdered, lay buried. At this

Digitized by Google

Place was a Convent that maintained three hundred Fryars, being ſituated upon the Mountain of *Ambrius*, who, as is reported, had been the Founder of it. The ſight of the Place where the Dead lay, made the King, who was of a compaſſionate Temper, ſhed Tears, and at laſt enter upon Thoughts, what Kind of Monument to erect upon it. For he thought ſomething ought to be done to perpetuate the Memory of that Piece of Ground, which was honoured with the Bodies of ſo many noble Patriots, that dy'd for their Country.

CHAP. X.

Aurelius *is adviſed by* Merlin *to remove the Giants Dance from the Mountain* Killaraus.

IN Order to this, he ſummoned together ſeveral Carpenters and Maſons, and commanded them to employ the utmoſt of their Art, in contriving ſome new Structure, for a laſting Monument to thoſe great Men. But they, out of a Diffidence of their own Skill, refuſing to undertake it, *Tremounus* Archbiſhop of the City of *Legions* went to the King, and ſaid; "If any one living "is able to execute your Commands, *Mer-*

"*lin*

Digitized by Google

"*tin* the Prophet of *Vortegirn* is the Man: "In my Opinion there is not in all your "Kingdom a Perſon of a brighter Genius, "either in predicting future Events, or in "mechanical Contrivances. Order him to "come to you, and exerciſe his Skill in the "Work you deſign." Whereupon *Aurelius*, after he had asked a great many Queſtions concerning him, diſpatched away ſeveral Meſſengers into the Countries to find him out, and bring him to him. After their paſſing through ſeveral Provinces, they found him in the Country of the *Gewiſſeans*, at the Fountain of *Galabes*, which he frequently reſorted to. As ſoon as they had delivered their Meſſage to him, they conducted him to the King, who received him with Joy; and being curious to hear ſome of his wonderful Speeches, commanded him to Propheſy. *Merlin* made Anſwer; "Miſteries of this Kind are not to be reveal-"ed, but when there is the greateſt Ne-"ceſſity for it. If I ſhould pretend to ut-"ter them either for Oſtentation or Diver-"ſion, the Spirit that inſtructs me would "be ſilent, and would leave me when I "ſhould have Occaſion for it." And when he had made the ſame Refuſal to all the reſt preſent, the King would not urge him any longer about his Predictions, but ſpoke to him concerning the Monument he deſigned. "If you are deſirous, ſaid *Merlin*, to ho-

Digitized by Google

" nour the Burying Place of these Men " with an everlasting Monument, send for " the Giants Dance, which is in *Killaraus* " a Mountain in *Ireland*. For there is a " Structure of Stones there, which none of " this Age could raise, without a profound " Knowledge of the mechanical Arts. They " are Stones of a vast Magnitude and won- " derful Quality: And if they can be placed " here, as they are there, quite round this " Spot of Ground, they will stand for ever.

CHAP. XI.

Uther Pendragon *is appointed with* Merlin *to bring over the Giants Dance.*

AT these Words of *Merlin*, *Aurelius* burst out into Laughter, and said; " How " is it possible to remove such vast Stones " from so distant a Country, as if *Britain* " was not furnished with Stones fit for the " Work?" *Merlin* reply'd; " I entreat " your Majesty to forbear vain Laughter; " for what I say is without Vanity. They " are mystical Stones, and of a medicinal " Virtue. The Giants of old brought them " from the farthest Coasts of *Africa*, and " placed them in *Ireland*, while they inha- " bited

Digitized by Google

" bind that Country. Their Design in " this was to make Baths in them, when " they should be taken with any Illness. " For their Method was to wash the Stones, " and put their Sick into the Water, which " infallibly cured them. With the like " Success they cured Wounds also, adding " only the Application of some Herbs. There " is not a Stone there, which has not some " healing Virtue." When the *Britains* heard this, they resolved to send for the Stones, and to make War upon the People of *Ireland*, if they should offer to detain them. And to accomplish this Business, they made choice of *Uther Pendragon*, who was to be attended with fifteen thousand Men. They chose also *Merlin* himself, by whose Direction the whole Affair was to be managed. A Fleet being therefore got ready, they set sail, and with a fair Wind arrived in *Ireland*.

CHAP. XII.

Gillomanius *being routed by* Uther, *the* Britains *bring over the Giants Dance into* Britain.

AT that Time *Gillomanius*, a Youth of wonderful Valour, reigned in *Ireland*; who upon the News of the Arrival of the

Digitized by Google

Britains in his Kingdom, levy'd a vaſt Army, and marched out againſt them. And when he had learned the Occaſion of their coming, he ſmiling ſaid to thoſe about him; "No Wonder a cowardly Race of People, "were able to make ſo great Devaſtations "in the Iſland of *Britain*, when the *Britains* "are ſuch Brutes and Fools. Was ever "the like Folly heard of? What are the "Stones of *Ireland* better than thoſe of *Bri-* "*tain*, that our Kingdom muſt be put to "this Diſturbance for them? To Arms "Soldiers, and defend your Country; while "I have Life, they ſhall not take from us "the leaſt Stone of the Giants Dance." *Uther* ſeeing them prepared for a Battle, attacked them; nor was it long e'er the *Britains* had the Advantage, who having diſperſed and killed the *Iriſh*, forced *Gillomanius* to fly. After the Victory they went to the Mountain *Killaraus*, and arrived at the Structure of Stones, the ſight of which filled them both with Joy and Admiration. And while they were all ſtanding round them, *Merlin* came up to them, and ſaid: "Now "try your Forces, young Men, and ſee "whether Strength or Art can do more, "towards the taking down theſe Stones." At this Word they all ſet to their Engines with one Accord, and attempted the removing of the Giants Dance. Some prepared Cables, others ſmall Ropes, others Ladders for

Digitized by Google

for the Work; but all to no Purpose. *Merlin* laughed at their vain Efforts, and then began his own Contrivances. At last when he had placed in Order the Engines that were necessary, he took down the Stones with an incredible Facility, and withal gave Directions for carrying them to the Ships, and placing them therein. This done, they with Joy set sail again, to return to *Britain*; where they arrived with a fair Gale, and repaired to the Burying-Place with the Stones. When *Aurelius* had Notice of it, he sent out Messengers to all the Parts of *Britain*, to summon the Clergy and People together to the Mount of *Ambrius*, in order to celebrate with Joy and Honour the erecting of the Monument. Upon this Summons appeared the Bishops, Abbots, and People of all other Orders and Qualities; and upon the Day and Place appointed for their general Meeting, *Aurelius* placed the Crown upon his Head, and with Royal Pomp celebrated the Feast of Pentecost, the Solemnity whereof he continued the three following Days. In the mean Time all Places of Honour that were vacant, he bestowed upon his Domesticks, as Rewards for their good Services. At that Time were the two Metropolitan Sees of *York* and *Legions* vacant; and with the general Consent of the People, whom he was willing to please in this choice, he granted *York* to *Sanxo*, a Man

Digitized by Google

Man of great Quality, and much celebrated for his Piety; and the City of *Legions* to *Dubricius*, whom Divine Providence had pointed out as a moſt uſeful Paſtor in that Place. As ſoon as he had ſettled theſe and other Affairs in the Kingdom, he ordered *Merlin* to ſet up the Stones brought over from *Ireland*, about the Sepulchre; which he accordingly did, and placed them in the ſame Manner as they had been in the Mountain *Killareus*, and thereby gave a manifeſt Proof of the Prevalence of Art above Strength.

CHAP. XIII.

Paſcentius *brings in the* Saxons *againſt the* Britains.

AT the ſame Time *Paſcentius* the Son of *Vortigirn*, who had fled over into *Germany*, was levying all the Forces of that Kingdom againſt *Aurelius Ambroſius*, with a Deſign to revenge his Fathers Death; and promiſed his Men an immenſe Treaſure of Gold and Silver, if with their Aſſiſtance he could ſucceed in reducing *Britain* under his Power. When he had at laſt corrupted all the Youth of the Country with his large Promiſes, he prepared a vaſt Fleet, and arrived

Digitized by Google

rived in the Northern Parts of the Iſland, upon which he began to make great Devaſtations. The King on the other hand, upon hearing this News, aſſembled his Army, and marched againſt them, and challenged the enraged Enemy to a Battle; which hereupon accordingly enſued, and in which by the Bleſſing of God the Enemy was defeated and put to Flight.

CHAP. XIV.

Paſcentius *being aſſiſted by the King of* Ireland, *again infeſts the* Britains. Aurelius *dies by the Treachery of* Eopa *a* Saxon.

PASCENTIUS after this Flight, durſt not return back to *Germany*, but ſhifting his Sails went over to *Gillomanius* in *Ireland*, by whom he was well received. And when he had given him an Account of his Misfortune, *Gillomanius* in Pity to him promiſed him his Aſſiſtance, and at the ſame Time vented his Complaint of the Injuries done him by *Vther*, the Brother of *Aurelius*, when he came for the Giants Dance. At laſt entring into Confederacy together, they made ready their Fleet, in which they embarked, and arrived at the City *Menevia*.

This

Digitized by Google

This News caused *Uther Pendragon* to levy his Forces, and march into *Cambria* to fight them. For his Brother *Aurelius* then lay sick at *Winchester*, and was not able to go himself. When *Pascentius*, *Gillomanius*, and the *Saxons* heard of it, they highly rejoiced, as flattering themselves, that his Sickness would facilitate to them the Conquest of *Britain*. And while this Occurrence was the Subject of the Peoples Discourse, one of the *Saxons*, named *Eopa*, came to *Pascentius*, and said; "What Reward will you "give the Man, that shall kill *Aurelius* "*Ambrosius* for you?" To whom *Pascentius* answered, "Oh that I could find a Man "of such Resolution! I would give him a "thousand Pounds of Silver, and my "Friendship for Life; and if by good "Fortune I can but gain the Crown, I "promise upon Oath to make him a "Centurion." To this *Eopa* reply'd, I "have learned the *British* Language, and "know the Manners of the People, and "have Skill in Physick. If therefore you "will perform this Promise, I will pretend "I am a *Christian* and a *Britain*; and when, "as a Physician, I shall be admitted into "the Kings Presence, I will make him a "Potion that shall dispatch him. And to "gain the readier Access to him, I will "withal put on the Appearance of a de-"vout and learned Monk." Upon this Offer

Digitized by Google

Offer *Pascentius* entred into Covenant with him, and confirmed what he had promised with an Oath. *Eopa* therefore shaved his Beard and Head, and in the Habit of a Monk hasted towards *Winchester*, being loaden with Vessels full of Medical Preparations. As soon as he arrived there, he offered his Service to those that attended about the King, and was graciously received by them; for to them nō Body was now more acceptable than a Physician. Then being introduced into the Kings Presence, he promised to restore him to his Health, if he would but take his Potions. Upon which he had his Orders forthwith to prepare one of them, into which when he had secretly conveyed a poisonous Mixture, he gave it the King. As soon as *Aurelius* had drunk it up, the wicked *Ambrose* ordered him presently to cover himself close up, and fall asleep, that the detestable Potion might the better operate. The King readily obeyed his Prescriptions, and in great Hopes of a speedy Recovery fell asleep. But the Poison quickly diffused itself through all the Pores and Veins of his Body, so that upon the Sleep inexorable Death ensued. In the mean Time the wicked Traytor having slyly withdrawn himself first from one and then from another, was no longer to be found in the Court. During these Transactions at *Winchester*,

Digitized by Google

chester, there appeared a Star of a wonderful Magnitude and Brightneſs, darting forth a Ray, at the End whereof was a Globe of Fire in Form of a Dragon, out of whoſe Mouth iſſued forth two Rays; one of which ſeemed to ſtretch out itſelf beyond the Extent of *Gaul*, the other towards the *Iriſh* Sea, and ended in ſeven leſſer Rays.

CHAP. XV.

A Comet preſignifies the Reign of Uther.

AT the Appearance of this Star, a general Fear and Amazement ſeized the People; and even *Uther* the Kings Brother, who was then upon his March with his Army into *Cambria*, being not a little terrified at it, was very curious to know of the learned Men, what it portended. Among others he ordered *Merlin* to be called, who alſo attended in this Expedition to give his Advice in the Management of the War; and who being now preſented before him, was commanded to diſcover to him the Signification of the Star. At this he burſt out into Tears, and with a loud Voice cry'd out, "O irreparable Loſs! O diſtreſ-"ſed People of *Britain!* Alaſs! The il-"luſtrious

Digitized by Google

" lustrious Prince is departed! The re-
" nowned King of the *Britains*, *Aurelius*
" *Ambrosius*, is dead! Whose Death will
" prove fatal to us all, unless God be our
" Helper. Make Haste therefore, most
" Noble *Uther*, make Haste to engage the
" Enemy: The Victory will be yours, and
" you shall be King of all *Britain*. For the
" Star, and the fiery Dragon under it, sig-
" nifies yourself, and the Ray extending
" towards the *Gallican* Coast, portends that
" you shall have a most potent Son, to whose
" Power all those Kingdoms shall be sub-
" ject over which the Ray reaches. But
" the other Ray signifies a Daughter, whose
" Sons and Grandsons shall successively en-
" joy the Kingdom of *Britain*.

CHAP. XVI.

Pascentius *and* Gillomanius *are killed in Battle.*

UTHER, though he doubted of the Truth of what *Merlin* had declared, however pursued his March against the Enemy; for he was now come within half a Days March of *Menevia*. When *Gillomanius*, *Pascentius*, and the *Saxons* were informed of his Approach, they went out to give

Digitized by Google

give him Battle. As ſoon as they were come within Sight of each other, both Armies began to form themſelves into ſeveral Bodies, and then advanced to a cloſe Attack, in which both Sides ſuffered a Loſs of Men, as it uſually happens in ſuch Engagements. At laſt towards the Cloſe of the Day, the Advantage was on *Uthers* Side, and the Death of *Gillomanius* and *Paſcentius* made an open Way for compleat Victory. So that the Barbarians being put to Flight, haſtened to their Ships, but were ſlain by their Purſuers. Thus by the Favour of *Chriſt*, the General had triumphant Succeſs, and then with all poſſible Expedition, after ſo great a Fatigue, returned back to *Wincheſter*. For he had now been informed, by Meſſengers that arrived, of the Kings ſad Fate, and of his Burial by the Biſhops of the Country, near the Convent of *Ambrius*, within the Giants Dance, which in his Life-Time he had commanded to be made. For upon hearing the News of his Death, the Biſhops, Abbots, and all the Clergy of that Province, had met together at *Wincheſter*, to ſolemnize his Funeral. And becauſe in his Life-Time he had given Orders for his being buried in the Sepulchre which he had prepared, they therefore carried his Corps thither, and performed his Exequies with Royal Magnificence.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XVII.

Uther Pendragon *is made King of* Britain.

BUT *Uther* his Brother, having assembled the Clergy of the Kingdom, took the Crown, and with an universal Consent was advanced to the Kingdom. And remembring the Explication *Merlin* had made of the Star above-mentioned, he commanded two Dragons to be made of Gold, in Likeness of the Dragon which he had seen at the Ray of the Star. As soon as they were finished, which was done with wonderful Nicety of Workmanship, he made a Present of one to the Cathedral Church of *Winchester*, but reserved the other for himself, to be carried along with him to his Wars. From this Time therefore he was called *Uther Pendragon*, which in the *British* Tongue signifies *The Dragons Head*; the Occasion of this Appellation being *Merlins* predicting, from the Appearance of a Dragon, that he should be King.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XVIII.

Octa *and* Eosa *are taken in Battle.*

IN the mean Time *Octa* the Son of *Hengist*, and his Kinsman *Eosa*, seeing they were no longer bound by the Treaty they had made with *Aurelius Ambrosius*, began to raise Disturbances against the King, and infest his Countries. For they were now joining with the *Saxons* whom *Pascentius* had brought over, and sending away Messengers into *Germany* for the rest. Being therefore attended with a vast Army, he invaded the Northern Provinces, and in an outrageous Manner destroyed all the Cities and fortified Places, from *Albania* to *York*. At last as he was beginning the Siege of that City, *Uther Pendragon* came upon him with the whole Power of the Kingdom, and gave him Battle. The *Saxons* behaved themselves with great Gallantry, and after having sustained themselves against the Assaults of the *Britains*, forced them to fly; and upon this Advantage pursued them with Slaughter to the Mountain *Damen*, which was as long as they could do it with Day-Light. The Mountain was high, and had a Hazel-Wood upon the Top of it, and about the Middle broken and cavernous Rocks, which were a Harbour to wild Beasts.

Digitized by Google

Beasts. The *Britains* made up to it, and stay'd there all Night among the Rocks and Hazel-Bushes. But as it began to draw towards Day, *Uther* commanded the Consuls and Princes to be called together, that he might consult with them in what Manner to assault the Enemy. Whereupon they forthwith appeared before the King, who commanded them to give their Advice; and *Gorlois*, Duke of *Cornwal*, had Orders to deliver his Opinion first, out of Regard to his Years and great Experience. "There "is no Occasion, says he, for Ceremonies or "Speeches, while we see the Night yet "continues: But there is for Boldness and "Courage, if you desire any longer Enjoy-"ment of your Life and Liberty. The "Pagans are very numerous, and eager to "fight, and we much inferior to them in "Number; so that if we stay till Day-"break, we cannot in my Opinion attack "them to Advantage. Come on therefore, "while we have the Favour of the Night, "let us go down in a close Body, and sur-"prize them in their Camp with a sudden "Assault. There can be no Doubt of Suc-"cess, if with one Consent we fall upon "them boldly, while they think themselves "secure, and have no Expectation of our "coming in such a Manner." The King and all that were present, were pleased with his Advice, and pursued it. For as soon as

Digitized by Google

they were armed and placed in their Ranks, they make towards the Enemies Camp, designing a general Assault. But upon their Approach to it, they were discovered by the Watch, who with Sound of Trumpet awaked their Companions. The Enemies being hereupon put into Confusion and Astonishment, part of them hasten towards the Sea, and part ran up and down whithersoever their Fear or Precipitation drove them. The *Britains* finding their coming discovered, hasten their March, and keeping still close together in their Ranks, invade the Camp; into which when they had found an Entrance, they ran with their drawn Swords upon the Enemy; who in this sudden Surprize, made but a faint Defence against the others vigorous and regular Attack. So the *Britains* pursue this Blow with great Eagerness, destroy some thousands of the Pagans, take *Octa* and *Eosa* Prisoners, and entirely disperse the *Saxons*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIX.

Uther *falling in Love with* Igerna, *enjoys her by the Assistance of* Merlins *Magical Operations.*

AFTER this Victory *Uther* repaired to the City of *Alclud*, where he settled the Affairs of that Province, and restored Peace every where. He also made a Progress round all the Countries of the *Scots*, and tamed the Fierceness of that rebellious People, by such a strict Administration of Justice, as none of his Predecessors had exercised before: So that in his Time Offenders were every where under great Terror, since they were sure of being punished without Mercy. At last when he had established Peace in the Northern Provinces, he went to *London*, and commanded *Octa* and *Eosa* to be kept in Prison there. The Easter following he ordered all the Nobility of the Kingdom to meet him at that City, in order to celebrate that great Festival; in Honour of which he designed to wear his Crown. The Summons was every where obeyed, and there appeared a great Concourse from all Cities against the Day. So the King observed the Festival with great Solemnity, as he had designed,

Digitized by Google

and very joyfully entertained his Nobility, of whom there was a very great Appearance with their Wives and Daughters, suitable to the Magnificence of the Banquet prepared for them. And having been received with Joy by the King, they also expressed the same in their Deportment before him. Among the rest was present *Gorlois* Duke of *Cornwal*, with his Wife *Igerna*, the greatest Beauty in all *Britain*. No sooner had the King cast his Eyes upon her among the rest of the Ladies, than he fell passionately in Love with her, and little regarding the rest, made her the Subject of all his Thoughts. She was the only Lady that he continually served with fresh Dishes, and to whom he sent Golden Cups by his Confidents; on her he bestowed all his Smiles, and to her addressed all his merry Discourse. The Husband discovering this, fell into a great Rage, and retired from the Court without taking Leave: Nor was there any Body that could stop him, while he was under Fear of losing the chief Object of his Delight. *Uther* therefore in great Wrath commanded him to return back to Court, to make him Satisfaction for this Affront, But *Gorlois* refused to obey; upon which the King was highly incensed, and swore he would destroy his Country, if he did not speedily compound for his Offence, And accordingly without Delay, while their Anger

Digitized by Google

Anger was hot againſt each other, the King got together a great Army, and marched into the Provinces of *Cornwal*, the Cities and Towns whereof he ſet on Fire. But *Gorlois* durſt not engage with him, on Account of the Inferiority of his Numbers; and thought it a wiſer Courſe to fortify his Towns, till he could get his Succours from *Ireland*. And as he was under more Concern for his Wife than himſelf, he put her into the Town of *Tintagol* upon the Sea-Shore, which he looked upon as a Place of great Safety. But he himſelf entred the Caſtle of *Dimilioc*, to prevent their being both at once involved in the ſame Danger, if any ſhould happen. The King being informed of this, went to the Town were *Gorlois* was, which he beſieged, and ſhut up all the Avenues to it. A whole Week was now paſt, when he retaining in mind his Love to *Igerna*, ſaid to one of his Confidents, named *Ulfin de Ricaradoch*: "My "Paſſion for *Igerna* is ſuch, that I can nei- "ther have Eaſe of Mind, nor Health of "Body, till I obtain her: And if you can- "not aſſiſt me with your Advice how to "accompliſh my Deſire, the inward Tor- "ments I endure will kill me." "Who "can adviſe you in this Matter, ſaid *Ulfin*, "when by no Force we can have Acceſs to "her in the Town of *Tintagol*. For it is "ſituated upon the Sea, and on every Side

Digitized by Google

" ſurrounded by it; and there is but one " Entrance into it, and that through a " ſtrait Rock, which three Men ſhall be " able to defend againſt the whole Power " of the Kingdom. Notwithſtanding if " the Prophet *Merlin* would in Earneſt ſet " upon this Attempt, I am of Opinion, you " may with his Advice obtain your Wiſhes." The King readily believed what he was ſo well inclined to, and ordered *Merlin*, who was alſo come to the Siege, to be called. *Merlin* therefore being forthwith introduced into the Kings Preſence, was commanded to give his Advice, how the King might accompliſh his Deſire with Reſpect to *Igerna*. And he finding how great Anguiſh the King ſuffered, was moved to ſee ſuch Effects of his exceſſive Love, and ſaid, " To accom-" pliſh your Deſire, you muſt make uſe of " ſuch Arts as have not been heard of in " your Time. I know how by the Force " of my Medicines, to give you the exact " Likeneſs of *Gorlois*, ſo that in all Reſpects " you ſhall ſeem to be no other than him-" ſelf. If you will therefore obey my Pre-" ſcriptions, I will metamorphize you into " the true Semblance of *Gorlois*, and *Ulfin* " into *Jordan* of *Tintagol*, his familiar Friend; " and I myſelf being transformed into ano-" ther Shape, will make the third in the " Adventure; and in this Diſguiſe you may " go ſafely to the Town where *Igerna* is, " and

" and have Admittance to her." The King comply'd with the Propoſal, and acted with great Caution in this Affair; and when he had committed the Care of the Siege to his intimate Friends, underwent the Medical Applications of *Merlin*, by whom he was transformed into the Likeneſs of *Gorlois*; as was *Ulfin* alſo into *Jordan*, and *Merlin* himſelf into *Bricel*; ſo that no Body could ſee any Remains now of their former Likeneſs. Then they ſet forward on their Way to *Tintagol*, at which they arrived in the Evening Twilight, and forthwith ſignified to the Porter, that the Conſul was come; upon which the Gates were opened, and the Men let in. For what Room could there be for Suſpicion, when *Gorlois* himſelf ſeemed to be there preſent? The King therefore ſtay'd that Night with *Igerna*, and had the full Enjoyment of her; for ſhe was deceived with the falſe Diſguiſe he had put on, and the artful and amorous Diſcourſes wherewith he entertained her. He told her he had left his own Place beſieged, purely to provide for the Safety of her dear ſelf, and the Town ſhe was in; ſo that ſhe believing all that he ſaid, refuſed him nothing he deſired. The ſame Night therefore ſhe conceived of the moſt renowned *Arthur*, whoſe Heroick and wonderful Actions have juſtly rendred his Name famous to Poſterity.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XX.

Gorlois *being killed*, Uther *marries* Igerna.

IN the mean Time as ſoon as the Kings Abſence was diſcovered at the Siege, his Army unadviſedly make an Aſſault upon the Walls, and provoke the beſieged Count to a Battle; who himſelf alſo acting as inconſiderately as they, ſally'd forth with his Men, thinking with ſuch a ſmall Handful to oppoſe a Powerful Army; but happened to be killed in the very firſt Brunt of the Fight, and had all his Men routed. The Town alſo was taken; but all the Riches of it were not ſhared equally among the Beſiegers, but every one greedily took what he could get, according as Fortune or his own Strength favoured him. After this bold Attempt, came Meſſengers to *Igerna*, with the News both of the Dukes Death, and of the Event of the Siege. But when they ſaw the King in the Likeneſs of the Conſul, ſitting cloſe by her, they were ſtruck with Shame and Aſtoniſhment at his ſafe Arrival there, whom they had left Dead at the Siege; for they were wholly ignorant of the Miracles *Merlin* had wrought with his Medicines. The King therefore

ſmiled

Digitized by Google

ſmiled at the News, and embracing the Counteſs, ſaid to her; "Your own Eyes "may convince you that I am not dead, "but alive. But notwithſtanding, the De- "ſtruction of the Town, and the Slaughter "of my Men, is what very much grieves "me; ſo that there is Reaſon to fear the "Kings coming upon us, and taking us in "this Place. To prevent which, I will "go out to meet him, and make my Peace "with him, for fear of a worſe Diſaſter." Accordingly as ſoon as he was out of the Town, he went to his Army, and having put off the Diſguiſe of *Gorlois*, was now *Uther Pendragon* again. When he had a full Relation made to him how Matters had ſucceeded, he was ſorry for the Death of *Gorlois*, but rejoyced that *Igerna* was now at Liberty to marry again. Then he returned to the Town of *Tintagol*, which he took, and in it, what he impatiently wiſhed for, *Igerna* herſelf. After this they continued to live together in a paſſionate Affection for each other, and got a Son and Daughter, whoſe Names were *Arthur* and *Anne*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XXI.

Octa *and* Eosa *renew the War.* Lot, *a Consul, marries the Kings Daughter.*

IN Process of Time the King was taken ill of a lingring Distemper; and the mean Time the Keepers of the Prison, wherein *Octa* and *Eosa*, (as we related before,) led a weary Life, had fled over with them into *Germany*, and occasioned great Fear over the Kingdom. For there was a current Report, of their great Levies in *Germany*, and the vast Fleet they had prepared for their Return to destroy the Island: Which the Event verified. For they did return in a very great Fleet, and with a prodigious Number of Men, and invaded the Parts of *Albania*, where they destroyed both Cities and Inhabitants with Fire and Sword. Whereupon in Order to repulse the Enemies, the Command of the *British* Army is committed to *Lot* of *Londonesia*, who was a Consul, and a most valiant Knight, and grown up to Maturity both of Years and Wisdom. Out of Respect therefore to his eminent Merits, the King had given him his Daughter *Anne*, and entrusted him with the Care of the Kingdom, during his Illness.

In

Digitized by Google

In his Expedition againſt the Enemies he had various Succeſs, being often repulſed by them, and forced to retreat to the Cities; but he oftner routed and diſperſed them, and compelled them to fly ſometimes into the Woods, ſometimes to their Ships. So that in a War that was attended with ſo many Turns of Fortune, it was hard to know which Side had the better. The greateſt Injury to the *Britains* was their own Pride, in diſdaining to obey the Conſuls Commands; for which Reaſon all their Efforts againſt the Enemy were leſs Vigorous and Succeſsful.

CHAP. XXII.

Uther *being ill, is carried in a Horſe-Litter againſt the Enemy.*

THE Iſland being by this Conduct now almoſt laid waſte, and the King having Information of the Matter, he fell into a greater Rage then his Weakneſs could bear, and commanded all his Nobility to come before him, that he might reprove them ſeverely for their Pride and Cowardice. And as ſoon as they were all entred into his Preſence, he ſharply rebuked them in menacing Language, and ſwore he himſelf would lead them againſt the Enemy. For

Digitized by Google

For this Purpose he ordered a Horse-Litter to be made, in which he designed to be carried, since his Infirmity would not suffer him to use any other sort of Vehicle; and charged them to be all ready, to march against the Enemy the very first Opportunity. So without Delay, both the Horse-Litter and all his Attendants were got ready, and the Day appointed for their March now come.

CHAP. XXIII.

Octa *and* Eosa *with a great Number of their Men are killed.*

THE King therefore being put into his Vehicle, they marched directly to *Verolam*, where the *Saxons* were grievously oppressing the People. When *Octa* and *Eosa* had Intelligence that the *Britains* were come, and how the King was brought in a Horse-Litter, they disdained to fight with him, saying, it would be a Shame for such brave Men to fight with one that was half dead. For which Reason they retired into the City, and as it were in Contempt of any Danger from the Enemy, left their Gates wide open. But *Uther* upon Information hereof, instantly commanded his Men to lay Siege to the City,

Digitized by Google

City, and assault the Walls on all Sides; which Orders they strictly executed, and were just upon entring the Breaches they had made in the Walls, and ready to begin a general Assault; when the *Saxons*, seeing the Advantages the *Britains* had gained, and now being forced to abate somewhat of their haughty Pride, condescended so far as to put themselves into a Posture of Defence. They therefore mounted the Walls, from whence they poured down Showers of Arrows, and repulsed the *Britains*. On both Sides this warm Dispute continued till Night came on, to release them from the Fatigue of their Arms, which was what many of the *Britains* desired, though the greater Part of them were for having the Matter quickly decided with the Enemy. The *Saxons* on the other Hand finding how prejudicial their own Pride had been to them, and that the Advantage was on the *Britains* Side, resolved to make a Sally out at Break of Day, and try their Fortune with the Enemy in the open Field; which accordingly was done. For no sooner was it Day-Light, than they marched out with this Design, being all placed in their Ranks. The *Britains* seeing them, divided their Men into several Bodies, and then advanced towards them, and began the Attack first, their Part being to assault, while the others were only upon the Defensive. However much Blood was

Digitized by Google

was ſhed on both Sides, and the greateſt Part of the Day ſpent in the Fight, when at laſt *Octa* and *Eoſa* being killed, the *Saxons* turned their Backs, and left the King of the *Britains* a compleat Victory. The King at this was in ſuch an Extaſy of Joy, that whereas before he could hardly raiſe up himſelf with the Help of others, he now without any Difficulty ſat upright in his Horſe-Litter of himſelf, as if he was on a ſudden reſtored to Health; and ſaid with a laughing and merry Countenance, "Theſe *Ambrons* called me the half dead King, becauſe my Sickneſs obliged me to lye on a Horſe-Litter; and indeed ſo I was. Yet Victory to me half dead, is better than to be vanquiſhed ſafe and ſound. For to die with Honour, is preferable to living with Diſgrace.

CHAP. XXIV.

Uther, *upon drinking Spring-Water that was treacherouſly poiſoned by the* Saxons, *dies.*

THE *Saxons* notwithſtanding this Defeat, perſiſted ſtill in their Malice, and entring the Northern Provinces, without Reſpite infeſted the People there. *Uthers* full

Digitized by Google

full Purpose was to have pursued them; but his Princes dissuaded him from it, because his Illness was increased since the Victory. This gave new Courage to the Enemy, who left nothing unattempted to make Conquest of the Kingdom. And now they have Recourse to their former treacherous Practises, and contrive how to compass the Kings Death by secret Villany. And because they could have no Access to him otherwise, they resolved to take him off by Poison; in which they succeeded. For while he was lying ill at *Verolam*, they sent away some Spies in a poor Habit, to learn the State of the Court: And when they had throughly informed themselves of the Posture of Affairs, they found out an Expedient by which they might best accomplish their Villany. For there was near the Court a Spring of very clear Water, which the King used to drink of, when his Distemper had made all other Liquors nauseous to him. This the detestable Conspirators made use of to destroy him, by so poisoning the whole Mass of Water which sprung up, that the next Time the King drunk of it, he was seized with sudden Death; as were also a hundred other Persons after him, till the Villany was discovered, and a Heap of Earth thrown over the Well. As soon as the Kings Death was divulged, the Bishops

Digitized by Google

and Clergy of the Kingdom assembled, and carried his Body to the Convent of *Ambrius*, where they buried it with Regal Solemnity, close by *Aurelius Ambrosius*, within the the Giants Dance.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE

British History.

The Ninth Book.

CHAP. I.

Arthur *succeeds* Uther *his Father in the Kingdom of* Britain, *and beſieges* Colgrin.

UTHER *Pendragon* being dead, the Nobility from ſeveral Provinces aſſembled together at *Cilceſtre*, and propoſed to *Dubricius* Archbiſhop of *Legions*, that he ſhould conſecrate *Arthur*, *Uthers* Son, for their King. For they were now under great Straits, becauſe upon hearing of the Kings Death, the

Digitized by Google

Saxons had invited over their Countrymen from *Germany*, and under the Command of *Colgrin*, were attempting to rout out the whole *British* Race. They had also entirely subdued all that Part of the Island which extends from the *Humber*, to the Sea of *Cathness*. *Dubricius* therefore grieving for the Calamities of his Country, did in Conjunction with the other Bishops set the Crown upon *Arthurs* Head. *Arthur* was then fifteen Years old, but a Youth of such unparallelled Courage and Generosity, joined with that Sweetness of Temper and innate Goodness, as gained him an universal Love. When his Coronation was over, he according to usual Custom shew'd his Bounty and Munificence to the People. And such a Number of Soldiers flocked to him upon it, that his Treasury was not able to answer that vast Expence. But such a Spirit of Generosity, joined with Valour, can never long want Means to support itself. *Arthur* therefore the better to keep up his Munificence, resolved to make use of his Courage, and to fall upon the *Saxons*, that he might enrich his Followers with their Wealth. To this he was also moved by the Justice of the Cause, since the entire Monarchy of *Britain* belonged to him by Hereditary Right. Hereupon assembling the Youth under his Command, he marched to *York*; of which when *Colgrin* had Intelligence, he met him with a very

Digitized by Google

a very great Army, compoſed of *Saxons*, *Scots*, and *Picts*, by the River *Duglas*; where a Battle happened, with the Loſs of the greater Part of both Armies. Notwithſtanding the Victory fell to *Arthur*, who purſued *Colgrin* to *York*, and there beſieged him. *Baldulph* upon the News of his Brothers Flight, went towards the Siege with a Body of ſix thouſand Men, to his Relief: For at the Time of the Battle he was upon the Sea-Coaſt, waiting the Arrival of Duke *Cheldric* with Succours from *Germany*. And being now no more than ten Miles diſtant from the City, his Purpoſe was to make a ſpeedy March in the Night-Time, and fall upon the Enemy by Way of Surprize. But *Arthur* having Intelligence of his Deſign, ſent out a Detachment of ſix hundred Horſe, and three thouſand Foot, under the Command of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, to meet him the ſame Night. *Cador* therefore falling into the ſame Road along which the Enemy was paſſing, made a ſudden Aſſault upon them, and entirely defeated the *Saxons*, and put them to Flight. *Baldulph* was exceſſively grieved at this Diſappointment in the Relief he intended his Brother, and began to think of ſome other Stratagem to gain Acceſs to him; in which if he could but ſucceed, he thought they might concert Meaſures together for their Safety. And ſince he had no other Way for it, he ſhaved

Digitized by Google

his Head and Beard, and put on the Habit of a Jester with a Harp, and in this Disguise walked up and down in the Camp, playing upon his Instrument as if he had been a Harper. In this Disguise he passed unsuspected, and by little and little went up to the Walls of the City; where he was at last discovered by the Besieged, who thereupon drew him up with Cords, and conducted him to his Brother. At this unexpected, though much desired Meeting, they spent some Time in joyfully embracing each other; and then began to consider various Stratagems for their Delivery. At last, just as they were concluding their Case desperate, the Ambassadors returned from *Germany*, and had brought along with them to *Albania* a Fleet of six hundred Sail, laden with brave Soldiers, under the Command of *Cheldric*. Upon this News, *Arthur* was dissuaded by his Council from continuing the Siege any longer, for fear of hazarding a Battle with so potent and numerous an Army.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. II.

Hoel *ſends fifteen thouſand Men to* Arthurs *Aſſiſtance.*

ARTHUR comply'd with their Advice, and then made his Retreat to *London*, where he called together an Aſſembly of all the Clergy and Nobility of the Kingdom, to ask their Advice, what Courſe to take againſt ſuch a formidable Power of the Pagans. After ſome Deliberation, it was agreed, that Ambaſſadors ſhould be diſpatched away into *Armorica*, to King *Hoel*, to repreſent to him the Calamitous State of *Britain*. *Hoel* was the Son of *Arthurs* Siſter by *Dubricius* King of the *Armorican Britains*; ſo that upon Advice of the Diſturbances his Unkle was threatned with, he ordered his Fleet to be got ready, and having aſſembled together fifteen thouſand Men, he arrived with the firſt fair Wind at *Hamo's* Port; and was received with all ſuitable Honour by *Arthur*, and moſt affectionately embraced by him.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. III.

Arthur *makes the* Saxons *his Tributaries.*

AFTER a few Days they go to the City *Kaerliudcoit*, that was beſieged by the Pagans; which being ſituated upon a Mountain, between two Rivers in the Province of *Lindiſia*, is called by another Name *Lindocolinum*. As ſoon as they arrived there with all their Forces, they fought with the *Saxons*, and made a grievous Slaughter of them, to the Number of ſix thouſand; Part of whom were drowned in the Rivers, Part fell by the Hands of the *Britains*. The reſt in a great Conſternation quitted the Siege and fled, but were cloſely purſued by *Arthur*, till they came to the Wood of *Caledon*, where they endeavoured to form themſelves into a Body again, and make a Stand. And here they again join Battle with the *Britains*, and make a brave Defence, the Trees that were in the Place ſecuring them againſt the Enemies Arrows. *Arthur* ſeeing this, commanded the Trees that were in that Part of the Wood to be cut down, and the Trunks to be placed quite round them, ſo as to hinder their getting out; as reſolving to keep them pent up here

Digitized by Google

here till he could reduce them by Famine. Which done, he commanded his Troops to beſiege the Wood, and continued three Days in that Place. The *Saxons* having now no Proviſions to ſuſtain them, and being juſt ready to ſtarve with Hunger, begged for Leave to go out; in Conſideration whereof they offered to leave all their Gold and Silver behind them, and return back to *Germany* with nothing but their empty Ships. They promiſed alſo that they would pay him Tribute from *Germany*, and leave Hoſtages with him. *Arthur* after Conſultation about it, granted their Petition; allowing them only Leave to depart, and retaining all their Treaſures, as alſo Hoſtages for Payment of the Tribute. But as they were under Sail in their Return Home, they repented of their Bargain, and ſo tacked about to make again towards *Britain*, and went on Shore at *Totneſs*. And no ſooner were they landed, than they made an utter Devaſtation of the Country as far as the *Severn* Sea, and put all the Peaſants to the Sword. From thence they purſued their furious March to the Town of *Badon*, and laid Siege to it. When the King had Intelligence of it, he was beyond Meaſure ſurprized at their heinous Proceedings, and immediately gave Orders for the Execution of the Hoſtages. And deſiſting from an Attempt he had entred upon to reduce the

Scots

Digitized by Google

Scots and *Picts*, he marched with the utmoſt Expedition to raiſe the Siege; but laboured under very great Difficulties, becauſe he had left his Nephew *Hoel* ſick at *Alclud*. At length having entred the Province of *Somerſet*, and beheld how the Siege was carried on, he addreſſed himſelf to his Followers in theſe Words; "Since theſe moſt impious and deteſtable *Saxons*, have diſdained to keep Faith with me, I, to keep Faith with God, will endeavour to revenge the Blood of my Countrymen this Day upon them. To Arms, Soldiers, to Arms, and courageouſly fall upon theſe perfidious Wretches; over whom we ſhall, with *Chriſt* aſſiſting us, undoubtedly obtain the Victory.

CHAP. IV.

Dubricius's *Speech againſt the treacherous* Saxons. Arthur *with his own Hand kills four hundred and ſeventy* Saxons *in one Battle.* Colgrin *and* Baldulph *are killed in the ſame.*

WHEN he had done ſpeaking, St. *Dubricius* Archbiſhop of *Legions*, getting upon the Top of a Hill, cry'd out with a loud

Digitized by Google

loud Voice; "You that have the Honour "to profess the *Christian* Faith, keep fixed "in your Minds the Piety you owe your "Country and Fellow Subjects, whose Suf- "ferings by the Treachery of the Pagans, "will be an everlasting Reproach to you, "if you do not couragiously defend them. "'Tis your Country you fight for, and for "which you should when required volun- "tarily suffer Death: For that itself is Victo- "ry, and the Cure of the Soul. For he "that shall die for his Brethren, offers him- "self a living Sacrifice to God, and has "Christ for his Example, who condescend- "to lay down his Life for his Brethren. If "therefore any of you shall be killed in this "War, that Death itself which is suffered "in so glorious a Cause, shall be to him "for Penance and Absolution of all his "Sins." At these Words, all of them, encouraged with the Benediction of the holy Prelate, instantly armed themselves, and prepared to obey his Orders. Also *Arthur* himself having put on a Coat of Mail suita- ble to the Grandeur of so potent a King, fits his golden Helmet upon his Head, on which was engraven the Figure of a Dragon; and on his Shoulders his Shield called *Priwen*; upon which the Picture of the blessed *Mary* Mother of God being drawn, put him fre- quently in Mind of her. Then girding on his *Caliburn*, which was an excellent Sword made

Digitized by Google

made in the Isle of *Avallon*, he graced his right Hand with his Lance, named *Ron*, which was hard, broad, and fit for Slaughter. After this having placed his Men in Order, he boldly attacked the *Saxons*, who were drawn out Wedge-wise, as their Manner was. And they, notwithstanding that the *Britains* fought with great Eagerness, made a noble Defence all that Day; but at length towards Sun-setting, climb'd up to the next Mountain, which served them for a Camp: For they desired no larger Extent of Ground, since they confided very much in their Numbers. The next Morning *Arthur* with his Army goes up the Mountain, but lost many of his Men in the Ascent, by the Advantage the *Saxons* had in their Station on the Top, from whence they could pour down upon him with much greater speed, than he was able to advance against them. Notwithstanding after a very hard struggle the *Britains* gain the Summit of the Hill, and quickly come to a close Engagement with the Enemy, who again gave them a warm Reception, and made a very vigorous Defence. In this Manner was a great Part of that Day also spent; at which *Arthur*, provoked to see the little Advantage he had yet gained, and that Victory still continued in suspence, drew out his *Caliburn*, and calling upon the Name of the blessed Virgin, rushed forward with great

Digitized by Google

great Violence into the thickeſt of the Enemies Ranks; of whom (ſuch was the Merit of his Prayers,) not one eſcaped alive that felt the Fury of his Sword; neither did he give over the Fury of the Aſſault, before he had with his *Caliburn* alone killed four hundred and ſeventy Men. The *Britains* ſeeing this, follow their Leader in great Crowds, and make Slaughter on all Sides; ſo that *Colgrin* and *Baldulph* his Brother, and many thouſands more fell before them. But *Cheldric*, upon this imminent Danger of his Men, betook himſelf to Flight.

CHAP. V.

The Saxons, *after their Leader* Cheldric *was killed, are all compelled by* Cador *to ſurrender.*

THE Victory being thus gained, the King commanded *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal* to purſue them, while he himſelf would haſten his March into *Albania*; from whence he had Advice, that the *Scots* and *Picts* were beſieging *Alclud*, in which, as we ſaid before, *Hoel* lay ſick. Therefore he haſtened to his Aſſiſtance, for Fear he might fall into the Hands of the Barbarians. In the mean Time the Duke of *Cornwal*, who

Digitized by Google

who had the Command of ten thousand Men, would not as yet pursue the *Saxons* in their Flight, but speedily made himself Master of their Ships, to hinder their getting on board them, and manned them with his best Soldiers, who were to beat back the Pagans in Case they should fly to them: This done, he according to *Arthurs* Command, hastily pursued the Enemy, and allowed no Quarter to those he could overtake. So that they whose Behaviour before was so cruel and insolent, do now with timorous Hearts fly for Shelter, sometimes to the Coverts of the Woods, sometimes to Mountains and Caves, to prolong a wretched Life. At last when none of these Places could afford them a safe Retreat, they enter the Isle of *Thanet* with their broken Forces; but neither do they there get free from the Duke of *Cornwals* Pursuit; who still continued the Slaughter of them, and gave them no Respite till he had killed *Cheldric*, and taken Hostages for the Surrender of the rest.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VI.

Arthur *grants a Pardon to the* Scots *and* Picts, *beſieged at the Lake* Lumond.

HAVING therefore ſettled Peace here, he directed his March to *Alclud*, which *Arthur* had relieved from the Oppreſſion of Barbarians, and from thence conducted his Army to *Mureif*, where the *Scots* and *Picts* were beſieged; who after three ſeveral Battles with the King and his Nephew, had fled as far as this Province, and entring upon the Lake *Lumond*, ſought for Refuge in the Iſlands that are upon it. This Lake contains ſixty Iſlands, and receives ſixty Rivers into it, which empty themſelves into the Sea by no more than one Mouth. Equal to the Number of the Iſlands, is that of the Rocks in them, as alſo of the Eagles Neſts in thoſe Rocks, who flocked together there every Year, and by the loud and general Noiſe they made, foreboded ſome remarkable Event that ſhould happen in the Kingdom. To theſe Iſlands therefore had the Enemy fled, thinking the Lake would ſerve them inſtead of a Fortification, but it proved of little Advantage to them. For *Arthur* having got together

Digitized by Google

gether a Fleet, ſailed round the Rivers, and beſieged the Enemy fifteen Days together, by which they were ſo ſtraitned with Hunger, that they died by thouſands. While he was infeſting them in this Manner, *Guillamurius* King of *Ireland*, came up in a Fleet with a very great Army of Barbarians, in order to relieve the Beſieged. This obliged *Arthur* to raiſe the Siege, and turn his Arms againſt the *Iriſh*, whom he ſlew without Mercy, and compelled the reſt to return back to their Country. After this Victory, he proceeded in his firſt Attempt, which was to extirpate the whole Race of the *Scots* and *Picts*, and treated them with an unparallelled Severity. And as he allow'd Quarter to none he found, therefore the Biſhops of that miſerable Country, with all the inferior Clergy, met together, and bearing the Reliques of the Saints, and other Conſecrated Things of the Church before them, bare-footed, they went to implore the Kings Mercy for their People. As ſoon as they were admitted into his Preſence, they fell down upon their Knees, and humbly beſought him to have Pity on their diſtreſſed Country, ſince the Sufferings he had already made it undergo, were ſufficient; nor was there any Neceſſity to cut off the ſmall Remainder to a Man; and that he would allow them the Enjoyment of a ſmall Part of the Country, ſince they were willing

Digitized by Google

ling to bear the Yoke he should impose upon them. The King was moved at the Manner of their delivering this Petition, and could not forbear expressing his Clemency to them with Tears; and at the Request of those Holy Men, granted them Pardon.

CHAP. VII.

Arthur *relates the wonderful Nature of some Ponds.*

THIS Affair being concluded, *Hoel* had the Curiosity to view the Situation of the Lake, and wondred to find the Number of the Rivers, Islands, Rocks, and Eagles Nests, so exactly correspond: And while he was reflecting upon it as something that appeared miraculous, *Arthur* came to him, and told him of another Pond in the same Province, which was yet more wonderful. For not far from thence was one whose Length and Breadth were each twenty Foot, and Depth five Foot. But whether its square Figure was Natural or Artificial, the Thing that was admirable in it, was the four different Sorts of Fishes in the four several Corners of it, none of which were ever found in any other Part of the Pond but their own. He told him likewise

Digitized by Google

wiſe of another Pond in *Wales*, near the *Severn*, called by the Country People *Linligwan*, into which when the Sea flows, it receives it in manner of a Gulph, but ſo as to ſwallow up the Tide, and never be filled, or have its Banks covered by it. But at the Ebbing of the Sea, it belches out the Waters it had ſwallowed up, as high as a Mountain, and at laſt daſhes and covers the Banks with them. In the mean Time, if all the People of that Country ſhould ſtand near with their Faces towards it, and happen to have their Clothes ſprinkled with the daſhing of the Waves, they would hardly, if at all, eſcape being ſwallowed up of the Pond. But with their Backs towards it, they need not fear being daſhed, though they ſtood upon the very Banks.

CHAP. VIII.

Arthur *reſtores* York *to its ancient Beauty, eſpecially as to its Churches.*

THE King after his general Pardon granted to the *Scots*, went to *York* to celebrate the Feaſt of Chriſts Nativity, which was now at Hand. At his entring the City, he beheld with Grief the Deſolation of the Churches;

Digitized by Google

Churches; for upon the Expulsion of the Holy Archbishop *Sanxo*, and of all the Clergy there, the Temples which were half burnt down, had no longer Divine Service performed in them: So much had the impious Rage of the Pagans prevailed. After this, in an Assembly which he called of the Clergy and People, he appointed *Pyramus* his Chaplain Metropolitan of that See. The Churches that lay level with the Ground, he rebuilt, and which was their chief Ornament, saw them filled with Assemblies of devout Persons of both Sexes. Also the Nobility that were driven out by the Disturbances of the *Saxons*, he restored to the Honours of their Country.

CHAP. IX.

Arthur *bonours* Augusel *with the Sceptre of the* Scots; Urian *with that of* Mureif; *and* Lot *with the Consulship of* Londonesia.

THERE were there three Brothers of Royal Blood, *viz. Lot*, *Urian*, and *Augusel*, who before the *Saxons* had prevailed, held the Government of those Parts. Being willing therefore to bestow on these, as he did

Digitized by Google

on others, the Rights of their Anceſtors, he reſtored to *Auguſel* the Sovereignty over the *Scots*; his Brother *Urian* he honoured with the Sceptre of *Mureif*; and *Lot*, who in the Time of *Aurelius Ambroſius* had married his Siſter, by whom he had two Sons, *Walgan* and *Modred*, he re-eſtabliſhed in the Conſulſhip of *Londoneſia*, and the other Provinces belonging to him. At length when the whole Country was reduced by him to its ancient State, he took to Wife *Guanhumara*, deſcended from a Noble Family of *Romans*, who was educated under Duke *Cador*, and in Beauty ſurpaſſed all the Women of the Iſland.

CHAP. X.

Arthur *adds to his Government* Ireland, Iſeland, Godland, *and the* Orkneys.

THE next Summer he fitted out a Fleet, and made an Expedition into *Ireland*, which he was deſirous to reduce. Upon his landing there, he was met by King *Guillamurius* before mentioned, with a vaſt Number of Men, who came with a Deſign to fight him; but at the very Beginning of the Battle, thoſe naked and unarmed People being

Digitized by Google

being miſerably diſperſed and routed, quickly fled to ſuch Places as lay open to them for ſhelter. *Guillamurius* alſo in a ſhort Time was taken Priſoner, and forced to ſubmit; as were alſo all the other Princes of the Country after the Kings Example, being under great Conſternation for what had happened. After an entire Conqueſt of all the Parts of *Ireland*, he made a Voyage with his Fleet to *Iſeland*, which he alſo ſubdued. And now a Rumour ſpreading over the reſt of the Iſlands, that no Country was able to withſtand him, *Doldavius* King of *Godland*, and *Gunfaſius* King of the *Orkneys*, came voluntarily, and made their Submiſſion, with a Promiſe of paying Tribute. Then as ſoon as Winter was over, he returned back to *Britain*, where eſtabliſhing the Kingdom in a firm State of Peace, he reſided in it for twelve Years together.

CHAP. XI.

Arthur *ſubdues* Norway, Dacia, Aquitain, *and* Gaul.

AFTER this, having invited over to him all Perſons whatſoever that were Famous for Valour in Foreign Nations, he began to augment the Number of his

Digitized by Google

Domesticks, and introduced such Politeness into his Court, as People of the remotest Countries thought worthy their Imitation. So that there was not a Nobleman who thought himself of any Consideration, unless his Clothes and Arms were made in the same Fashion as those of *Arthurs* Knights. At length the Fame of his Munificence and Valour spreading over the whole World, he became a Terror to the Kings of other Countries, who grievously feared the Loss of their Dominions, if he should make any Attempt upon them. Being much perplexed with these anxious Cares, they repaired their Cities and Towers, and built Towns in convenient Places, the better to fortify themselves against any Enterprize of *Arthur*, when Occasion should require. *Arthur* upon Information of the Dispositions they were making, was delighted to find how much they stood in Awe of him, and formed a Design for the Conquest of all *Europe*. Then having prepared his Fleet, the first Place he attempted was *Norway*, that he might procure the Crown of it for *Lot* his Sisters Husband. This *Lot* was the Nephew of *Sichelin*, King of the *Norwegians*, who being then dead, had appointed him his Successor in the Kingdom. But the *Norwegians* disdaining to receive him, had advanced one *Riculf* to the Sovereignty, and having fortified their Cities, thought they were able to oppose

Digitized by Google

oppose *Arthur*. *Walgan* the Son of *Lot*, was then a Youth twelve Years old, and was recommended by his Unkle to the Servide of Pope *Suplicius*, from whom he received Arms. But to return to the Story; as soon as *Arthur* arrived at the Coast of *Norway*, King *Riculf* attended with the whole Power of that Kingdom met him, and gave him Battle, in which after a great Loss of Blood on both Sides, the *Britains* at length had the Advantage, who making a vigorous Push, killed *Riculf* and many others with him. Having thus defeated them, they set the Cities on Fire, dispersed the Country People, and pursued the Victory till they had reduced all *Norway*, as also *Dacia*, under the Dominion of *Arthur*. After the Conquest of these Countries, and Establishment of *Lot* upon the Throne of *Norway*, *Arthur* made a Voyage to *Gaul*, and dividing his Army into several Bodies, began to lay waste that Country on all Sides. The Province of *Gaul* was then committed to *Flollo*, a *Roman* Tribune, who held the Government of it under the Emperor *Leo*. Upon Intelligence of *Arthurs* coming, he raised all the Forces that were under his Command, and made War against him, but without Success. For *Arthur* was attended with the Youth of all the Islands he had subdued; for which Reason he was reported to have such an Army as was thought

Digitized by Google

invincible. And even the greater Part of the *Gallican* Army, being encouraged by his Bounty, came over to his Service. Therefore *Flollo* seeing the Disadvantages he lay under, left his Camp, and fled with a small Number to *Paris*. There having recruited his Army, he fortified the City, and resolved to stand another Engagement with *Arthur*. But while he was thinking of strengthning himself with Auxiliary Forces in the neighbouring Countries, *Arthur* came upon him unawares, and besieged him in the City. A Month was now past, when *Flollo* with Grief observing his People perish with Hunger, sent a Message to *Arthur*, that they two alone should decide the Contest for the Kingdom in a Duel: For being a Person of great Stature, Boldness and Courage, he gave this Challenge in great Confidence of Success. *Arthur* was extreamly pleased at *Flollo*'s Proposal, and sent him Word back again, that he would give him the Meeting he desired. A Treaty therefore being on both Sides agreed to, they met together in the Island without the City, where the People waited to see the Event. They were both gracefully Armed, and mounted on admirable swift Horses; and it was hard to tell which gave greater Hopes of Victory. When they had presented themselves against each other with their Lances bore aloft, they forthwith put Spurs to their Horses,

and

Digitized by Google

and began a fierce Encounter. But *Arthur* who handled his Lance more warily, ſtruck it into the upper Part of *Flollo*'s Breaſt, and avoiding his Weapon, with all his Might laid him proſtrate upon the Ground, and was juſt going to diſpatch him with his drawn Sword. But *Flollo* ſtarting up on a ſudden, met him with his Lance couched, wherewith he mortally ſtabbed the Breaſt of *Arthurs* Horſe, and cauſed both him and his Rider to fall. The *Britains* when they ſaw their King lying proſtrate on the Ground, fearing he was killed, could hardly be reſtrained from Breach of Covenant, and falling with one Conſent upon the *Gauls*. But juſt as they were upon ruſhing into the Liſts, *Arthur* haſtily got up, and guarding himſelf with his Shield, advanced with Speed againſt *Flollo*. And now they renew the Aſſault with great Rage, being eagerly bent upon one anothers Deſtruction. At length *Flollo* watching his Advantage, gave *Arthur* a Blow upon the Forehead, which might have proved mortal, had he not blunted the Edge of his Weapon, by ſtriking it againſt the Helmet. When *Arthur* ſaw his Coat of Mail and Shield all red with the Blood guſhing out, he was inflamed with ſtill greater Rage, and lifting up his *Caliburn* with his utmoſt Strength, ſtruck it quite through the Helmet into *Flollo*'s Head, in which he made a terrible Gaſh. With this

Digitized by Google

this Wound *Flollo* fell down, beat the Ground with his Spurs, and expired. As soon as this was noised through the Army, the Citizens ran together, and opening the Gates, surrendred the City to *Arthur*. After the Victory, he divided his Army into two Parts, one of which he committed to the Conduct of *Hoel*, whom he ordered to march against *Guitard*, Commander of the *Pictavians*; while he with the other Part should endeavour to reduce the other Provinces. *Hoel* upon this entred *Aquitain*, possessed himself of the Cities of that Country, and after distressing *Guitard* in several Battles, forced him to surrender. He also destroy'd *Gascony* with Fire and Sword, and subdued the Princes of it. At the End of nine Years, in which Time all the Parts of *Gaul* were entirely reduced, *Arthur* returned back to *Paris*, where he kept his Court, and calling an Assembly of the Clergy and People, settled Peace and Administration of the Laws in that Kingdom. Then he bestowed *Neustria*, now called *Normandy*, upon *Bedver* his Butler; the Province of *Andegavia* upon *Caius* his Sewer, and several other Provinces upon his great Men that attended him. Thus having settled the Peace of the Cities and Countries there, he returned back in the Beginning of the Spring to *Britain*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XII.

Arthur summons a great many Kings, Princes, Archbishops, &c. to a Solemn Assembly at the City of Legions.

UPON the Approach of the Feast of Pentecost, *Arthur*, the better to demonstrate his Joy after such triumphant Success, and for the more solemn Observation of that Festival, and reconciling the Minds of the Princes that were now subject to him, resolved during that Season, to hold a magnificent Court, to place the Crown upon his Head, and to invite all the Kings and Dukes under his Subjection, to the Solemnity. And when he had communicated his Design to his familiar Friends, he pitched upon the City of *Legions* as a proper Place for his Purpose. For besides the great Wealth of it above the other Cities, its Situation, which was in *Glamorganshire* upon the River *Uske* near the *Severn* Sea, was most pleasant, and fit for so great a Solemnity. For on one Side it was washed by that noble River, so that the Kings and Princes from the Countries beyond the Seas, might have the Convenience of sailing up to it. On the other Side the Beauty of the Meadows

Digitized by Google

Meadows and Groves, and Magnificence of the Royal Palaces with lofty gilded Roofs that adorned it, made it even rival the Grandeur of *Rome*. It was also famous for two Churches, whereof one was built in Honour of the Martyr *Julius*, and adorned with a Choir of Virgins, who had devoted themselves wholly to the Service of God; but the other, which was founded in Memory of St. *Aaron* his Companion, and maintained a Convent of Canons, was the third Metropolitan Church of *Britain*. Besides there was a College of two hundred Philosophers, who being learned in Astronomy and the other Arts, were diligent in observing the Courses of the Stars, and gave *Arthur* true Predictions of the Events that would happen at that Time. In this Place therefore affording such Plenty of Delights, were Preparations made for the ensuing Festival. Then Ambassadors were sent away into several Kingdoms, to invite to Court the Princes both of *Gaul* and all the adjacent Islands. Accordingly there came *Augusel* King of *Albania*, now *Scotland*; *Urian* King of *Mureif*; *Cadwallo Lewirh* King of the *Venedotians*, now called the *North-Wales* Men; *Sater* King of the *Demetians*, or *South-Wales* Men; *Cador* King of *Cornwal*; also the Archbishops of the three Metropolitan Sees, *London*, *York*, and *Dubricius* of the City of *Legions*. This Prelate, who was

was Primate of *Britain*, and Legate of the Apoſtolical See, was ſo eminent for his Piety, that by his Prayers he could cure any ſick Perſon. There came alſo the Conſuls of the principal Cities, *viz.* *Morvid* Conſul of *Gloceſter*, *Mauron* of *Worceſter*, *Amaraun* of *Salisbury*, *Arthgal* of *Cargueit* or *Warguit*, *Jugein* of *Leiceſter*, *Curſalen* of *Kaiceſter*, *Kinmare* Duke of *Dorobernia*, *Gallus* of *Salisbury*, *Urgennius* of *Badon*, *Jonathal* of *Dorcheſter*, *Boſo* of *Ridoc*, that is, *Oxford*. Beſides the Conſuls, came the following Worthies of no leſs Dignity; *Danaut*, *Map papo*; *Chenteus*, *Map coil*; *Peredur*, *Mab eridur*; *Guiſul*, *Map Nogoit*; *Regin*, *Map claut*; *Eddelein*, *Map cledauc*, *Kincar*, *Mab pagan*; *Kinmare*; *Gorboroniam*, *Map goit*; *Clofaut*, *Rupmaneton*; *Kimbelim*, *Map trunat*; *Catleus*, *Mapcatel*; *Kinlich*, *Map neton*; and many others too tedious to enumerate. From the adjacent Iſlands came *Guillamurius* King of *Ireland*, *Malvaſius* King of *Iſeland*, *Doldavius* King of *Godland*, *Gunfaſius* King of the *Orkneys*, *Lot* King of *Norway*, *Aſchillius* King of the *Dacians*. From the Parts beyond the Seas, came *Holdin* King of *Ruteni*, *Leodegarius* Conſul of *Bolonia*, *Bedver* the Butler Duke of *Normandy*, *Borellus* of *Cenomania*, *Caius* the Sewer Duke of *Andegavia*, *Guitard* of *Pictavia*; alſo the twelve Peers of *Gaul*, whom *Guerinus Carnotenſis* brought along with him: *Hoel* Duke of the *Armorican Britains*,

Digitized by Google

tains, and his Nobility, who came with such a Train of Mules, Horses, and rich Furniture, as is hard to describe. Besides these, there remained no Prince of any Consideration on this Side of *Spain*, who came not upon this Invitation. And no Wonder, when *Arthurs* Munificence, which was celebrated over the whole World, made him beloved by all People.

CHAP. XIII.

A Description of the Royal Pomp at the Coronation of Arthur.

WHEN all were assembled together in the City, upon the Day of the Solemnity the Archbishops were conducted to the Palace, in Order to place the Crown upon the Kings Head. Therefore *Dubricius*, in Regard the Court was kept in his Diocess, made himself ready to celebrate the Office, and undertook the Ordering of whatever related to it. As soon as the King was invested with his royal Habiliments, he was conducted in great Pomp to the Metropolitan Church, being supported on each Side by two Archbishops, and having four Kings, *viz.* of *Albania*, *Cornwal*, *Demetia*, and *Venedotia*, whose Right it was, bearing four Golden

Digitized by Google

Golden Swords before him. He was also attended with a Consort of all sorts of Musick, which made most excellent Harmony. From another Part was the Queen, being dressed out in her richest Ornaments, conducted by the Archbishops and Bishops to the Temple of Virgins; the four Queens also of the Kings last mentioned, bearing before her four white Doves according to ancient Custom; and after her there followed a Retinue of Women, giving all imaginable Demonstrations of Joy. When the whole Procession was ended, so transporting was the Harmony of the musical Instruments and Voices, whereof there was a vast variety in both Churches, that the Knights who attended were in Suspence which to prefer, and therefore crowded from the one to the other by Turns, and were far from being tired with the Solemnity, though the whole Day had been spent in it. At last when Divine Service was over at both Churches, the King and Queen put off their Crowns, and putting on their lighter Ornaments, go to the Banquet; he to one Palace with the Men, and she to another with the Women. For the *Britains* still observing the ancient Custom of *Troy*, the Men and Women used to celebrate their Festivals apart. When they had all taken their Seats according to their Precedence, *Caius* the Sewer, in rich Robes of Ermine, with

Digitized by Google

with a thousand young Noblemen, all in like manner clothed with Ermine, served up the Dishes. From another Part, *Bedver* the Butler was followed with the same Number of Attendants, in Variety of Habits, who waited with all Kinds of Cups and drinking Vessels. In the Queens Palace were innumerable Waiters, dressed with Variety of Ornaments, all performing their respective Offices; which if I should describe particularly, I should draw out the History to a tedious Length. For at that Time *Britain* was arrived to such a Pitch of Grandeur, that whether we respect its Affluence of Riches, Luxury of Ornaments, or Politeness of Inhabitants, it far surpassed all other Kingdoms. The Knights in it that were famous for Feats of Chivalry, wore their Clothes and Arms all of the same Colour and Fashion: And the Women also no less celebrated for their Wit, wore all the same Kind of Apparel; and esteemed none worthy of their Love, but such as had given a Proof of their Valour in three several Battles. Thus was the Valour of the Men an Encouragement for the Womens Chastity, and the Love of the Women a Spur to the Soldiers Bravery.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIV.

After a Variety of Sports at the Coronation, Arthur *moſt amply rewards his Servants.*

AS ſoon as the Banquets were over, they went into the Fields without the City, to divert themſelves with various Kinds of Sports. The military Men compoſed a Kind of Diverſion in Imitation of a Fight on Horſeback; and the Ladies being placed on the Top of the Walls as Spectators, in a ſportive Manner darted their amorous Glances at the Courtiers, the more to encourage them. Others ſpent the Remainder of the Day in other Diverſions, as ſhooting with Bows and Arrows, toſſing the Pike, caſting of heavy Stones and Rocks, Playing at Dice and the like, and all theſe inoffenſively and without quarrelling. Whoever gained the Victory in any of theſe Sports, was rewarded with a rich Prize by *Arthur*. In this Manner were the firſt three Days ſpent, and on the fourth all that upon Account of their Titles, bore any Kind of Office at this Solemnity, were called together to receive Honours and Preferments in Reward of their Services, and to fill up the Vacancies in the Governments of Cities and

Digitized by Google

Caſtles, Archbiſhopricks, Biſhopricks, Abbeys, and other Poſts of Honour.

CHAP. XV.

A Letter from Lucius Tiberius, *General of the* Romans, *to* Arthur *being read, they conſult about an Anſwer to it.*

BUT St. *Dubricius* out of a pious Deſire of leading a Hermits Life, made a voluntary Reſignation of his Archiepiſcopal Dignity; and in his Room was Conſecrated *David* the Kings Unkle, whoſe Life was a perfect Example of that Goodneſs which by his Doctrine he taught. In the Place of St. *Samſon* Archbiſhop of *Dole*, was appointed *Chelianus* a famous Prieſt of *Landaff*, with the Conſent of *Hoel* King of the *Armorican Britains*, this Perſon being highly recommended for his good Life and Character. The Biſhoprick of *Silceſtre* was conferred upon *Mauganius*, that of *Wincheſter* upon *Diwanius*, and that of *Alclud* upon *Eledanius*. While he was diſpoſing of theſe Preferments among them, it happened that twelve Men of an advanced Age, and venerable Aſpect, and bearing Olive Branches in their Right

Digitized by Google

Right Hands, for a Token that they were come upon an Embassy, made their Entry to the King, moving towards him with a slow Pace, and speaking with a soft Voice; and after their Complements paid, presented him with a Letter from *Lutius Tiberius*, in these Words.

" *Lucius*, Procurator of the Common-
" wealth, to *Arthur* King of *Britain*, ac-
" cording to his Desert. The Insolence of
" your Tyranny is what fills me with the
" highest Admiration; and the Injuries you
" have done to *Rome*, still increase my
" Wonder. But it is provoking to reflect,
" that you are grown so much above your-
" self, as wilfully to avoid seeing this; nor
" do you consider what it is to have offend-
" ed by unjust Deeds a Senate, to whom
" you cannot be ignorant the whole World
" owes Vassalage. For the Tribute of *Bri-*
" *tain*, which the Senate had enjoined you
" to pay, and which used to be paid to the
" *Roman* Emperors successively from the
" Time of *Julius Cæsar*, you have had the
" Presumption to detain in Contempt of
" their Imperial Authority. You have
" seized upon the Province of the *Allobroges*,
" and all the Islands of the Ocean, whose
" Kings, while the *Roman* Power prevail-
" ed in those Parts, paid Tribute to our
" Ancestors. And because the Senate have

Digitized by Google

" decreed to demand Justice of you for such " repeated Injuries, I command you to ap- " pear at *Rome* before the Middle of *August* " the next Year, there to make Satisfaction " to your Masters, and undergo such Sen- " tence as they shall in Justice pass upon " you. Which if you refuse to do, I shall " come to you, and endeavour to recover " with my Sword, what you in your Mad- " ness have robbed us of.

As soon as the Letter was read in the Presence of the Kings and Consuls, *Arthur* withdrew with them into the Giants Tower, which was at the Entrance of the Palace, to treat of such an Answer as was fit to be returned to such an insolent Message. As they were going up the Stairs, *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, who was a Man of a merry Disposition, said to the King in a jocose Manner; " I have been till now under Fear, lest " the easy Life the *Britains* lead, by enjoy- " ing a long Peace, might make them Cow- " ards, and extinguish the Fame of their " Gallantry, by which they have raised " their Name above all other Nations. For " where the Exercise of Arms is wanting, " and the Pleasures of Women, Dice, and " other Diversions take Place, no Doubt " the Remains of Vertue, Honour, Courage, " and Thirst of Praise, will be stained with " the Rust of Idleness. For now almost five " Years

Digitized by Google

" Years have passed, since we have been " abandoned to these Delights, and have " had no Exercise of War. Therefore to " deliver us from Sloth, God has stirred up " this Spirit of the *Romans*, who are to re- " store our Military Virtues to their ancient " State." In this Manner did he entertain them with Discourse, till they were come to their Seats, on which when they were all placed, *Arthur* spoke to them after this manner.

CHAP. XVI.

Arthur *holding a Council with the Kings, desires every one of them to deliver their Opinions.*

" MY Companions both in good and " bad Fortune, whose Abilities " both in Counsel and War I have hitherto " experienced; the present Exigence of Af- " fairs, after the Message we have received, " requires your careful Deliberation and " prudent Resolutions: For whatever is " wisely concerted, is easily executed. " Therefore we shall be the better able to " bear the Disturbance *Lucius* threatens to " give us, if we unanimously apply our

Digitized by Google

" ſelves to conſider well how to leſſen it.
" In my Opinion we have no great Reaſon
" to fear him, when we reflect upon the
" unjuſt Pretence he makes for demanding
" Tribute of us. He ſays he has a Right
" to it, becauſe it was paid to *Julius Cæſar*,
" and his Succeſſors, who invaded *Britain*
" with an Army at the Invitation of the
" ancient *Britains*, upon their quarrelling
" among themſelves, and by Force reduced
" the Country under their Power, when
" weakned by civil Diſſenſion. And be-
" cauſe they gained it in this Manner, they
" had the Injuſtice to take Tribute of it.
" For that can never be poſſeſſed juſtly,
" which is gained by Force and Violence.
" So that he has no reaſonable Grounds to
" pretend we are of Right his Tributaries.
" But ſince he has the Preſumption to make
" an unjuſt Demand of us, we have cer-
" tainly as good Reaſon to demand of him
" the Tribute of *Rome*; and let the longer
" Sword determine the Right of the Cauſe
" between us. For if *Rome* has decreed that
" Tribute ought to be paid to it from *Bri-*
" *tain*, on Account of its having been for-
" merly under the Yoke of *Julius Cæſar*, and
" other *Roman* Emperors: I for the ſame
" Reaſon now decree, that *Rome* ought to
" pay Tribute to me, becauſe my Prede-
" ceſſors formerly held the Government of
" it. For *Belinus*, that moſt glorious King

" of

Digitized by Google

" of the *Britains*, with the Aſſiſtance of his " Brother *Brennus*, Duke of the *Allobroges*, " after they had hanged up twenty Noble " *Romans* in the Middle of the Market-" Place, took their City, and kept Poſſeſſi-" on of it a long Time. Likewiſe *Conſtan-*" *tine* the Son of *Helena*, as alſo *Maximian*, " who were both near of Blood to me, and " both wore the Crown of *Britain*, gained " the Imperial Throne of *Rome*. Do not " you therefore think that we ought to de-" mand Tribute of the *Romans*? As for " *Gaul* and the adjacent Iſlands of the " Ocean, we have no occaſion to return " them any Anſwer, ſince they avoided " defending them, when we attempted to " free them from under their Power." As ſoon as he had done ſpeaking to this Effect, *Hoel* King of the *Armorican Britains*, who had the Precedence of all the reſt, made Anſwer in theſe Words.

CHAP. XVII.

The Opinion of Hoel *King of* Armorica *concerning a War with the* Romans.

" AFTER the moſt profound Deli-" beration that any of us ſhall be " able to make, I think better Advice can-

Digitized by Google

" not be given, than what your Majesty in
" your great Wisdom and Policy now of-
" fers. Your Speech, which was adorned
" with no less Wisdom than Eloquence,
" has superseded all Consultation on our
" Part; and nothing remains for us to do,
" but to admire and gratefully acknow-
" ledge your Majesty's Firmness of Mind,
" and Depth of Policy to which we owe
" such excellent Advice. For if upon this
" Motive you are pleased to make an Ex-
" pediton to *Rome*, I doubt not but it will
" be crowned with glorious Success; since
" it will be undertaken for the Defence of
" our Liberties, and demanding justly of
" our Enemies, what they have unjustly
" demanded of us. For that Person that
" would rob another, deserves to lose his
" own by him against whom the Attempt
" is made. And therefore since the *Romans*
" threatned us with this Injury, it will un-
" doubtedly turn to their own Loss, if we
" can have but an Opportunity of engag-
" ing with them. This is what the *Britains*
" universally desire: This is what we
" have promised us in the *Sibylline* Prophe-
" sies, which expressly declare, that the
" *Roman* Empire shall be obtained by three
" Persons Natives of *Britain*. The Oracle
" is fulfilled in two of them, since it is ma-
" nifest (as your Majesty observed) that
" those two celebrated Princes, *Belinus* and
" *Constantine*,

Digitized by Google

" *Constantine*, governed the *Roman* Empire!
" And now you are the third to whom this
" supreme Dignity is promised. Make
" haste therefore to receive what God makes
" no delay to give you; to subdue those
" who are ready to receive your Yoke;
" and to advance us all, who for your Ad-
" vancement will spare neither Limbs nor
" Life. And that you may accomplish this,
" I my self will attend you in Person with
" ten thousand Men.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Opinion of Augusel.

WHEN *Hoel* concluded his Speech, *Augusel* King of *Albania* declared his good Affection for the Cause after this Manner. " I am not able to express the Joy
" that has transported me, since my Lord
" has declared to us his Designs. For we
" seem to have done nothing by all our
" past Wars with so many and potent
" Princes, if the *Romans* and *Germans* be
" suffered to enjoy Peace, and we not se-
" verely revenge on them the grievous Op-
" pressions they formerly brought upon this
" Country. But now since we are at Li-
" berty to encounter them, I am even

" over-

Digitized by Google

" overwhelmed with Joy and Eagerneſs of " Deſire, to ſee a Battle with them: When " the Blood of thoſe cruel Oppreſſors will " be no leſs acceptable to me, than a Spring " of Water is to one that is parched with " Thirſt. If I ſhall but live to ſee that " Day, how ſweet will be the Wounds " which I ſhall then either receive or give? " Nay, how ſweet even Death itſelf, when " ſuffered in revenging the Injuries done to " our Anceſtors, in defending our Liberties, " and in promoting the Glory of our King? " Let us then begin with theſe Poltrons, " and ſpoil them of all their Trophies, by " making an entire Conqueſt of them. And " I for my ſhare will add to the Army " two thouſand Horſe, beſides Foot.

CHAP. XIX.

They unanimouſly agree upon a War with the Romans.

TO the ſame Effect ſpoke all the reſt, and promiſed each of them their full Quota of Forces: So that beſides thoſe promiſed by the Duke of *Armorica*, the Number of Men from the Iſland of *Britain* alone was ſixty thouſand, all compleatly armed. But the Kings of the other Iſlands, as they had not

Digitized by Google

not been accuſtomed to any Cavalry, promiſed their Quota of Infantry; and from the ſix provincial Iſlands, *viz. Ireland*, *Iſeland*, *Godland*, the *Orkneys*, *Norway*, and *Dacia*, were reckoned a hundred and twenty thouſand. From the Dutchies of *Gaul*, that is, of the *Ruteni*, the *Portuniens*, the *Eſtruſians*, the *Cenomanni*, the *Andegavians*, and *Pictavians*, were eighty thouſand. From the twelve Conſulſhips of thoſe who came along with *Guerinus Carnotenſis*, twelve hundred. All together made up an hundred eighty three thouſand and two hundred, beſides Foot which did not eaſily fall under Number.

CHAP. XX.

Arthur *prepares for a War, and refuſes to pay Tribute to the* Romans.

KING *Arthur* ſeeing all unanimouſly ready for his Service, ordered them to return back to their Countries with ſpeed, and get ready the Forces they had promiſed, and to haſten to the general Rendezvous upon the Kalends of *Auguſt*, at the Mouth of the River *Barba*, that from thence they might advance with them to the Borders of the *Allobroges*, to meet the *Romans*. Then he ſent

Digitized by Google

ſent Word back to the Emperors by their Ambaſſadors, that as to the paying them Tribute he would in no wiſe obey their Command, and that the Journey he was about to make to *Rome*, was not to ſtand the Award of their Sentence, but to demand of them, what they had judicially decreed to demand of him. With this Anſwer the Ambaſſadors depart: And at the ſame Time alſo depart all the Kings and Noblemen, to perform with all Expedition the Orders that had been given them.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE British History.

The Tenth Book.

CHAP. I.

Lucius Tiberius *calls together the Eaſtern Kings againſt the* Britains.

LUCIUS TIBERIUS, upon Receit of this Anſwer, by Order of the Senate publiſhed a Decree, for the Eaſtern Kings to come with their Forces, and aſſiſt in the Conqueſt of *Britain*. In Obedience to which there came in a very ſhort Time, *Epiſtrophius* King of the *Grecians*, *Muſtenſar* King of the *Africans*, *Alifantinam* King of *Spain*, *Hirtacius* King

Digitized by Google

King of the *Parthians*, *Boccus* of the *Medes*, *Sertorius* of *Libya*, *Teucer* King of *Phrygia*, *Serſes* King of the *Itureans*, *Pandraſus* King of *Ægypt*, *Micipſa* King of *Babylon*, *Polytetes* Duke of *Bithynia*, *Teucer* Duke of *Phrygia*, *Evander* of *Syria*, *Aethion* of *Bœotia*, *Hippolytus* of *Crete*, with the Generals and Nobility under them. Of the Senatorian Order alſo came, *Lucius Catellus*, *Marius Lepidus*, *Caius Metellus Cotta*, *Quintus Milvius Catulus*, *Quintus Carutius*, and as many others as made up the Number of forty thouſand one hundred and ſixty.

CHAP. II.

Arthur *commits to his Nephew* Modred *the Government of* Britain. *His Dream at* Hamo's *Port.*

AFTER the neceſſary Diſpoſitions were made, upon the Kalends of *Auguſt* they begin their March towards *Britain*: Which when *Arthur* had Intelligence of, he committed the Government of the Kingdom to his Nephew *Modred* and Queen *Ganhumara*, and marched with his Army to *Hamo*'s Port, where the Wind ſtood fair for him. But while he, ſurrounded with all his numerous Fleet, was ſailing joyfully

Digitized by Google

joyfully with a brisk Gale, it happened that about Midnight he fell into a very sound Sleep, and in a Dream saw a Bear flying in the Air, at the Noise of which all the Shores trembled: Also a terrible Dragon flying from the West, which enlightened the Country with the Brightness of its Eyes. When these two met they began a dreadful Fight; but the Dragon with its fiery Breath burnt the Bear which often assaulted him, and threw him down scorched to the Ground. *Arthur* upon this awaking, related his Dream to those that attended about him, who took upon them to interpret it, and told him; That the Dragon signified himself, but the Bear some Giant that should encounter with him: And that the Fight portended the Duel that would be between them, and the Dragons Victory the same that would happen to himself. But *Arthur* conjectured it portended something else, and that the Vision was applicable to himself and the Emperor. As soon as the Morning after this Nights Sail appeared, they found themselves arrived at the Mouth of the River *Barba*. And there they pitched their Tents, to wait the Arrival of the Kings of the Islands, and the Generals of the other Provinces.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. III.

Arthur *kills a* Spaniſh *Giant who had ſtole away* Helena *the Neice of* Hoel.

IN the mean Time *Arthur* has News brought him, that a Giant of monſtrous Size was come from the Parts of *Spain*, and had forcibly taken away *Helena* the Neice of Duke *Hoel* from her Guard, and fled with her to the Top of that which is now called *The Mount of Michael*: And that the Soldiers of the Country who purſued him, were able to do nothing againſt him. For whether they attacked him by Sea or Land, he either overturned their Ships with vaſt Rocks, or killed them with ſeveral ſorts of Darts, beſides many of them that he took and devoured half alive. The next Night therefore at the ſecond Hour, *Arthur* taking along with him *Caius* the Sewer and *Bedver* the Butler, went out privately from the Camp, and haſtened towards the Mountain. For being a Man of undaunted Courage, he did not care to lead his Army againſt ſuch Monſters; both becauſe he could in this Manner animate his Men by his own Example; and alſo becauſe he was alone ſufficient to deal with them. As ſoon

Digitized by Google

ſoon as they came near the Mountain, they ſaw a Fire burning upon the Top of it; and another on a leſſer Mountain, that was not far from it. And being in Doubt upon which of them the Giant dwelt, they ſend away *Bedver* to know the Certainty of the Matter. So he finding a Boat, ſailed over in it firſt to the leſſer Mountain, to which he could no other Way have Acceſs, becauſe it was ſituate in the Sea. When he had begun to climb up to the Top of it, he was at firſt frightned with a diſmal howling Cry of a Woman from above, and imagined the Monſter to be there: But quickly rouſing up his Courage, he drew his Sword, and having reached the Top, found nothing but the Fire which he had before ſeen at a Diſtance. He diſcovered alſo a Grave newly made, and an old Woman weeping and howling by it; who at the Sight of him inſtantly cry'd out in Words interrupted with Sighs; "O unhappy Man, "what Misfortune brings you to this Place! "O the inexpreſſible Tortures of Death "that you muſt ſuffer! I pity you, I pity "you, becauſe the deteſtable Monſter will "this Night deſtroy the Flower of your "Youth. For that moſt wicked and odi- "ous Giant, who brought the Dukes Neice, "whom I have juſt now buried here, and "me her Nurſe along with her into this "Mountain, will come and immediately

Digitized by Google

" murder you in a moſt cruel Manner. O " deplorable Fate! This moſt illuſtrious " Princeſs, ſinking under the Fear her ten- " der Heart conceived, while the foul Mon- " ſter would have embraced her, fainted " away and expired. And when he could " not ſatiate his brutiſh Luſt upon her, " who was to me the very Soul, Joy and " Happineſs of my Life, being enraged at " the Diſappointment of his beſtial Deſire, " he forcibly committed a Rape upon me, " who (let God and my Old-age witneſs) " abhorred his Embraces. Fly, dear Sir, " fly, for Fear he come, as he uſually does " to lie with me, and finding you here moſt " barbarouſly butcher you." *Bedver*, tho' moved at what ſhe ſaid, as much as it is poſſible for human Nature to be, yet endeavoured with kind Words to aſſwage her Grief, and to comfort her with the Promiſe of ſpeedy Help: And then returned back to *Arthur*, and gave him an Account of what he had met with. *Arthur* very much lamented the Damſels ſad Fate, and ordered his Companions to leave him to deal with him alone; unleſs there was an abſolute Neceſſity, and then they were to come in boldly to his Aſſiſtance. From hence they went directly to the next Mountain, leaving their Horſes with their Armour-Bearers, and aſcended to the Top, *Arthur* leading the Way. The deformed Savage was then by the Fire, with his Face all beſmeared

Digitized by Google

beſmeared with the clotted Blood of Swine, Part of which he had already devoured, and was roaſting the Remainder upon Spits by the Fire. But at the Sight of them, whoſe Appearance was a Surprize to him, he haſtened to his Club, which two ſtrong Men could hardly lift from the Ground. Upon this the King drew his Sword, and guarding himſelf with his Shield, ran with all his ſpeed to prevent his getting it. But the other, who was not ignorant of his Deſign, had by this Time ſnatched it up, and gave the King ſuch a terrible Blow upon his Shield, that he made the Shores ring with the Noiſe, and perfectly ſtunned the Kings Ears with it. *Arthur* at this being fired with Rage, lifted up his Sword, and gave him a Wound in the Forehead, which was not indeed mortal, but yet ſuch as made the Blood guſh out over his Face and Eyes, and ſo blinded him; for he had partly warded off the Stroke from his Forehead with his Club, and prevented its being fatal. However his Loſs of Sight, by Reaſon of the Blood flowing over his Eyes, made him exert himſelf with greater Fury, and like an enraged Boar againſt a Hunting-Spear, ſo did he ruſh in againſt *Arthurs* Sword, and graſping him about the Waſte forced him down upon his Knees. But *Arthur* nothing daunted nimbly ſlid out of his Hands, and now ſo beſtirred himſelf with his Sword, that

Digitized by Google

he gave the Giant no Reſpite till he had ſtruck it up to the very Back within his Skull. At this the hideous Monſter raiſed a dreadful Roar, and like an Oak torn up by the Roots by Force of Winds, ſo did he make the Ground reſound with his Fall. *Arthur* burſting out into a Fit of Laughter at the Sight, commanded *Bedver* to cut off his Head, and give it to one of the Armour-Bearers, who was to carry it to the Camp, and there expoſe it to publick View, but with Orders for the Spectators of this Combat to keep Silence. He told them he had found none of ſo great Strength, ſince he killed the Giant *Ritho* upon the Mountain *Aravius*, who had challenged him to fight. This Giant had made himſelf Furs of the Beards of Kings he had killed, and had ſent Word to *Arthur* carefully to flea off his Beard and ſend it to him; and then out of Reſpect to his Pre-eminence over other Kings, his Beard ſhould have the Honour of the principal Place. But if he refuſed to do it, he challenged him to a Duel, with this Offer, that the Conquerer ſhould have the Furs, and alſo the Beard of the vanquiſhed for a Trophy of his Victory. In this Conflict therefore, *Arthur* proved victorious, and took the Beard and Spoils of the Giant; and, as he ſaid before, had met with none that could be compared to him for Strength, till his laſt Engagement. After

Digitized by Google

ter this Victory they returned at the second Watch of the Night to the Camp with the Head; to the Sight of which there was a great Concourse of People, all extolling this wonderful Exploit of *Arthur*, by which he had freed the Country from a most destructive and voracious Monster. But *Hoel*, in great Grief for the Loss of his Neice, commanded a *Mausoleum* to be built over her Body in the Mountain where she was buried, which taking the Damsels Name, is called *Helena*'s Tomb to this Day.

CHAP. IV.

Arthurs *Ambassadors to* Lucius Tiberius *deliver* Petreius Cotta, *whom they took Prisoner, to* Arthur.

AS soon as all the Forces were arrived which *Arthur* expected, he marches from thence to *Augustodunum*, where he supposed the General was. But when he came to the River *Alba*, he had Intelligence brought him of his having encamped not far off, and that he was come with so vast an Army, as he could not be able to withstand. However this did not deter him from pursuing his Enterprize, but he pitch-

Digitized by Google

ed his Camp upon the Bank of the River, to facilitate the bringing up of his Forces, and to secure his Retreat, if there should be Occasion; And sent *Boso* the Consul of *Oxford*, and *Guerinus Carnotensis*, with his Nephew *Walgan* to *Lucius Tiberius*, requiring him either to retire from the Coasts of *Gaul*, or come the next Day, that they might try their Right to that Country with their Swords. The Retinue of young Courtiers that attended *Walgan*, highly rejoycing at this Opportunity, were urgent with him to find some Occasion for a Quarrel in the Commanders Camp, that so they might engage the *Romans*. Accordingly they went to *Lucius*, and commanded him to retire out of *Gaul*, or hazard a Battle the next Day. But while he was answering them, that he was not come to retire, but to govern the Country, there was present *Caius Quintilianus* his Nephew, who said; "That "the *Britains* were better at boasting and "threatning, than they were at fighting." *Walgan* immediately took Fire at this, and ran upon him with his drawn Sword, wherewith he cut off his Head, and then retreated speedily with his Companions to their Horses. The *Romans* both Horse and Foot pursue, to revenge the Loss of their Countryman upon the Ambassadors, who fled with great Precipitation. But *Guerinus Carnotensis*, just as one of them was come up

Digitized by Google

up to him, rallied on a ſudden, and with his Lance ſtruck at once through his Armour and the very middle of his Body, and laid him proſtrate on the Ground. The Sight of this noble Exploit raiſed the Emulation of *Boſo* of *Oxford*, who wheeling about his Horſe, ſtruck his Lance into the Throat of the firſt Man he met with, and diſmounted him mortally wounded. In the mean Time *Marcellus Mutius*, with great Eagerneſs to revenge *Quintilians* Death, was juſt upon the Back of *Walgan*, and laid hold of him; which the other quickly obliged him to quit, by cleaving both his Helmet and Head to the Breaſt with his Sword. He alſo bid him, when he arrived at the infernal Region, tell the Man he had killed in the Camp; "That in this Manner the *Britains* were "full of their *Boaſting and Threatning*." Then having re-aſſembled his Men, he encouraged them to diſpatch every one his Purſuer, in the ſame Manner as he had done; which accordingly they did not fail to accompliſh. Notwithſtanding the *Romans* continued their Purſuit with Lances and Swords, wherewith they annoy'd the others, though without Slaughter or taking any Priſoners. But as they came near a certain Wood, a Party of ſix thouſand *Britains*, upon ſeeing the Flight of the Conſuls, had hid themſelves, to be in Readineſs for their Aſſiſtance. Then ſallying forth they put

Digitized by Google

Spurs to their Horſes, and rend the Air with their loud Shouts, and being well fenced with their Shields, on a ſudden aſſault the *Romans*, and force them to fly. And now it was the *Britains* Turn to purſue, which they did with better Succeſs, ſince they diſmounted, killed, or took ſeveral of the Enemy. *Petreius* the Senator, upon this News, haſtens to the Aſſiſtance of his Countrymen with ten thouſand Men, and compelled the *Britains* to retreat to the Wood from whence they had ſallied forth; though not without Loſs of his own Men. For the *Britains* being well acquainted with the Ground, did in their Flight kill a great Number of their Purſuers. The *Britains* thus giving Ground, *Hider* with another Reinforcement of five thouſand Men, advances with ſpeed to ſuſtain them; ſo that they now again face thoſe, upon whom they had turned their Backs, and renew the Aſſault with great Vigour. The *Romans* alſo ſtand their Ground, and continue the Fight with various Succeſs. The great Fault of the *Britains* was, that though they had been very eager to begin the Fight, yet when begun they were leſs careful of the Hazard they run. Whereas the *Romans* were under better Diſcipline, and had the Advantage of a prudent Commander, *Petreius Cotta*, to tell them where to advance, and where to give Ground, and by that Means did great Injury

to

to the Enemy. When *Boſo* obſerved this, he drew off from the reſt a large Party of thoſe whom he knew to be the ſtouteſt Men, and ſpoke to them after this Manner; "Since we have begun this Fight without "*Arthurs* Knowledge, we muſt take Care "that we be not defeated in the Enterprize. "For if we ſhould, we ſhall both very "much endanger our Men, and incur the "Kings high Diſpleaſure. Rouſe up your "Courage, and follow me through the "*Roman* Squadrons, that with the Favour "of good Fortune we may either kill or "take *Petreius* Priſoner." With this they put Spurs to their Horſes, and piercing through the Enemies thickeſt Ranks, reached the Place where *Petreius* was giving his Commands. *Boſo* haſtily run in upon him, and graſping him about the Neck, fell down with him to the Ground, according to the Deſign he had formed. The *Romans* hereupon ran to his Delivery, as did the *Britains* to *Boſo*'s Aſſiſtance; which occaſioned on both Sides great Slaughter, Noiſe and Confuſion, while one Party ſtrove to reſcue their Leader, and the other to keep him Priſoner. So that this proved the ſharpeſt Part of the whole Fight, and wherein their Spears, Swords and Arrows had the fulleſt Employment. At length the *Britains* joining in a cloſe Body, and ſuſtaining patiently the Aſſaults of the *Romans*, retire to the main

Digitized by Google

main Body of their Army with *Petreius*: Which they had no ſooner done than they again attack them, being now deprived of their Leader, very much weakened, diſpirited, and juſt beginning to fly. They therefore eagerly purſue, beat down, and kill ſeveral of them, and as ſoon as they had plundered them purſued the reſt: But they took the greateſt Number of them Priſoners, as being deſirous of preſenting them to the King. When they had at laſt ſufficiently haraſſed them, they returned back with their Plunder and Priſoners to the Camp; where they gave an Account of what had happened, and preſented *Petreius Cotta* with the other Priſoners before *Arthur*, with great Joy for the Victory. *Arthur* congratulated them upon it, and promiſed them Advancement to greater Honours, for behaving themſelves ſo gallantly when he was abſent from them. Then he gave his Command to ſome of his Men, to conduct the Priſoners the next Day to *Paris*, and deliver them to be kept in Cuſtody there till further Orders. The Party that were to undertake this Charge, he ordered *Cador*, *Bedver*, and the two Conſuls *Borellus* and *Richerius* with their Servants, to conduct ſo far, till they ſhould be out of all Fear of Diſturbance from the *Romans*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. V.

The Romans *attack the* Britains *with a very great Force, but are put to Flight by them.*

BUT the *Romans* happening to get Intelligence of their Design, at the Command of their General chose out fifteen thousand Men, who that Night were to get before the others in their March, and rescue their Fellow Soldiers out of their Hands. They were to be commanded by *Vulteius Cutellus*, and *Quintus Carutius* Senators, as also *Evander* King of *Syria*, and *Sertorius* King of *Libya*. And accordingly they begun the March appointed them that very Night, and possessed themselves of a Place convenient for their lying in Ambuscade, through which they supposed the others would pass. In the Morning the *Britains* set forward along the same Road with their Prisoners, and were now approaching the Place, in perfect Ignorance of the cunning Stratagem of the Enemy. No sooner were they entred it, than the *Romans* to their great Surprize sprung forth and fell furiously upon them. Notwithstanding the *Britains* at length recovering from their Consternation, assemble together, and prepare for a bold Oppo-

Digitized by Google

Oppoſition, by appointing a Party to guard the Priſoners, and drawing out the reſt in Order of Battle againſt the Enemy. *Richerius* and *Bedver* had the Command of the Party that were ſet over the Priſoners; but *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, and *Borellus* headed the others. But all the *Romani* had made their Sally without being placed in any Order, and cared not to form themſelves, that they might loſe no Time in the Slaughter of the *Britains*, whom they ſaw buſied in marſhalling their Troops and preparing only for their Defence. By this Conduct the *Britains* were extreamly weakened, and would have ſhamefully loſt their Priſoners, had not good Fortune haſtened to their Aſſiſtance. For *Guitard* Commander of the *Pictavians*, happened to get Knowledge of the deſigned Stratagem, and was come up with three thouſand Men, by the Help of which they at laſt got the Advantage, and repaid back the Slaughter upon their inſolent Aſſailants. Notwithſtanding the Loſs they ſuſtained at the Beginning of this Action was very conſiderable. For they loſt *Borellus* the famous Conſul of the *Cenomanni*, in an Encounter with *Evander* King of *Syria*, who ſtruck his Lance into his Throat; beſides four Noblemen, *viz. Hirelgas Deperitus*, *Mauricius Cadorcanenſis*, *Aliduc* of *Tintagol*, and *Hider* his Son, than whom braver Men were hardly to be found. But yet neither did this Loſs diſpirit the *Britains*, but

Digitized by Google

but rather made them more resolute to keep the Prisoners, and kill the Enemy. The *Romans* now finding themselves unable to maintain the Fight any longer, on a sudden quitted the Field, and made back towards their Camp; but were pursued with Slaughter by the *Britains*, who also took many of them, and allowed them no Respite till they had killed *Vulteius Catellus*, and *Evander* King of *Syria*, and wholly dispersed the rest. Which done, they sent away their former Prisoners to *Paris*, whither they were to conduct them, and returned back with those newly taken to the King; to whom they gave great Hopes of a compleat Conquest of their Enemies, since very few of the great Number that came against them, had met with any Success.

CHAP. VI.

Lucius Tiberius *goes to* Lengriæ. Arthur *designing to vanquish him, by a Stratagem possesses himself of the Valley of* Suesia.

THESE repeated Disasters wrought no small Disturbance in the Breast of *Lucius Tiberius*, and made him hesitate with anxious and fluctuating Thoughts, whether to

Digitized by Google

to bring it to a general Battle with *Arthur*; or to retire into *Augustodanum*, and stay till the Emperor *Leo* with his Forces could come to his Assistance. At length giving way to his Fears, he enters *Lingria* with his Army, intending to reach the other City the Night following. *Arthur* finding this, and being desirous to get before him in his March, leaves the City on the left Hand, and the same Night enters a certain Valley called *Saxfia*, through which *Lucius* was to pass. There he divided his Men into several Bodies, commanding one Legion, over which *Morvid* Consul of *Gloucester* was appointed General, to attend hard by, that he might retreat to them if there should be Occasion, and from thence rally his broken Forces for a second Battle. The rest he divided into seven Parts, in each of which he placed five thousand five hundred and fifty five Men, all compleatly armed. He also appointed different Stations to his Horse and Foot, and gave Command, that just as the Foot should advance to the Attack, the Horse keeping close together in their Ranks, should the same Moment march up obliquely, and endeavour to put the Enemy into Disorder. The Companies of Foot were after the *British* Manner drawn out into a Square, with a right and left Wing; one of which was commanded by *Augusel* King of *Albania*, and *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, the one presiding

Digitized by Google

ding over the right Wing, the other over the left. Over another Party were placed the two famous Conſuls, *Guerinus Carnotenſis*, and *Boſo* of *Richiden*, called in the *Saxon* Tongue *Oxineford*: Over a third were *Aſchillius* King of the *Datians*, and *Lat* King of the *Norwegians*: The fourth being commanded by *Hoel* Duke of the *Armoricans*, and *Walgan* the Kings Nephew. After theſe were four other Parties placed in the Reer; the firſt commanded by *Caius* the Sewer, and *Bedver* the Butler; the ſecond by *Holdin* Duke of the *Ruteni*, and *Guitard* of the *Pictavians*; the third by *Vigenis* of *Leiceſter*, *Jonathal* of *Dorcheſter*, and *Curſalem* of *Caiceſter*; the fourth by *Urbgennius* of *Baden*. Behind all theſe *Arthur*, for himſelf and the Legion that was to attend near him, made Choice of a Place, where he ſet up a Golden Dragon for a Standard, whither the wounded or fatigued might in Caſe of Neceſſity retreat as into their Camp. The Legion that was with him, conſiſted of ſix thouſand ſix hundred and ſixty ſix Men.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VII.

Arthurs *Exhortation to his Soldiers.*

AFTER he had thus placed them all in their Stations, he made the following Speech to his Soldiers. "My brave "Countrymen, who have made *Britain* "the Mistress of thirty Kingdoms, I con- "gratulate you upon your late Noble Ex- "ploit, which to me is a Proof that your "Valour is so far from being impaired, that "it is increased rather. Though you have "been five Years without Exercise, where- "in the softning Pleasures of an easy Life, "had a greater Share of your Time, than "the use of Arms; yet all this has not "made you in the least degenerate from "your natural Bravery, which you have "shewn in forcing the *Romans* to fly. The "Pride of their Leaders has animated them "to attempt the Invasion of your Liberties. "They have tried you in Battle, with "Numbers Superiour to yours, and have "not been able to stand before you; but "have basely withdrawn themselves into "that City, from whence they are now "ready to march out, and to pass through "this Valley in their Way to *Augustodu-* "*num*; so that you may have an Opportu- "nity of falling upon them unawares like a "Flock

Digitized by Google

" Flock of Sheep. Certainly they expected " to find in you the Cowardice of the " Eastern Nations, when they thought to " make your Country Tributary, and you " their Slaves. What have they never heard " of your Wars with the *Dacians*, *Norwe-* " *gians*, and Princes of the *Gauls*, whom " you reduced under my Power, and freed " from their shameful Yoke? We then that " have had Success in a greater War, need " not doubt of it in a less, if we do but en- " deavour with the same Spirit to vanquish " these Poltrons. You shall want no Re- " wards of Honour, if as faithful Soldiers " you do but strictly obey my Commands. " For as soon as we have routed them, we " will march straight to *Rome*, and take it; " and then all the Gold, Silver, Palaces, " Towers, Towns, Cities, and other Riches " of the vanquished shall be yours." He had hardly done speaking, before they all with one Voice declared, that they were ready to suffer Death, rather than quit the Field while he had Life.

Y CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VIII.

Lucius Tiberius *discovering* Arthurs *Design, in a Speech animates his Followers to fight.*

BUT *Lucius Tiberius* discovering the Designs that were formed against him, would not fly as he had at first intended, but taking new Courage, resolved to march to the same Valley against them; and calling together his principal Commanders, spoke to them in these Words. "Venerable "Fathers, to whose Empire both the East- "ern and Western Kingdoms owe Obedi- "ence, remember the Virtues of your An- "cestors, who were not afraid to shed "their Blood, when the vanquishing of the "Enemies of the Commonwealth required "it; but to leave an Example of their "Courage and military Virtues to their "Posterity, behaved themselves in all Bat- "tles with that Contempt of Death, as if "God had given them some Security a- "gainst it. By this Conduct they often "triumphed, and by triumphing escaped "Death. Such was the Reward of their "Virtue from Divine Providence, which "overrules all Events. The Increase of the "Commonwealth, and of their own Va- "lour,

Digitized by Google

"lour, was owing to this; and all those "Virtues that usually adorn the Great, as "Integrity, Honour, and Munificence, "flourishing a long Time in them, raised "them and their Posterity to the Empire of "the whole World. Let their noble Ex-"amples animate you; rouse up the Spirit "of the ancient *Romans*, and be not afraid "to march out against our Enemies that "are lying in Ambush for us in the Valley, "but boldly with your Swords demand of "them your just Rights. Do not think "that I retired into this City for fear of "engaging with them; but I thought that "as their Pursuit of us was rash and foolish, "so we might hence on a sudden intercept "them in it, and by dividing their main "Body make a great Slaughter of them. "But now since they have altered the Mea-"sures we supposed they had taken, let us "also alter ours. Let us go in quest of "them, and bravely fall upon them; or if "they shall happen to have the Advantage "in the Beginning of the Battle, let us "only stand our Ground during the Fury "of their first Assault, and the Victory will "undoubtedly be ours; for in many Bat-"tles this Manner of Conduct has been at-"tended with Victory." As soon as he had made an end of speaking these and other Things, they all declared their Assent, promised with an Oath to stand by him, and

Digitized by Google

haſtened to arm themſelves. Which when they had done, they marched out of *Lengria* to the Valley where *Arthur* had drawn out his Forces in Order of Battle. Then they alſo began to marſhal their Army, which they divided into twelve Companies, and according to the *Roman* Manner of Embattelling, drew out each Company into the Form of a Wedge, conſiſting of ſix thouſand ſix hundred and ſixty ſix Men. Each Company alſo had its reſpective Leaders, who were to give Direction when to advance, or when to be upon the Defenſive. One of them was headed by *Lucius Catellus* the Senator, and *Alifantinam* King of *Spain*; another by *Hirtacius* King of the *Parthians*, and *Marius Lepidus* a Senator; a third by *Boccus* King of the *Medes*, and *Caius Metellus* a Senator; a fourth by *Sertorius* King of *Libya*, and *Quintus Milvius* a Senator. Theſe four Companies were placed in the Front of the Army. In the Rear of theſe were four others, whereof one was commanded by *Serſes* King of the *Itureans*; another by *Pandraſus* King of *Egypt*; a third by *Polytetes* Duke of *Bithynia*; a fourth by *Teucer* Duke of *Phrygia*. And again behind all theſe four others, whereof the Commanders were *Quintus Carucius* a Senator, *Lælius Hoſtienſis*, *Sulpitius Subuculus*, and *Mauricius Sylvanus*. As for the General himſelf, he was ſometimes in one Place, ſometimes another, to encourage

Digitized by Google

encourage and direct as there ſhould be Occaſion. For a Standard he ordered a Golden Eagle to be firmly ſet up in the Center, for his Men to repair to, whenever they ſhould happen to be ſeparated from their Company.

CHAP. IX.

A Battle between Arthur *and* Lucius Tiberius.

AND now did the *Britains* and *Romans* ſtand preſented with their Arms before each other; when forthwith at the ſounding of the Trumpets, the Company that was headed by the King of *Spain* and *Lucius Catellus*, boldly ruſhed forward againſt that which the King of *Scotland* and Duke of *Cornwal* led up, but were not able to make the leaſt Breach in their firm Ranks. So that while theſe ſtood their Ground, up came *Guerinus* and *Boſo* with a Body of Horſe upon their full Speed, broke through the Party that began the Aſſault, and met with another which the King of the *Parthians* was juſt leading up againſt *Aſchillius* King of *Dacia*. After this firſt Onſet, immediately followed a general Engagement of both Armies with great Violence, and

Digitized by Google

several Breaches made on each Side. The Shouts, the Slaughter, the vast Quantity of Blood spilled, and the Agonies of the dying, made a dreadful Scene of Horror. At first the *Britains* sustained a great Loss, by having *Bedver* the Butler killed, and *Caius* the Sewer mortally wounded. For as *Bedver* met *Boccus* King of the *Medes*, he fell down dead by a Stab of his Lance amidst the Enemies Troops. And *Caius* in endeavouring to revenge his Death, was surrounded by the *Median* Troops, and there received a mortal Wound; yet as a brave Soldier he opened himself a Way with the Wing which he led, killed and dispersed the *Medes*, and would have made a safe Retreat with all his Men, had he not happened to meet with the King of *Libya* with the Forces under him, who put his whole Company into Disorder; yet not so great, but that he was still able to get off with a few, and fly with *Bedvers* Corps to the Golden Dragon. The *Neustrians* grievously lamented at the Sight of their Leaders mangled Body; and so did the *Andegavians*, when they beheld their Consul wounded. But there was now no room for mournful Complaints, when the furious and bloody Shocks of both Armies made it more necessary to provide for their own Defence. Therefore *Hirelgas* the Nephew of *Bedver*, being extreamly enraged at his Death, calls up to him three hundred Men, and

Digitized by Google

and like a wild Boar amongst a Pack of Dogs, broke through the Enemies Ranks with his Horse, making towards the Place where he had seen the Standard of the King of the *Medes*; little regarding what might befal him, so he could but revenge the Loss of his Unkle. At length he reached the Place, killed the King, brought off his Body to his Companions, and laid it by that of his Unkle, where he mangled it in the same Manner. Then calling with a loud Voice to his Countrymen, he animated their Troops, and vehemently pressed them to exert themselves to the utmost, now when their Spirits were raised, and the Enemy disheartened; and especially as they had the Advantage of them in being placed in better Order, and so might the more grievously infest them. Encouraged with this Exhortation they began a general Assault upon the Enemy, which was attended with a terrible Slaughter on both Sides. For on the Part of the *Romans*, beside innumerable others, fell *Alifantinam* King of *Spain*, *Micipsa* of *Babylon*, as also *Quintus Milvius*, and *Marius Lepidus* Senators. On the Part of the *Britains*, *Holdin* King of the *Ruteni*, *Leodegarius* of *Bolonia*, and three Consuls of *Britain*, *Cursalem* of *Kaicester*, *Galluc* of *Salisbury*, and *Urbgennius* of *Badon*. So that the Troops they commanded being extreamly weakned, retreated till they came to the Army of the

Digitized by Google

Armorican Britains commanded by *Hoel* and *Walgan*. But these being inflamed at the Retreat of their Friends, encouraged them to stand their Ground, and caused them now with the Help of their own Forces to put their Pursuers to Flight. While they continued this Pursuit, they beat down and killed several of them, and gave them no Respite, till they came to the very Generals Troop; who seeing the Distress of his Companions hastened to their Assistance.

CHAP. X.

Hoel *and* Walgan *signalize their Valour in the Fight.*

AND now in this latter Encounter the *Britains* are worsted, by the Loss of *Kimarcoc* Consul of *Trigeria*, and two thousand with him; beside three famous Noblemen, *Richomarcus*, *Bloccovius*, and *Jagivius* of *Bodloan*, who had they but enjoyed the Dignity of Princes, succeeding Ages would not have failed to celebrate their Valour. For during this Assault which they made in Conjunction with *Hoel* and *Walgan*, there was not an Enemy within their Reach that could escape the Fury of their Sword or Lance. But upon their falling in among *Lucius's* Party,

Digitized by Google

Party, they were ſurrounded by them, and ſuffered the ſame Fate with the Conſul and the other Men. The Loſs of theſe Men made thoſe brave and matchleſs Hero's, *Hoel* and *Walgan*, much more eager to infeſt the Generals Ranks, and to try on all Sides where to make the greateſt Impreſſion. But *Walgan*, whoſe Valour was never to be foiled, endeavoured to gain Acceſs to *Lucius* himſelf, that he might encounter him, and with this View beat down and killed all that ſtood in his Way. And *Hoel*, not inferiour to him, did no leſs Service in another Part, by ſpiriting up his Men, and giving and receiving Blows among the Enemy with the ſame undaunted Courage. It was hard to determin, whether of them was the ſtouter Soldier.

CHAP. XI.

Lucius Tiberius *being killed, the* Britains *obtain the Victory.*

BUT *Walgan* by forcing his Way thro' the Enemies Troops, as we ſaid before, found at laſt (what he had wiſhed for) Acceſs to the General, and immediately encountred him. *Lucius* being then in the Flower of his Youth, and a Perſon of great

Digitized by Google

great Courage and Vigour, desired nothing more than to engage with such a one as might put his Strength to its full Trial. Putting himself therefore into a Posture of Defence, he received *Walgan* with Joy, and was not a little proud to try his Courage with one of whom he had heard very great Things. The Duel continued between them a long Time, with great Force of Blows, and no less Dexterity in warding them off, each being resolved upon the others Destruction. During this sharp Conflict between them, the *Romans* on a sudden recovering their Courage, made an Assault upon the *Armoricans*, and having relieved their General, repulsed *Hoel* and *Walgan*, with their Troops, till they found themselves unawares met by *Arthur* and the Forces under him. For he upon hearing of the Slaughter that was a little before made of his Men, had speedily advanced with his Legion, and drawing out his *Caliburn*, spoke to them with a loud Voice after this Manner. "What are "you doing Soldiers? Will you suffer these "effeminate Wretches to escape? Let not "one of them get off alive. Remember "the Force of your Arms, that have reduced thirty Kingdoms under my Subjection. "Remember your Ancestors, whom the "*Romans*, when at the Height of their "Power, made tributary. Remember your "Liberties, which these pitiful Fellows,

"that

Digitized by Google

" that are much your Inferiors, attempt " to deprive you of. Let none of them " escape alive. What are you doing? " With these Expostulations, he rushed in upon the Enemy, made terrible Havock among them, and not a Man he met but at one Blow he either laid him or his Horse dead upon the Ground. They therefore in Astonishment fled him, as a Flock of Sheep do a fierce Lion, whom raging Hunger provokes to devour whatever happens to come near him. Their Arms were no manner of Protection to them against the Force with which this most valiant Prince weilded his *Caliburn*. Two Kings, *Sertorius* of *Libya*, and *Polytetes* of *Bithynia*, unfortunately felt its Fury, and had their Heads cut off by it. The *Britains*, when they saw their King performing such Wonders, take Courage again. With one Consent they assault the *Romans*, keep close together in their Ranks, and while they infest the Foot in one Part, endeavour to beat down and pierce through the Horse in another. Notwithstanding the *Romans* make a brave Defence, and at the Instigation of *Lucius* labour to repay back their Slaughter upon the *Britains*. Such was the Eagerness and Force that was now shewn on both Sides, as if it was just the Beginning of the Battle. *Arthur* continued to do great Execution with his own Hand, and encouraged the *Britains* to maintain

Digitized by Google

tain the Fight; as *Lucius Tiberius* did the *Romans*, and made them perform many memorable Exploits. He himself in the mean Time was very active in going from Place to Place, and suffered none to escape with Life, that happened to come within the Reach of his Sword or Lance. The Slaughter that was now made on both Sides was very dreadful, and the Turns of Fortune various, sometimes the *Britains* prevailing, sometimes the *Romans*. At last while this sharp Dispute yet continued, *Morvid* Consul of *Glocester* with his Legion, which as we said before was placed between the Hills, came up with speed upon the Rear of the Enemy, and to their great Surprize assaulted, broke through, and dispersed them with a great Slaughter. This last and decisive Blow proved Fatal to many thousands of *Romans*, and even to the General *Lucius* himself, who was killed among the Crowds with a Lance by an unknown Hand. But the *Britains* by long maintaining the Fight, with very great Difficulty gained the Victory.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XII.

One Part of the Romans *fly; and the other of their own Accord surrender themselves for Slaves.*

THE *Romans* being now therefore dispersed, betake themselves through Fear, some to the By-Ways and Woods, some to the Cities and Towns, and all other Places where they could be most safe; but were either killed or taken and plunder'd by the *Britains* pursuing: So that a great Part of them voluntarily and shamefully held forth their Hands, to receive their Conquerers Chains, in order to prolong for a while a wretched Life. In all which the Justice of Divine Providence was very visible; considering how unjustly the Ancestors of the *Britains* were formerly haraſſed and infested by those of the *Romans*; and that these stood only in Defence of that Liberty, which the others would have deprived them of; and refused the Tribute, which the others had no Right to demand.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIII.

The Bodies of the Slain are decently buried, each in their respective Countries.

ARTHUR, after he had compleated his Victory, gives Orders for separating the Bodies of his Nobility from those of the Enemy, and preparing a pompous Funeral for them; and that when ready they should be carried to the Abbies of their respective Countries, there to be honourably buried. But *Bedver* the Butler was with great Lamentation of the *Neustrians* carried to his own City *Bajocæ*, which *Bedver* the First, his Great Grandfather, had built. There he was with great Solemnity laid close by the Wall, in a Burying-Place in the South Part of the City. But *Cheudo* was carried grievously wounded to *Camus*, a Town which himself built, where in a short Time he died of his Wounds, and was buried, as became a Duke of *Andegavia*, in a Convent of Hermits, which was in a Wood not far from the Town. Also *Holdin* Duke of *Ruteni*, was carried to *Flanders*, and buried in his own City *Terivana*. The other Consuls and Noblemen were conveyed to the neighbouring Abbies, according to *Arthurs* Orders.

Digitized by Google

ders. Out of his great Clemency alſo he ordered the Country People to take Care of the Burial of the Enemy, and to carry the Body of *Lucius* to the Senate, and tell them, That was the only Tribute *Britain* ought to pay them. After this he ſtaid in thoſe Parts till the next Winter was over, and employed his Time in reducing the Cities of the *Allobroges*. But at the Beginning of the Summer following, as he was upon his March towards *Rome*, and beginning to paſs the *Alps*, he had News brought him that his Nephew *Modred*, to whoſe Care he had entruſted *Britain*, had by tyrannical and treaſonable Practices ſet the Crown upon his own Head; and that Queen *Guanhumara*, in Violation of her firſt Marriage, was wickedly married to him.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE

British History.

The Eleventh Book.

CHAP. I.

Modred *makes a great Slaughter of* Arthurs *Men, but is notwithstanding beaten, and flies to* Winchester.

IF the Matter now to be treated of, most Noble Consul, *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth* shall be silent; but will, though in a mean Stile, yet briefly relate what he found in the *British* Book above-mentioned, and heard from that most learned Historian *Walter* Archdeacon of *Oxford*, concerning the Wars which this renowned King upon his Return to

Digitized by Google

to *Britain* after this Victory, waged with his Nephew. As ſoon therefore as the Report of this flagrant Wickedneſs reached him, he immediately deſiſted from his Enterprize againſt *Leo* King of the *Romans*; and having ſent away *Hoel* Duke of the *Armoricans* with the Army of *Gaul*, to reſtore Peace in thoſe Parts, returned back with ſpeed to *Britain*, attended only with the Kings of the Iſlands, and their Armies. But the wicked Traitor *Modred* had ſent *Cheldric* the *Saxon* Leader into *Germany*, there to raiſe all the Forces he could find, and return with all ſpeed: And in Conſideration of this Service, had promiſed him all that Part of the Iſland, which reaches from *Humber* to *Scotland*, and whatever *Hengiſt* and *Horſus* had poſſeſſed of *Kent* in the Time of *Vortegirn*. So that he in Obedience to his Commands, had arrived with eight hundred Ships fraught with Pagan Soldiers, and had entred into Covenant to obey the Traitor as his Sovereign; who had alſo drawn to his Aſſiſtance the *Scots*, *Picts*, *Iriſh*, and all others whom he knew to be Enemies to his Unkle. His whole Army, taking Pagans and *Chriſtians* together, amounted to eighty thouſand Men; with the Help of whom he met *Arthur* juſt upon his landing at the Port of *Rutupi*, and joining Battle with him made a very great Slaughter of his Men. For the ſame Day fell *Auguſel*

Digitized by Google

King of *Albania*, and *Walgan* the Kings Nephew, with innumerable others. *Anguſel* was ſucceeded in his Kingdom by *Eventus* his Brother *Urians* Son, who afterwards performed many famous Exploits in thoſe Wars. After they had at laſt with much Difficulty got aſhore, they repaid back the Slaughter, and put *Modred* and his Army to Flight. For by a long Practice of War, they had learned an excellent Way of ordering their Forces; which was ſo, that while their Foot were employ'd either in an Aſſault or upon the Defenſive, the Horſe would come in upon a full ſpeed obliquely, break through the Enemies Ranks, and ſo force them to fly. Notwithſtanding this perjur'd Uſurper got his Forces together again, and the Night following entred *Wincheſter*. As ſoon as Queen *Guanhumara* heard this, ſhe immediately deſpairing of Succeſs, fled from *York* to the City of *Legions*, where ſhe reſolved to lead a chaſt Life among the Nuns in the Church of *Julius* the Martyr, and enter herſelf one of their Order.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. II.

Modred *after being twice beſieged and routèd is killed.* Arthur *being wounded gives up the Kingdom to* Conſtantine.

BUT *Arthur*, whoſe Anger was now much more inflamed, upon the Loſs of ſo many hundreds of his Fellow Soldiers, after he had buried his Slain, went on the third Day to the City, and there beſieged the Traitor; who notwithſtanding was unwilling to deſiſt from his Enterprize, but uſed all Methods to encourage his Adherents, and marching out with his Troops prepared to fight his Unkle. In the Battle that followed hereupon, great Numbers loſt their Lives on both Sides; but at laſt his ſuffered moſt, ſo that he was forced to quit the Field ſhamefully. From hence he made a precipitate Flight, and without taking any Care for the Burial of his Slain, marched in haſte towards *Cornwal*. *Arthur* being inwardly grieved that he ſhould ſo often eſcape, forthwith purſued him into that Country as far as the River *Cambula*, where the other was expecting his Coming. And *Modred*, as he was the boldeſt of Men, and always the quickeſt at making an Attack, ſo he now

Digitized by Google

immediately placed his Troops in Order, resolving either to conquer or die, rather than continue his Flight any longer. He had yet remaining with him sixty thousand Men, out of whom he composed three Bodies, which contained each of them six thousand six hundred and sixty six Men: But all the rest he joined in one Body; and having assigned to each of the other Parties their Leaders, he took the Command of this upon himself. After he had made this Disposition of his Forces, he endeavoured to animate them, and promised them the Estates of their Enemies if they came off with Victory. *Arthur* on the other Side also marshalled his Army, which he divided into nine square Companies, with a right and left Wing; and having appointed each of them their Commanders, exhorted them to make a total Rout of those Robbers and perjured Villains, who being brought over into the Island from foreign Countries at the Instance of the Arch-traitor, were attempting to rob them of all their Honours. He likewise told them that such a mixt Army composed of barbarous People of so many different Countries, and who were all raw Soldiers and unexperienced in War, would never be able to stand against such brave veteran Troops as they were, provided they did their Duty. After this Encouragement given by each General to his Fellow Soldiers, the

Battle

Digitized by Google

Battle on a ſudden begins with great Fury; wherein it would be as well grievous as tedious to relate the Slaughter, the cruel Havock, and the exceſs of Rage that was to be ſeen on both Sides. In this manner they ſpent a good part of the Day, till *Arthur* at laſt made a Puſh with his Company, conſiſting of ſix thouſand ſix hundred and ſixty ſix Men, againſt that in which he knew *Modred* was, and opening a Way with their Swords, pierced quite through it, and made a moſt grievous Slaughter. For in this Aſſault fell the wicked Traitor himſelf, and many thouſands with him. But notwithſtanding the Loſs of him, the reſt did not fly, but running together from all Parts of the Field, maintained their Ground with an undaunted Courage. The Fight now grew more furious than ever, and proved almoſt fatal to all the Commanders and their Forces. For on *Modreds* Side fell *Cheldric*, *Elaſius*, *Egbrict*, and *Bunignus*, *Saxons*: *Gillapatric*, *Gillamor*, *Giſlaſel*, and *Gillarius*, *Iriſh*: Alſo the *Scots* and *Picts*, with almoſt all their Leaders: On *Arthurs* Side, *Olbrict* King of *Norway*, *Aſchillius* King of *Dacia*, *Cador Limenic Caſſibellaun*, with many thouſands of others, as well *Britains* as Foreigners, that he had brought with him. And even the renowned King *Arthur* himſelf was alſo mortally wounded; who being carried thence to the Iſle of *Avallon* to be cured of

Digitized by Google

his Wounds, gave up the Crown of *Britain* to his Kinſman *Conſtantine*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, in the five hundred and forty ſecond Year of our Lords Incarnation.

CHAP. III.

Conſtantine *meets with Diſturbances from the* Saxons *and* Modreds *Sons.*

UPON *Conſtantines* advancement to the Throne, the *Saxons* with the two Sons of *Modred* made Inſurrection againſt him, though without Succeſs; for after many Battles fought they fled, one to *London*, the other to *Wincheſter*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe Places. Then died St. *Daniel* the moſt devout Prelate of the Church of *Bangor*, and *Theon* Biſhop of *Gloceſter* was elected Archbiſhop of *London*. At the ſame Time alſo died *David* the moſt pious Archbiſhop of *Legions*, at the City of *Menevia* in his own Abbey; which he loved above all the other Monaſteries of his Dioceſs, becauſe St. *Patrick*, who had prophetically foretold his Birth, was the Founder of it. For during his Reſidence there among his Friars, he was taken with a ſudden Illneſs of which he died, and at the Command of *Malgo* King

Digitized by Google

King of the *Venedotians* was buried in that Church. He was succeeded in the Metropolitan See by *Kinocus* Bishop of the Church of *Lampatern*, who was thereby promoted to a higher Dignity.

CHAP. IV.

Constantine *after having murdered the Sons of* Modred, *is himself killed by* Conan.

BUT *Constantine* pursued the *Saxons*, and reduced them under his Yoke. He also took the two Sons of *Modred*, and one of them, who had fled for Sanctuary to the Church of St. *Amphibalus* in *Winchester*, he murdered before the Altar. The other had hid himself in a Convent of Friars at *London*, but at last was found out by him before the Altar, and there put to a cruel Death. Three Years after this he himself, by the Vengeance of God pursuing him, was killed by *Conan*, and buried close by *Uther Pendragon* within the Structure of Stones, which was set up with wonderful Art not far from *Salisbury*, and called in the *English* Tongue *Stanheng*.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. V.

Aurelius Conan *reigns after* Constantine.

AFTER him succeeded *Aurelius Conan*, a Youth of wonderful Valour, and his Nephew; who as he had gained the Monarchy of the whole Island, so he would have been worthy the Crown of it, had he not delighted in civil War. His Unkle, who ought to have reigned after *Constantine*, he raised Disturbances against, and cast into Prison; and then killing his two Sons obtained the Kingdom, but died in the second Year of his Reign.

CHAP. VI.

Wortiporius *being declared King conquers the* Saxons.

AFTER *Conan* succeeded *Wortiporius*, against whom the *Saxons* made Insurrection, and brought over their Countrymen from *Germany* in a very great Fleet. But he gave them Battle, and came off with Victory; so that he obtained the Monarchy of

Digitized by Google

of the whole Kingdom, and governed the People carefully and peaceably four Years.

CHAP. VII.

Malgo *King of* Britain, *and a most graceful Person, addicts himself to Sodomy.*

HIM ſucceeded *Malgo* one of the handſomeſt Men in *Britain*, a great Scourge of Tyrants, a Man of great Strength, extraordinary Munificence, and matchleſs Malour, but addicted very much to the deteſtable Vice of Sodomy, by which he made himſelf abominable to God. He alſo poſſeſſed the whole Iſland, to which, after a cruel War, he added the ſix provincial Iſlands, *viz. Ireland*, *Iſeland*, *Godland*, the *Orkneys*, *Norway* and *Dacia*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VIII.

Britain, *in the Flame of a Civil War under King* Careticus, *is miserably wasted by the* Saxons *and* Africans.

AFTER *Malgo* succeeded *Careticus*, a Lover of Civil Wars, and hateful to God and to the *Britains*. The *Saxons* discovering his fickle Disposition, went to *Ireland* for *Gormund* King of the *Africans*, who had arrived there with a very great Fleet, and had subdued that Country. From thence, at their traiterous Instigation, he sailed over into *Britain*, which the perfidious *Saxons* in one Part, in another the *Britains* by their continual Wars among themselves, were wholly laying waste. Entring therefore into Alliance with the *Saxons*, he made War upon King *Careticus*, and after several Battles fought drove him from City to City, till at length he forced him to *Cirecester* and there besieged him. Here *Isembard* the Nephew of *Lewis* King of the *Franks* came to him, made a League of Amity with him, and out of Respect to him renounced the *Christian* Faith, on Condition he would assist him to gain the Kingdom of *Gaul* from his Unkle; by whom he said he

Digitized by Google

he was forcibly and unjuſtly expelled out of it, At laſt after the taking and burning of the City, he had another Fight with *Caretius*, and made him fly beyond the *Severn* into *Wales*. This done he made an utter Deſolation in the Countries, ſet Fire to the adjacent Cities, and continued theſe Outrages, till he had almoſt burnt the whole Surface of the Iſland from the one Sea to the other; ſo that the Tillage was every where deſtroyed, and both with Fire and Sword a general Deſtruction made of the Husbandmen and Clergy. This terrible Calamity made the reſt to fly whitherſoever they had any Hopes of Safety.

CHAP. IX.

The Author upbraids the Britains.

"WHY fooliſh Nation, oppreſſed "with the Weight of thy abo- "minable Wickedneſs, why didſt thou in "thy inſatiable Thirſt after civil Wars, ſo "much weaken thy ſelf by domeſtick Con- "fuſions, that whereas formerly thou "broughteſt diſtant Kingdoms under thy "Yoke, now like a good Vineyard dege- "nerated and turned to Bitterneſs, thou "canſt not defend thy Country, nor Wives, "nor

Digitized by Google

" nor Children, againſt thy Enemies? Go
" on, go on in thy civil Diſſenſions, little
" underſtanding the Saying in the Goſpel,
" *Every Kingdom divided againſt itſelf ſhall*
" *be brought to Deſolation, and a Houſe divid-*
" *ed againſt itſelf ſhall fall.* Since then thy
" Kingdom was divided againſt itſelf; ſince
" the Rage of civil Diſcord, and the Fumes
" of Envy, have darkened thy Mind; ſince
" thy Pride would not ſuffer thee to pay
" Obedience to one King; thou ſeeſt there-
" fore thy Country made deſolate by moſt
" impious Pagans, and thy Houſes falling
" one upon another; which ſhall be the
" Cauſe of laſting Sorrow to thy Poſterity.
" For the barbarous Lioneſſes ſhall ſee their
" Whelps enjoying the Towns, Cities and
" other Poſſeſſions of thy Children; from
" which they ſhall be miſerably expelled,
" and hardly if ever recover their former
" flouriſhing State.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. X.

Loegria *is again inhabited by the* Saxons. *The* Britains *with their Biſhops retire into* Cornwal *and* Wales.

BUT to return to the Hiſtory; after the inhuman Tyrant with many Thouſands of his *Africans* had made a Devaſtation almoſt over the whole Iſland, the greater Part of it called *Loegria*, he yielded up to the *Saxons*, whoſe Villany had been the Occaſion of his Arrival. Therefore the Remainder of the *Britains* retired into the Weſtern Parts of the Kingdom, that is, *Cornwal*, and *Wales*; from whence they continually made frequent and fierce Irruptions upon the Enemy. The three Archbiſhops, *viz.* He of *Legions*, *Theon* of *London*, and *Thadiocæus* of *York*, when they had beheld all the Churches ſubject to their Juriſdiction, lying level with the Ground, fly with all the Clergy that remained after ſo great a Deſtruction, to the Coverts of the Woods in *Wales*, carrying with them the Reliques of the Saints, for Fear the ſacred Bones of ſo many holy Men of old might be deſtroyed by the Barbarians, if they ſhould leave them in that imminent Danger, and themſelves inſtantly ſuffer Martyrdom.

Digitized by Google

tyrdom. Many more went over in a very great Fleet into *Armorican Britain*; ſo that the whole Church of the two Provinces, *Loegria* and *Northumberland*, had its Convents deſtroyed. But theſe Things I ſhall relate elſewhere, when I tranſlate the Book concerning their Baniſhment.

CHAP. XI.

The Britains *loſe their Kingdom.*

FOR a long Time after this the *Britains* loſt the Crown of the Kingdom, and the Monarchy of the Iſland, and made no Endeavours to recover their ancient Dignity: But even that Part of the Country which yet remained to them, being ſubject not to one King, but three Tyrants, they often waſted by civil Wars. But neither did the *Saxons* as yet obtain the Crown, but were alſo ſubject to three Kings, and infeſted ſometimes one another, ſometimes the *Britains*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XII.

Auguſtin *being ſent by Pope* Gregory *into* Britain, *preaches the Goſpel to the* Angles.

IN the mean Time *Auguſtin* was ſent by Pope St. *Gregory* into *Britain*, to preach the Word of God to the *Angles*, who being blinded with Pagan Superſtition, had entirely extinguiſhed *Chriſtianity* in that Part of the Iſland which they poſſeſſed. But among the *Britains*, the *Chriſtian* Faith yet flouriſhed, and never failed among them from the Time of Pope *Eleutherius*, when it was firſt planted here. But after *Auguſtin* came, he found in their Province ſeven Biſhopricks and an Archbiſhoprick, all filled with moſt devout Prelates, and a great Number of Abbies; by which the Flock of *Chriſt* was ſtill kept in good Order. Among the reſt there was in the City of *Bangor* a moſt noble Church, in which it is reported there was ſo great a Number of Monks, that when the Monaſtery was divided into ſeven Parts, each having their Priors over them, not one of them had leſs than three hundred Monks, who all lived by the Labour of their own Hands. The Name of their Abbot was *Dinoot*, a Man admirably

Digitized by Google

admirably skilled in the liberal Arts; who, when *Auguſtin* required the Subjection of the *Britiſh* Biſhops, and would have perſuaded them to undertake the Work of the Goſpel with him among the *Angles*, anſwered him with ſeveral Arguments, that they owed no Subjection to him, neither would they preach to their Enemies; ſince they had their own Archbiſhop, and becauſe the *Saxon* Nation perſiſted in depriving them of their Country. For this Reaſon they eſteemed them their mortal Enemies, reckoned their Faith and Religion as nothing, and would no more communicate with the *Angles* than with Dogs.

CHAP. XIII.

Edelfrid *kills a great Number of the* Britiſh *Monks, but is at laſt routed by the* Britains.

THEREFORE *Hedelbert* King of *Kent*, when he ſaw the *Britains* diſdaining Subjection to *Auguſtin*, and that they deſpiſed his Preaching, was highly provoked, and ſtirred up *Edelfrid* King of the *Northumbrians*, and the other petty Kings of the *Saxons*, to raiſe a great Army, and march to the City of *Bangor*, to deſtroy

Digitized by Google

ſtroy the Abbot *Dinoot*, and the reſt of the Clergy who held them in Contempt. At his Inſtigation therefore they aſſembled a prodigious Army, and in their March to the Province of the *Britains*, came to *Legeceſter*, where *Brocinail* Conſul of the City was expecting their Coming. To the ſame City were come innumerable Monks and Hermits from ſeveral Provinces of the *Britains*, but eſpecially from the City of *Bangor*, to pray for the Safety of their People. Whereupon *Edelfrid* King of the *Northumbrians*, collecting all his Forces joined Battle with *Brocinail*, who having a leſs Army to withſtand him, at laſt quitted the City and fled, though not without having made a very great Slaughter of the Enemy. But *Edelfrid*, when he had taken the City, and underſtood upon what Occaſion the Monks were come thither, commanded his Men to turn their Arms firſt againſt them; and ſo two hundred of them were honoured with the Crown of Martyrdom, and admitted into the Kingdom of Heaven that very Day. From thence this *Saxon* Tyrant proceeded on his March to *Bangor*; but upon the News of his outrageous Madneſs, the Leaders of the *Britains*, *viz.* *Blederic* Duke of *Cornwal*, *Margadud* King of the *Demetians*, and *Caduan* of the *Venedotians*, came from all Parts to meet him, and joining Battle with him, wounded him, and forced

Digitized by Google

him to fly; and besides killed of his Army to the Number of ten thousand and sixty six Men. On the *Britains* Side fell *Blederic* Duke of *Cornwal*, who was their Commander in those Wars.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE

British History.

The Twelfth Book.

CHAP. I.

Caduan *by a Treaty poſſeſſes all* Britain *on this Side the* Humber, *and* Edelfrid *the reſt.*

AFTER this all the Princes of the *Britains* met together at the City of *Legeceſter*, and conſented to make *Caduan* their King, that under his Command they might purſue *Edelfrid* beyond the *Humber*. Accordingly as ſoon as he was crowned, they flocked together from all Parts and paſſed the *Humber*: Of which when *Edelfrid* had Intelli-

Digitized by Google

gence, he entred into a Confederacy with all the *Saxon* Kings, and went to meet *Caduan*. At last as they were forming their Troops for a Battle, their Friends came, and made Peace between them on these Terms; That *Caduan* should enjoy that Part of *Britain* which lies on this Side the *Humber*, and *Edelfrid* that which is beyond it. As soon as they had confirmed this Agreement with an Oath made to their Hostages, there commenced such a Friendship between them, that they had all Things common. In the mean Time it happened, that *Edelfrid* banished his own Wife and married another, and bore so great a Hatred to her that was banished, that he would not suffer her to live in the Kingdom of *Northumberland*. Whereupon she being with Child went to King *Caduan*, to desire that by his Mediation she might be restored to her Husband. But when *Edelfrid* could by no Means be brought to consent to it, she continued to live with *Caduan*, till she was delivered of the Son which she had conceived. A little Time after her Delivery, *Caduan* also had a Son born to him by the Queen his Wife, she having been big at the same Time. Then were the two Boys brought up together in a Manner suitable to their royal Birth, one of which was called *Cadwallo*, the other *Edwin*. When they were come up near to Mens Estate, their Parents sent

Digitized by Google

ſent them to *Salomon* King of the *Armorican Britains*, that in his Court they might learn the Diſcipline of War, and other Princely Qualifications. This Prince therefore received them graciouſly, and admitted them to an Intimacy with him; ſo that there was none of their Age in the whole Court, that had a freer Acceſs to, or could more familiarly diſcourſe with the King than they. At laſt he himſelf was an Eye-witneſs of their Exploits againſt the Enemy, in which they very much ſignalized their Valour.

CHAP. II.

Cadwallo *breaks the Covenant he had made with* Edwin.

IN Proceſs of Time when their Parents were dead, they returned to *Britain*, where they took upon them the Government of the Kingdom, and began to Practice the ſame Friendſhip their Fathers had done. Two Years after this, *Edwin* asked Leave of *Cadwallo* to wear a Crown, and to celebrate the ſame Solemnities, as had been uſed of old in the Parts of *Northumberland*. And when they had begun a Treaty upon this Subject by the River *Duglas*, that the

Digitized by Google

Matter might be adjusted according to the Advice of their wise Counsellers; it happened that *Cadwallo* was laying on the other Side of the River in the Lap of a certain Nephew of his, whose Name was *Brian*. While Ambassadors were negociating between them, *Brian* wept, and shed Tears so plentifully, that the Kings Face and Beard was wet with them. The King imagining that it rained, lifted up his Face, and seeing the young Man overflowing with Tears, asked him the Occasion of so sudden Grief. "Good Reason, said he, have I and "the whole *British* Nation to weep continually, which has groaned under the Oppression of Barbarians ever since the Time "of *Malgo*, and has not yet got a Prince, "to restore it to its ancient flourishing State. "And even the little Honour that it had "left, is lessened by your Indulgence; since "the *Saxons*, who are only Strangers, and "always Traitors to our Country, must "now be permitted to wear the same Crown "as you do. For when once they shall attain to regal Dignity, it will be a great "Addition to their Glory in the Country "from whence they came; and they may "sooner invite over their Countrymen, for "the utter Extirpation of our Race. For "they have been always accustomed to "Treachery, and never to keep Faith with "any: Which I think should be a Reason

"for

Digitized by Google

" for our keeping them under, and not for " exalting them. When King *Vortegirn* " first retained them in his Service, they " made a ſhew of living peaceably, and " fighting for our Country, till they had " an Opportunity of practiſing their Wick- " edneſs; and then they returned Evil for " Good, betray'd him, and made a cruel " Maſſacre of the People of the Kingdom. " Afterwards they betray'd *Aurelius Ambro-* " *ſius*, to whom, even after the moſt tre- " mendous Oaths of Fidelity, at a Banquet " with him they gave a Draught of Poiſon. " They alſo betray'd *Arthur*, when ſetting " aſide the Covenant by which they were " bound, they joined with his Nephew " *Modred*, and fought againſt him. Laſtly " they broke Faith with King *Caretius*, " and brought in upon him *Gormund* King " of the *Africans*, by whoſe Diſturbances " our People were robbed of their Coun- " try, and the King ſcandalouſly driven " out.

CHAP. III.

A Quarrel between Cadwallo *and* Edwin.

AT the mentioning of these Things by him, *Cadwallo* repented of his entring upon this Treaty, and sent Word to *Edwin*, that he could by no Means induce his Counsellers to consent to his Petition. For they alledge, that it is contrary to Law and the ancient Establishment, that an Island, which has always had no more than one Crown, should be now under Subjection to two Crowned Heads. This Message incensed *Edwin*, and made him break off the Conference, and retire into *Northumberland*, saying, he would be crowned without *Cadwallo*'s Leave. When *Cadwallo* was told this, he declared to him by his Ambassadors, that he would cut off his crowned Head, if he presumed to wear a Crown within the Kingdom of *Britain*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. IV.

Cadwallo *being vanquiſhed by* Edwin *is driven out of the Kingdom.*

THIS proved the Occaſion of a War between them, in which after ſeveral Engagements between their Men, they at laſt met together themſelves beyond the *Humber*, and had a Battle, wherein *Cadwallo* loſt many thouſand of his Followers, and was put to Flight. From hence he marched with Precipitation through *Albania*, and went over to *Ireland*. But *Edwin* after this Victory, led his Army through the Provinces of the *Britains*, and burning the Cities before him, grievouſly tortured the Citizens and Country People. During this Exerciſe of his Cruelty, *Cadwallo* never ceaſed endeavouring to return back to his Country in a Fleet, but without Succeſs; becauſe to whatever Port he ſteered, *Edwin* met him with his Forces, and hindered his landing. For there was come to him from *Spain* a very skilful Southſayer named *Pollitus*, who by the Flight of Birds, and the Courſes of the Stars, foretold him all the Diſaſters that would happen. By this means *Edwin* getting Knowledge of *Cadwallo*'s Return, prepared to meet him, and ſhattered his Ships ſo that he

Digitized by Google

he drowned his Men and beat him off from all his Ports. *Cadwallo* not knowing what Courſe to take, was almoſt in Deſpair of ever returning. At laſt it came into his Head, to go to *Salomon* King of the *Armorican Britains*, that he might deſire his Aſſiſtance and Advice, to enable him to return to his Kingdom. And ſo as he was ſteering his Courſe towards *Armorica*, a very ſtrong Tempeſt roſe on a ſudden, which diſperſed the Ships of his Companions, and in a ſhort Time left no two of them together. The Pilot of the Kings Ship was ſeized immediately with ſo great a Fear, that quitting the Stern, he left the Veſſel to the Diſpoſal of Fortune; ſo that all that Night it was toſſed up and down in great Danger by the raging Waves. The next Morning they arrived at a certain Iſland called *Garnarea*, where with very great Difficulty they got aſhore. *Cadwallo* was forthwith ſeized with ſuch Grief for the Loſs of his Companions, that for three Days and Nights together he refuſed to eat, but lay Sick upon his Bed. The fourth Day he was taken with a very great longing for ſome Veniſon, and cauſing *Brian* to be called, made him acquainted with it. Whereupon *Brian* took his Bow and Quiver, and went through the Iſland, that if he could light on any wild Beaſt, he might get a Repaſt of it. And when he had walked over the whole Iſland,

Digitized by Google

Iſland, without finding what he was in Queſt of, he was extremely concerned that he could not gratify his Maſters Deſire; and was afraid his Sickneſs would prove Mortal, if his Longing were not ſatisfied. He therefore fell upon a new Device, and cut a piece of Fleſh out of his own Thigh, which he roaſted upon a Spit, and carried to the King for Veniſon. The King thinking it to be real Veniſon, began to eat of it to his great Refreſhment, admiring the Sweetneſs of it, which he fancied exceeded any Fleſh he ever had taſted before. At laſt when he had fully ſatisfied his Appetite, he became chearfuller and brisker, and in three Days Time was perfectly well again. Then the Wind ſtanding fair, he gets ready his Ship; and hoiſing Sails they purſue their Voyage, and arrive at the City *Kidaleta*. From thence they go to King *Salomon*, by whom they are received kindly and with all ſuitable Reſpect: And as ſoon as he had learned the Occaſion of their Coming, he made them a Promiſe of Aſſiſtance, and ſpoke to them as follows.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. V.

The Speech of Salomon *King of* Armorica *to* Cadwallo.

"IT is a Grief to Us, Noble Youths, "that the Country of your Ancestors is oppreſſed by a barbarous Nation, and that you are ignominiouſly driven out of it. But ſince other Men are able to defend their Kingdoms, it is a Wonder your People ſhould loſe ſo fruitful an Iſland, and not be able to withſtand the Nation of the *Angles*, whom our Countrymen have in Contempt. While the People of this Country lived together with yours in your *Britain*, they bore ſway over all the provincial Kingdoms, and never could be ſubdued by any Nation but the *Romans*. Neither did the *Romans* do this by their own Power, as I have been lately informed, but by a Diſſenſion among the Nobility of the Iſland. And even the *Romans*, though they held it under their ſubjection for a Time, yet upon the Loſs and Slaughter of their Rulers, were driven out with Diſgrace. But after the *Britains* came into this Province under the Conduct of *Maximian* and *Conan*, thoſe that remained never had the Happineſs afterwards of holding an uninterrupted Poſſeſſion of the Crown. For

"though

Digitized by Google

" though many of their Princes maintained
" the ancient Dignity of their Anceſtors;
" yet their weak Heirs that ſucceeded, and
" which were more in Number, entirely
" loſt it, upon the Invaſion of their Ene-
" mies. Therefore I am grieved for the
" Weakneſs of your People, ſince we are
" of the ſame Race with you, and the Name
" *Britains* is common to you, and to the
" Nation that bravely defends their Coun-
" try, which you ſee at War with all its
" Neighbours.

CHAP. VI.

Cadwallo's *Anſwer to* Salomon.

WHEN he had concluded his Speech, *Cadwallo*, who was a little put to the Bluſh, anſwered him after this Manner: " Royal Sir, whoſe Deſcent is from a Race of
" Kings; I give you many Thanks for your
" Promiſe of aſſiſting me to recover my
" Kingdom. But what you ſay is a Won-
" der, that my People have not maintained
" the Dignity of their Anceſtors, ſince the
" Time that the *Britains* came to theſe Pro-
" vinces, I am far from thinking to be ſuch.
" For the nobleſt Men of the whole King-
" dom followed thoſe Leaders, and there
" remained only the baſer Sort to enjoy their
" Honours; who being raiſed to a high
Quality,

Digitized by Google

" Quality, on a ſudden were puffed up above
" what their Station required; and grown
" wanton with Affluence of Riches, gave
" themſelves up to commit *ſuch Fornication,*
" *as is not ſo much as named among the Gen-*
" *tiles*; and (as *Gildas* the Hiſtorian teſti-
" fies;) were not only guilty of this Vice,
" but of all the Enormities that are incident
" to humane Nature. And that which
" chiefly prevailed, to the entire Overthrow
" of all Goodneſs, was the Hatred of
" Truth with its Aſſertors, the Love of a
" Lye with the Inventors of it, the embra-
" cing of Evil for Good, the Veneration of
" Wickedneſs for Grace, the receiving of
" *Satan* for an Angel of Light. Kings were
" anointed, not for the ſake of God, but
" ſuch as were more cruel than the reſt;
" and were ſoon after Murdered by their
" Anointers, without Examination, having
" choſen others yet more cruel in their
" Room. But if any of them ſhew'd any
" Mildneſs, or ſeemed a Favourer of Truth,
" againſt him, as the Subverter of *Britain*,
" was all their Malice and their Weapons
" bent. In ſhort, Things pleaſing to God
" or diſpleaſing, with them had the ſame
" Weight, if the worſe were not the weigh-
" tier. Therefore were all Affairs mana-
" ged contrary to publick Safety, as if the
" true Phyſician of all had left them deſti-
" tute of Cure. And thus was every Thing
" done

" done without Diſcretion, and that not
" only by Secular Men, but by the Lords
" Flock, and its Paſtors. Therefore it is not
" to be wondred, that ſuch a degenerate
" Race, ſo odious to God for their Vices,
" loſt a Country which they had ſo heinouſ-
" ly corrupted. For God was willing to
" execute his Vengeance upon them, by ſuffe-
" ring a Foreign People to come upon them,
" who were to drive us out of our Poſſeſſions.
" Notwithſtanding it would be a worthy
" Act, if God would permit it, to reſtore
" our Subjects to their ancient Dignity, to
" prevent the Reproach that may be thrown
" upon our Race, that we were weak Ru-
" lers, who did not exert ourſelves in our
" own Defence. And I do the more freely
" ask your Aſſiſtance, as you are of the
" ſame Blood with us. For the great *Mal-*
" *go*, who was the fourth King of *Britain*
" after *Arthur*, had two Sons, named *En-*
" *nianus* and *Runo*. *Enniauus* begot *Belin*,
" *Belin Jago*, *Jago Caduan* who was my
" Father. *Runo*, who after his Brothers
" Death was driven out by the *Saxons*,
" came to this Province and beſtow'd his
" Daughter on Duke *Hoel*, the Son of that
" great *Hoel* who ſhared with *Arthur* in his
" Conqueſts. Of her was born *Alan*, of
" *Alan Hoel* your Father, who while he
" lived was a Terrour to all *Gaul*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VII.

Brian *kills* Edwins *Magician.*

IN the mean Time while he was ſpending the Winter with *Salomon*, they entred upon a Reſolution, that *Brian* ſhould paſs over into *Britain*, and take ſome Method to kill *Edwins* Magician, leſt he might by his uſual Art inform him of *Cadwallo*'s coming. And when with this *Deſign he* had arrived at *Hamo*'s Port, he took upon himſelf the Habit of a poor Man, and made himſelf a ſtaff of Iron ſharp at the End, with which he might kill the Magician, if he ſhould happen to meet with him. From thence he went to *York*, where *Edwin* then reſided; and when entred that City joined himſelf to the poor People, that waited for Alms before the Kings Gate. But as he was going to and fro, it happened that his Siſter came out of the Hall, with a Baſon in her Hand, to fetch Water for the Queen. She had been taken by *Edwin* at the City of *Worceſter*, when after *Cadwallo*'s Flight he was acting his Hoſtilities upon the Provinces of the *Britains*. As ſhe was therefore paſſing by *Brian*, he immediately knew her, and breaking forth into Tears, called to her with a low Voice; at which the

Digitized by Google

the Damsel turning her Face, was in Doubt at first who it should be, but upon a nearer Approach discovered it to be her Brother, and was near falling into a Swoon, for Fear he might by some unlucky Accident be known and taken by the Enemy. She therefore forbore Saluting him; or entring into familiar Discourse with him, but told him in short, as if she was talking upon some other Subject, the State of the Court, and shew'd him the Magician he was enquiring for, who as it happened was at that very Time walking among the poor People, while the Alms was a Distributing among them. *Brian*, as soon as he had taken Knowledge of the Man, ordered his Sister to Steal out privately from her Apartment the Night following, and come to him hard by an old Church without the City, where he would conceal himself in Expectation of her. Then dismissing her, he thrust himself in among the Crowd of poor People, in that Part where *Pellitus* was placing them. And the same Moment he got Access to him, he lifted up his Staff, and at once gave him such a Stab under the Breast as killed him. This done, he threw away his Staff, and passed undistinguished among the rest, and unsuspected by any of the Bystanders, and by good Providence got to the Place of Concealment which he had appointed. His Sister, when Night came on, endeavoured

Digitized by Google

what she could to get out, but was not able; because *Edwin*, being terrified at the Killing of *Pellitus*, had set a strict Watch about the Court, who making a narrow Search refused to let her go out. When *Brian* found this, he retired from that Place and went to *Exeter*, where he called together the *Britains*, and told them what he had done. Afterwards having dispatched away Messengers to *Cadwallo*, he fortified that City, and sent Word to all the *British* Nobility, that they should bravely defend their Cities and Towns, and joyfully expect *Cadwallo*'s coming to their Relief in a short Time, with auxiliary Forces from *Salomon*. Upon the spreading of this News over the whole Island, *Peanda* King of the *Mercians* with a very great Army of *Saxons* came to *Exeter*, and besieged *Brian*.

CHAP. VIII.

Cadwallo *takes* Peanda, *and routs his Army.*

IN the mean Time arrived *Cadwallo* with ten thousand Men, whom King *Salomon* had delivered to him; and with them marched straight to the Siege against King *Peanda*. But as he was going, he divided his

Digitized by Google

his Forces into four Parts, and then made no Delay to advance and join Battel with the Enemy, wherein *Peanda* was forthwith taken, and his Army routed. For finding no other Way for his own Safety, he surrendred himself to *Cadwallo*, and gave Hostages, with a Promise that he would assist him against the *Saxons*. *Cadwallo* after this Success against him, summoned together his Nobility that had been a long Time in a decaying State, and marched to *Northumberland* against *Edwin*, and made continual Devastations in that Country. When *Edwin* was informed of it, he assembled all the petty Kings of the *Angles*, and meeting the *Britains* in a Field called *Hevefeld*, presently gave them Battle, but was killed, and almost all the People with him, together with *Offrid* his Son, and *Godbold* King of the *Orkneys*, who had come to their Assistance.

CHAP. IX.

Cadwallo *kills* Ofric *and* Adan *in Fight.*

HAVING thus obtained the Victory, *Cadwallo* marched through the Provinces of the *Angles*, and committed such Outrages upon the *Saxons*, that he neither spared Age

Digitized by Google

nor Sex: For his Resolution being to extirpate the whole Race out of *Britain*, all that ever he found he put to extreme Tortures. After this he had a Battel with *Osric Edwins* Successor, and killed him together with his two Nephews, who ought to have reigned after him. He also killed *Adan* King of the *Scots*, who came to their Assistance.

CHAP. X.

Oswald *Routs* Peanda *in Fight, but is killed by* Cadwallo *coming in upon him.*

THEIR Deaths made Room for *Oswald* to succeed to the Kingdom of *Northumberland*; but *Cadwallo* drove him with the rest that had given him Disturbance, to the very Wall, which the Emperor *Severus* had built of old between *Britain* and *Scotland*. Afterwards he sent *Peanda* King of the *Mercians*, and the greatest Part of his Army to the same Place, to give him Battel. But *Oswald*, as he was Besieged one Night by *Peanda* in the Place called *Hevefeld*, that is, the heavenly Field, set up there our Lords Cross, and commanded his Men to speak with a very loud Voice these Words; "Let us all kneel down, and pray "the

Digitized by Google

" the Almighty, living and true God, to " defend us from the proud Army of the " King of *Britain*, and his wicked Leader " *Peanda*. For he knows how justly we wage " this War for the Safety of our People." They all therefore did as he commanded them, and advanced at Break of Day against the Enemy, and by the Merit of their Faith gained the Victory. *Cadwallo* upon hearing this News, being inflamed with Rage, assembled his Army, and went in pursuit of the holy King *Oswald*; and in a Battel he had with him at a Place called *Burne*, *Peanda* broke in upon him and Killed him.

CHAP. XI.

Oswin *submits to* Cadwallo. Peanda *desires leave of* Cadwallo *to make War against him.*

OSWALD with many thousands of his Men being killed, his Brother *Oswin* succeeded him in the Kingdom of *Northumberland*, and by making large Presents of Gold and Silver to *Cadwallo*, who was now possessed of the Government of all *Britain*, made his Peace and Submission to him. Upon this *Alfrid* his Brother and *Oidwald* his Brothers Son began an Insurrection; but

Digitized by Google

being not able to hold out againſt him, they fled to *Peanda* King of the *Mercians*, deſiring him to aſſemble his Army and paſs the *Humber* with them, that he might deprive *Oſwin* of his Kingdom. But *Peanda* fearing to break the Peace, which *Cadwallo* had ſettled through the Kingdom of *Britain*, deferred beginning any Diſturbance without his Leave, till he could ſome Way work him up, either to make War himſelf upon *Oſwin*, or allow him the Liberty of doing it. At a certain Pentecoſt therefore, when *Cadwallo* was celebrating that Feſtival at *London*, and for the greater Solemnity wore the Crown of *Britain*, all the Kings of the *Angles*, excepting only *Oſwin*, being preſent, as alſo all the Dukes of the *Britains*; *Peanda* went to the King, and enquired of him the Reaſon, why *Oſwin* alone was wanting, when all the Princes of the *Saxons* were preſent. *Cadwallo* anſwered, That his Sickneſs was the Cauſe of it; to which the other reply'd, That he had ſent over to *Germany* for more *Saxons*, to revenge the Death of his Brother *Oſwald* upon them both. He told him further, that he had broke the Peace of the Kingdom, as being the ſole Author of the War and Diſſenſion among them; ſince *Edelfrid* King of *Northumberland* and *Oidwald* his Brothers Son, had been by him haraſſed with a War, and driven out of their own Country. He alſo

Digitized by Google

also desired Leave, either to kill him, or banish him the Kingdom.

CHAP. XII.

Cadwallo *is advised to suffer* Peanda *to make an Insurrection against* Oswin.

THIS Matter made the King enter upon various Thoughts, and hold a private Consultation with his intimate Friends, what Course to take. Among the rest that offered their Proposals, *Margadud* King of the *Demetians*, spoke as follows; "Royal Sir, since you have proposed "to expel the Race of the *Angles* from the "Coasts of *Britain*, why do you alter your "Resolution, and suffer them to continue "in Peace among us? At least you may "permit them to fall out among themselves, "and let our Country owe its Deliverance "to their own civil Broils. No Faith is to "be kept with one that knows nothing but "Treachery, and is continually laying "Snares for him to whom he owes Fidelity. Such have the *Saxons* always been "to our Nation, from the very first Time "of their coming among us. What Faith "ought we to keep with them? Let *Pean-*

Digitized by Google

" *da* immediately have Leave to go againſt
" *Oſwin*, that by this civil Diſſenſion and
" Deſtruction of one another, our Iſland
" may get rid of them.

CHAP. XIII.

Peanda *is killed by* Oſwin : Cadwallo *dies*.

BY theſe and other Words to the ſame Effect, *Cadwallo* was prevailed upon to grant *Peanda* the Leave he deſired: Who thereupon aſſembling together a vaſt Army went to the *Humber*, and by laying waſte that Country, began a fierce War upon the King. *Oſwin* was at laſt reduced to ſuch Extremity, that he was forced to promiſe him innumerable Royal Ornaments, and other Preſents more than one would believe, to make him deſiſt from ruining his Country, and return home without committing any more Hoſtilites. But when the other could by no Entreaties be prevailed upon to do it, the King in Hopes of Divine Aſſiſtance, though he had a leſs Army, however gave him Battle near the River *Winned*, and having killed *Peanda* and thirty other Commanders, gained the Victory. *Peanda* being killed, *Wulfred* his Son, by a Grant from *Cadwallo*,

Digitized by Google

wallo, succeeded to the Kingdom, and joining with *Eba* and *Edbert* two Leaders of the *Mercians*, rebelled against *Oswin*; but at last by *Cadwallo*'s Command made Peace with him. At length after forty eight Years were expired, that most noble and potent King of the *Britains Cadwallo*, being grown infirm with Age and Sickness, departed this Life upon the fifteenth of the Calends of *December*. The *Britains* embalmed his Body, and placed it with wonderful Art in a brazen Statue, which was cast according to the Measure of his Stature. This Statue they set up with complete Armour, upon an admirable beautiful brazen Horse, over the Western Gate of *London*, for a Monument of the abovementioned Victory, and for a Terrour to the *Saxons*. They also built under it a Church in Honour of St. *Martin*, in which Divine Obsequies are celebrated for him and the faithful deceased.

CHAP. XIV.

Cadwallader *succeeds* Cadwallo.

HE was succeeded in the Kingdom by *Cadwallader* his Son, whom *Bede* calls the Youth *Elidualda*. At first he maintained

Digitized by Google

ned the Government with Peace and Honour, but after twelve Years Enjoyment of the Crown, he fell into a Fit of Sickneſs, and a Civil War broke out among the *Britains*. His Mother was *Peanda*'s Siſter, by the ſame Father but a different Mother, deſcended from the noble Race of the *Gemiſſeans*. For *Cadwallo*, after his Reconciliation with her Brother, made her the Partner of his Bed, and had *Cadwallader* by her.

CHAP. XV.

The Britains *are compelled by Peſtilence and Famine to leave* Britain. Cadwalladers *Lamentation.*

DURING his Sickneſs, the *Britains* (as we ſaid before) quarrelling among themſelves, make a wicked Deſtruction of a rich Country; and this again was attended with another Misfortune. For this beſotted People was puniſhed with a grievous and memorable Famine; ſo that every Province was deſtitute of all manner of Suſtenance, but what could be taken in Hunting. After the Famine followed a terrible Peſtilence, which in a ſhort Time deſtroyed

Digitized by Google

deſtroyed ſuch Multitudes of People, that the Living were not ſufficient to bury the Dead. Thoſe of them that remained, flying their Country in whole Troops together, went to the Countries beyond Sea, and while they were under Sail they with a mournful howling Voice Sung; *Thou haſt given us, O God, like Sheep appointed for Meat, and haſt ſcattered us among the Heathen.* Alſo *Cadwallader* himſelf, in his Voyage with his miſerable Fleet to *Armorica*, made this Addition to the Lamentation. "Wo to "us Sinners, for our grievous Impieties, "wherewith we have not ceaſed to pro- "voke God, while we had ſpace for Re- "pentance. Therefore does the Revenge "of his Power lye heavy upon us, and "extirpate us out of our native Soil; which "neither the *Romans* of Old, nor the "*Scots* or *Picts* afterwards, nor yet the "Treacherous *Saxons* with all their Craft "were able to do. But in vain have we re- "covered our Country ſo often from them; "ſince it was not the Will of God, that we "ſhould perpetually hold the Government "of it. He who is the true Judge, when "he ſaw we were by no means to be re- "claimed from our Wickedneſs, and that "no humane Power could expel our Race, "was willing to chaſtiſe our Folly himſelf; "and has turned his Anger againſt us, by "which we are driven out in Crowds from

"our

Digitized by Google

" our native Country. Return therefore
" ye *Romans*; return *Scots* and *Picts*; re-
" turn *Ambrons* and *Saxons*: Behold, *Bri-*
" *tain* lays open to you being now by the
" Wrath of God made desolate, which you
" were never able to do. It is not your
" Valour that expells us; but the Power
" of the supreme King, whom we never
" ceased to provoke.

CHAP. XVI.

Cadwallader *with his People goes to* Alan: *The* Saxons *seize all* Britain.

WITH these dolorous Complaints he arrived at the *Armorican* Coast, and went with his whole Company to King *Alan* the Nephew of *Salomon*, by whom he was honourably received. So that *Britain* being now destitute of its ancient Inhabitants, excepting a few in *Wales* that escaped the general Mortality, became a frightful Place even to the *Britains* themselves for eleven Years after. Neither was it at the same Time any kinder to the *Saxons*, who died in it without Intermission. Notwithstanding the Remainder of them, after this raging Plague was ceased, according to their old

Digitized by Google

old Custom sent Word over to their Countrymen, that the Island of *Britain* was now free'd of its native Inhabitants, and lay open to them, if they would come over to inhabit it. As soon as they had received this Information, that odious People, gathering together an innumerable Multitude of Men and Women, arrived in the Parts of *Northumberland*, and inhabited the Provinces that lay desolate from *Albania* to *Cornwal*. For there was now no Body to hinder them, excepting the wretchedly poor Remains of the *Britains*, who continued together in the Thickets of the Woods in *Wales*. From that Time the Power of the *Britains* ceased in the Island, and the *Angles* began their Reign.

CHAP. XVII.

Cadwallader *is by the Voice of an Angel deterred from returning to* Britain.

AFTER some space of Time, when the People had recovered Strength, *Cadwallader* being mindful of his Kingdom, which was now free from the Contagion of the Pestilence, desired Assistance of *Alan* towards the recovering of his Dominions.

Digitized by Google

ons. The King granted his Requeſt; but as he was getting ready a Fleet, he was commanded by the loud Voice of an Angel to deſiſt from his Enterprize. For God was not willing the *Britains* ſhould Reign any longer in the Iſland., before the Time came which *Merlin* prophetically foretold *Arthur* of. It alſo commanded him to go to *Rome* to Pope *Sergius*, where after doing Penance he ſhould be inrolled among the Saints. It told him withal, that the *Britains* by the Merit of their Faith ſhould again recover the Iſland, when the Time decreed for it was come. But this would not be accompliſhed, before they ſhould be poſſeſſed of his Reliques, and tranſport them from *Rome* into *Britain*. At the ſame Time alſo ſhould the Reliques of the other Saints be found, which had been hid on Account of the Invaſion of Pagans; and then at laſt would they recover their loſt Kingdom. When the holy Prince had received the heavenly Meſſage, he went ſtraight to King *Alan*, and gave him an Account of what had been told him.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XVIII.

Cadwallader *goes to* Rome *and dies.*

THEN *Alan* had Recourſe to ſeveral Books, as the Propheſies of the Eagle that propheſied at *Shaftsbury*, and the Verſes of *Sibyl* and *Merlin*; and made diligent ſearch in them, to ſee whether the Revelation made to *Cadwallader* agreed with thoſe written Oracles. And when he could find nothing contradictory to it, he admoniſhed *Cadwallader* to ſubmit to the Divine Diſpenſation, and laying aſide the Thoughts of *Britain*, perform what the Angelical Voice had commanded him. But moved him withal, to ſend his Son *Ivor* and his Nephew *Ini* over into the Iſland, to govern the Remainder of the *Britains*; for Fear a Nation, that was deſcended of ſo ancient a Race, might loſe their Liberty by the Incurſions of Barbarians. Then *Cadwallader* renouncing worldly Cares for the ſake of God and his everlaſting Kingdom, went to *Rome*, and was confirmed by Pope *Sergius*: And being ſeized with a ſudden Illneſs was upon the twelfth of the Calends of *May*, in the ſix hundred and eighty ninth Year of our Lords Incarnation, free'd from the Corruption of the Fleſh, and admitted into the Glories of the heavenly Kingdom.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIX.

The two Britains Ivor *and* Ini *in vain infeſt the Nation of the* Angles. Adelſtan *the firſt King of the* Angles.

AS ſoon as *Ivor* and *Ini* had got together their Ships, they with all the Forces they could raiſe arrived in the Iſland, and for forty nine Years together cruelly infeſted the Nation of the *Angles*, but to little Purpoſe. For the abovementioned Mortality and Famine, together with the inveterate Spirit of Faction that was among them, had made this proud People ſo much degenerate, that they were not able to gain any Advantage of the Enemy. And being now alſo overrun with Barbarity, they were no longer called *Britains*, but *Gualenſes*, *Welſhmen*; a Word derived either from *Gualo* their Leader, or *Guales* their Queen, or from their Barbarity. But the *Saxons* managed Affairs with more Prudence, maintained Peace and Concord among themſelves, tilled their Grounds, rebuilt their Cities and Towns, and ſo throwing off the Dominion of the *Britains*, bore ſway over all *Loegria*, under their Leader *Adelſtan*, who firſt wore a Crown amongſt

Digitized by Google

amongſt them. But the *Welſhmen*, being very much degenerated from the Nobility of the *Britains*, never after recovered the Monarchy of the Iſland; on the contrary, what by Quarrels among themſelves, what by Wars with the *Saxons*, their Country was a perpetual Scene of Miſery and Slaughter.

CHAP. XX.

Jeffrey *of* Monmouth's *Concluſion.*

BUT as for the Kings that have ſucceeded among them in *Wales*, ſince that Time, I leave the Hiſtory of them to *Karadoc* of *Lancarvan* my Contemporary; as I do alſo the Kings of the *Saxons* to *William* of *Malmesbury*, and *Henry* of *Huntington*. But I adviſe them to be ſilent concerning the Kings of the *Britains*, ſince they have not that Book writ in the *Britiſh* Tongue, which *Walter* Archdeacon of *Oxford* brought out of *Britain*, and which being a true Hiſtory publiſhed in Honour of thoſe Princes. I have thus taken Care to Tranſlate.

FINIS.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

An EXPLICATION of the ancient Names of Countries, Cities, Rivers, Mountains, &c. mentioned in this Hiſtory.

N. B. *Thoſe Names are here omitted, which the Hiſtory itſelf explains wherever it mentions them: As alſo thoſe, concerning which we have now no certain Knowledge, or probable Conjecture.*

A.

MOUNT *Agned* or *Maidens Caſtle*, now **Edenburgh Caſtle.**

Akalon. Milton conjectures the Author means the **Achelous**, or the **Acheron**, both Rivers in *Greece.*

Alba, in Book I. Chap. 3. it means the City of **Albano** in *Italy*, but elſewhere the River **Aube** in *France.*

Albania, **Scotland.**

Alclud, **Dunbritton** in *Scotland.*

Digitized by Google

Allobroges, the ancient Inhabitants of a Part of *Savoy* and *Switzerland*.
Mountain of *Ambrius*, **Ambresbury** in *Wiltshire*.
Andegavia, the Dutchy of **Anjou** in *France*.
Aquitain, the Province of **Guienne** in *France*.
Armorica, **Britain** in *France*.
Isle of *Avallon*, **Glassenbury** in *Somersetshire*.
Augustodunum, **Autun** in *France*.

B.

BADON, **Bath** in *Somersetshire*.
Bajocæ, **Bayeux** in *France*.
Bangor, **Banchor** or **Bonium** in *Flintshire*, and not the City of this Name in *Caernarvonshire*.
Bolonia, **Bologn** in *France*.

C.

CALATERIUM, the Forest of **Galtres** in the North-Riding of *Yorkshire*.
Wood of *Caledon*, according to *Higdens Polychronicon*, means in B. IX. Ch. 3. **Celidon** Wood near *Lincoln*; though perhaps in some other Places of this Book, particularly in *Merlin*'s Prophesy, it may mean the **Caledontan** Wood in *Scotland*.
Cambula, the River **Camel** or **Alan** in *Cornwal*.

Camus,

Digitized by Google

Camus, no doubt the Author intends by it *Cadmus*, now **Caen** in *Normandy*.
Carguit or *Warguit*, probably **Warwick**.
Cenomania, the Country of **Maine** in *France*.
Cirecestre, **Cirencester** in *Glouceſterſhire*.
City of *Claudius*, **Glouceſter**.
Cloarius, a Hill upon the Banks of the River *Wye* in *Herefordſhire*: Its modern Name I do not find. See *Genoreu*.

D.

DACIA, our ancient *Engliſh* Hiſtorians commonly mean by it **Denmark**.
Daneian Wood, **Dean-Foreſt** in *Glouceſterſhire*.
Deira, a Province of the *Saxons* containing *Yorkſhire*, *Durham*, *Lancaſhire*, *Weſtmoreland* and *Cumberland*.
Demetia, **South-Wales**.
Dorobellum, probably **Deal** in *Kent*.
Dorobernia, **Canterbury**.
Duglas, the River **Dugleſs** in *Lancaſhire*.

E.

EPIFFROD, by *Nennius* and other Hiſtorians called *Epifford*, thought by *Camden* to be **Aleſford** in *Kent*.
Erir, **Snowdon-Hill** in *Wales*.

Digitized by Google

G.

GANIA, the River **Wye** in *Herefordſhire*.
Garnareia, the Name is unknown, tho' the Author probably means the Iſle of **Guernſey**.
Genorea, according to Archbiſhop *Uſher*, is a Village upon the *Wye* in *Herefordſhire*, that ſtill retains the ſame Name.
Godland, the Iſle of **Gothland** in the *Baltick* Sea.

H.

HAMO's Port, **Southampton**.
Hergin, **Herefordſhire**.
Hevefeld, ſuppoſed to be **Haledon** in *Northumberland*.

K.

KAERCONAN, **Connisborough** in the Weſt-Riding of *Yorkſhire*.
Kaerliudcoit, **Lincoln**.
Kaermerdin, **Caermarthen**.
Kaiceſter, probably **Chicheſter**.
Kambria, **Wales**.
Karitia, a Name wholly unknown, though perhaps the Author intends by it **Calais** in *France*.
Killaraus, **Kildare** in *Ireland*.

LAM,

Digitized by Google

L.

LAMGOEMAGOT, the Haw near *Plymouth.*
Lampatern, Llan-Badarn-dawr in *Cardiganſhire*, anciently an Epiſcopal See.
Legeceſter, Cheſter.
Lengria, Langres in *France.*
Lindeſia, Lincolnſhire.
Loegria, England.
Londoneſia, it means no doubt *Lodoneſia*, now Lothian in *Scotland.*
Lake *Lumond*, Lough-Lomond in *Scotland.*

M.

MALVA, a River in *Africa*, called by our modern Geographers Malvia, riſing in Mount *Atlas*, and running through the Kingdom of *Argiers* into the *Mediterranean* Sea.
Malvernia, Malvern in *Worceſterſhire.*
Mauritania, Barbary in *Africa.*
Menevia, St. Davids in *Pembrokeſhire.*
Mercia, one of the Kingdoms of the *Saxon* Heptarchy.
Mount of *Michael*, ſtill called Mount St. Michael, on the Coaſt of *Normandy.*
Morines, the ancient Inhabitants of the *Boulognois* in *France.*
Mureif, probably Murray in *Scotland.*

Digitized by Google

N.

NAVTGALLIM or *Gallemborne*, **Walbrook** in *London*.
Neuſtria, **Normandy** in *France*.

P.

MOUNT *Paladar*, **Shaftsbury** in *Dorſetſhire*.
Philenian Altars, two Altars erected between *Carthage* and *Cyrenaica* or *Barca*. V. *Salluſt. de Bello Jugurthino*.
Pictavia, **Poictou**, a Part of the Province of *Orleans* in *France*.
Portceſtre, formerly a famous Haven near *Portſmouth*.

R.

REDONUM **Rennes** in *France*.
Ruſcicada, ſome Geographers call it now **Stoza** or **Eſtoza**, in the Kingdom of *Tunis* in *Africa*.
Ruteni, the ancient Inhabitants of **Rovergue**, a Part of the Province of *Guienne* in *France*; alſo the City of **Rhodes** in *France*.
Rutupi, by ſome ſuppoſed to be **Richborrow** in *Kent*.

SALINÆ,

Digitized by Google

S.

SALINÆ, probably **Salines** in the Kingdom of *Tripoli* in *Africa*.

Senones, the ancient Inhabitants of the **Senonnois**, a Part of the Province of *Champagne* in *France*.

Stanheng, **Stonehenge** in *Wiltſhire*.

T.

TERIVANA, **Terouanne** formerly a great City, now a ſmall Village in the *Netherlands*.

Tintagol, **Tindagel** in *Cornwal*.

Trigeria, it is uncertain whether the Author means **Treguier** in the Province of *Britain* in *France*.

Trinovantum, **London**.

Tyrrhenian Sea, the Author can hardly be ſuppoſed to mean by it the Sea now ſo called upon the Coaſt of *Italy*. Some conjecture it ought to be read the *Pyrenean* Sea; at leaſt it ought to be ſome Part of the Sea that lies between the Straits of *Gibralter* and the Mouth of the *Loire* in *France*.

V.

VENEDOTIA, **North-Wales**.

Verolam, an ancient Town now in Ruins near St. *Albans* in *Hertfordſhire*.

WINNED,

Digitized by Google

W.

WINNED, ſuppoſed to be the River Ayre in *Yorkſhire*.

Wiſſeans, the ſame I conjecture as the Author in ſome Places calls *Gewiſſens*; and theſe were perhaps the *Wiccij*, who inhabited *Worceſterſhire*, and ſome adjoining Counties.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE INDEX.

A.

AARON a *Britiſh* Martyr in *Diocleſians* Perſecution. Book V. Chap. 5.
Adan King of the *Scots* in aſſiſting the *Saxons* is killed by *Cadwallo.* XII. 9.
Adelſtan the firſt King of the *Angles* that wore a Crown. XII. 19.
Æneas the *Trojan,* gains the Kingdom of *Italy* and marries *Lavinia.* I. 3.
Aganippus King of the *Franks* marries *Cordeilla* Daughter of King *Leir.* II. 11.
Agned M. by whom built. II. 7.
Alan King of *Armorica* conſults old Propheſies about *Cadwalladers* Revelation. XII. 18.
Alban, his Charity to his Confeſſor *Amphibalus,* and Martyrdom. V. 5.

Albanact

Digitized by Google

Albanact a Son of *Brutus*, killed by *Humber*. II. 1.
Albania called ſo from him. II. 1.
Albion the ancient Name of *Britain*. I. 16.
Alclud by whom built. II. 7.
Aldroen King of *Armorica*, his Anſwer to Archbiſhop *Guethelins* Petition. VI. 4. he ſends ſuccours to the *Britains*. *Ibid.*
Alfrid and *Oidwald* begin an Inſurrection againſt *Oſwin*. XII. 11.
Alifantinam King of *Spain*, is ſlain in a Battle with *Arthur*. X. 9.
Allectus having killed *Carauſius*, tyrannizes over the *Britains*. V. 4. is routed in Battle and killed by *Aſclepiodotus*. *Ibid.*
Ambrius Founder of a famous Monaſtery near *Salisbury*. VI. 15.
Anacletus is taken Priſoner by *Brutus*. I. 5. is compelled by him to betray the *Grecian* Camp. I. 8.
Andragius one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
Androgeus is made Duke of *Trinovantum* by *Caſſibellaun*. III. 20. his Quarrel with *Caſſibellaun*. IV. 8. his Letter to *Julius Cæſar*. *Ibid.* lies in Ambuſh for *Caſſibellaun*. IV. 9. his Anſwer to *Caſſibellauns* Meſſengers. *Ibid.* obliges *Cæſar* to a Reconciliation with *Caſſibellaun*. IV. 10. goes to *Rome* with *Cæſar*. IV. 11.
Antigonus Brother of *Pandraſus* is taken Priſoner by *Brutus*. I. 5.
Archflamens in *Britain* made Archbiſhops. IV. 19.

Arthgallo

Digitized by Google

Arthgallo is depoſed by the *Britains*. III. 17. his good Government after his Reſtauration. *Ibid.*

Arthmail one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Arthur is conceived in Adultery by his Mother *Igerna* being impoſed upon. VIII. 19. ſucceeds *Uther Pendragon* in the Kingdom and is Crowned by *Dubricius*. IX. 1. his Munificence and other great Qualities. *Ibid.* defeats *Colgrin* and beſieges him in *York*. *Ibid.* is adviſed by his Council to raiſe the Siege. *Ibid.* ſends for Aſſiſtance to *Hoel* King of *Armorica*. IX. 2. forces the *Saxons* to raiſe the Siege of *Lincoln*. IX. 3. beſieges them in the Wood of *Caledon*, and makes them Tributaries. *Ibid.* executes their Hoſtages for Breach of Treaty, and marches to *Badon* againſt them. *Ibid.* his Speech to his Soldiers before the Battle of *Badon*. *Ibid.* A Deſcription of his Armour. IX. 4. kills with his own Hand 470 Men, and overthrows the *Saxons*. *Ibid.* marches into *Albania* to relieve *Hoel*. IX. 5. after thrice defeating the *Scots* and *Picts*, beſieges them in the Lake *Lumond*. IX. 6. repulſes *Guillamurius* King of Ireland. *Ibid.* pardons the *Scots* and *Picts* at the Requeſt of their Clergy. *Ibid.* relates the wonderful Nature of ſome Ponds. IX. 7. reſtores *York* to its ancient Beauty. IX. 8. diſpoſes

Digitized by Google

diſpoſes of ſeveral great Preferments. IX. 9. marries *Guanhumara* a Lady of a *Roman* Family. *Ibid.* reduces *Ireland* and the Provincial Iſlands. IX. 10. invites to his Court all Perſons famed for *Chivalry*. IX. 11. ſubdues *Norway* and *Dacia*. *Ibid.* his Expedition into *Gaul* and great Succeſs there. *Ibid.* beſieges *Flollo* in *Paris* and kills him in a ſingle Combat. *Ibid.* reduces all *Gaul*, and divides it among his Princes. *Ibid.* ſummons his great Men from all Countries to a ſolemn Aſſembly at *Legions*. IX. 12. his Coronation and pompous Solemnity there deſcribed. IX. 13, 14. his Speech to his Princes upon the *Romans* demanding Tribute. IX. 16. his Anſwer to the *Roman* Ambaſſadors. IX. 20. commits to *Modred* and Queen *Guanhumara* the Government of *Britain*. X. 2. his Dream at *Hamo's Port*. *Ibid.* kills a *Spaniſh* Giant on M. *Michael*. X. 3. his Meſſage to *L. Tiberius*. X. 4. marſhals his Army for a general Battle with the *Romans*. X. 6. his Speech to his Soldiers before the Battle. X. 7. his great Exploits in this Battle and total Overthrow of the *Romans*. X. 11. gives Orders concerning the Burial of the Slain. X. 13. upon the News of *Modreds* Practices againſt him returns to *Britain*. XI. 1. his firſt Victory over *Modred*. *Ibid.* his ſecond Victory and Purſuit of him to *Cornwal*.

Digitized by Google

Cornwal. XI. 2. his third Victory. *Ibid.* he is mortally wounded and retires to the Isle of *Avallon*. *Ibid.* gives up the Crown to *Constantine*. *Ibid.*

Ascanius Son of *Æneas* builds *Alba* upon the *Tyber*. I. 3.

Aschillius K. of *Dacia* slain in Battle XI. 2.

Asclepiodotus frees the *Britains* from the *Roman* Yoke. V. 4. is made K. of *Britain*. V. 5. is killed in Battle by *Coel*. V. 6.

Assaracus joins with *Brutus* against the *Grecians*. I. 3.

Assaracus Son of *Ebraucus* obtains the Kingdom of *Germany*. II. 8.

Arviragus by Policy gains a Victory of *Claudius Cæsar*. IV. 13. kills *L. Hamo*. *Ibid.* by Advice of his Council makes his Submission to *Claudius*. IV. 14. his Fondness for his Wife *Genuissa* Daughter of *Claudius*. IV. 15. revolts from the *Romans*. IV. 16. his Battle with *Vespasian*, and Reconciliation with him. *Ibid.* his Character and Death. *Ibid.*

Augusel is made by *Arthur* K. of *Albania*. IX. 9. his Speech to *Arthur*. IX. 18. is killed in Battle with *Modred*. XI. 1.

Augustin is sent to preach the Gospel to the *Angles*. XI. 12.

Aurelius Ambrosius and *Uther Pendragon* fearing the Cruelty of *Vortegirn* fly into *Armorica*. VI. 8. *Aurelius* returns to *Britain* and is made King. VIII. 2. goes against *Vortegirn*.

Digitized by Google

Vortegirn. Ibid. his Reſentment to *Eldol* of *Vortegirn*'s wicked Practices. *Ibid.* burns him ſhut up in a Tower. *Ibid.* his noble Character. VIII. 3. twice defeats *Hengiſt* and the *Saxons*. VIII. 5. pardons *Octa* and *Eoſa* upon their ſurrendring themſelves. VIII. 8. his Care in repairing the Ruins made in *Britain*, and in reſtoring Things to their ancient State. VIII. 9. conſults with *Merlin* about erecting a Monument for the maſſacred *Britains*. VIII. 10, 11. with great Solemnity ſets up the Stones of the Giants Dance for their Monument. VIII. 12. is poiſoned by the Treachery of *Eopa* a *Saxon*. VIII. 14. is buried by the *Britiſh* Clergy within the Giants Dance. VIII. 16.

B.

BALDULPH in his March to relieve *Colgrin* is routed by *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*. IX. 1. by putting on a Diſguiſe gets Acceſs to *Colgrin* beſieged in *York*. *Ibid.* is killed at the Battle of *Badon*. IX. 4.

Bangor, its famous Church and Monaſtery. XI. 12.

Baſſianus having killed his Brother *Geta* ſucceeds in the Kingdom. V. 2. is ſlain in Battle by the Treachery of the *Picts*. V. 3.

Bedver is by *Arthur* made Governor of *Neuſtria*. IX. 11. performs the Office of Butler

Digitized by Google

ler at *Arthurs* Solemnity at *Legions*. IX. 13. is sent in Quest of a *Spanish* Giant. X. 3. is killed in the Battle by *Boccus* King of the *Medes*. X. 9.

Belinus gains the Crown by Right of Inheritance. III. 1. seizes upon *Northumberland*. III. 2. routs his Brother *Brennius* in Battle. III. 3. makes *Dacia* tributary to him. III. 4. confirms the *Molmutine* Laws. III. 5. makes several High-Ways. *Ibid.* his Reconciliation with *Brennius*. III. 7. assists *Brennius* in the Conquest of *Gaul*. III. 8. makes the *Romans* Tributaries. III. 9. surprizes the *Romans* in their March with a great Slaughter. *Ibid.* assists *Brennius* in the taking of *Rome*. *Ibid.* his Return to *Britain*. III. 10. his publick Buildings. *Ibid.* his Death and Burial. *Ibid.*

Belinus General of *Cassibellauns* Army. IV. 3.

Bladud King of *Britain* builds *Kaerbadus*, and makes the Baths there. II. 10. being a famous Magician he attempts to fly, but falls down dead. *Ibid.*

Blederic Commander of the *Britains* killed in Battle by *Edelfrid*. XI. 13.

Bleduno one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Blegabred King of *Britain* a famous Musician. III. 19.

Digitized by Google

Boccus King of the *Medes* having slain *Bedver* is killed by *Hirelgas*. X. 9.
Borellus Consul of the *Cenomanni* killed by *Evander* King of *Syria*. X. 5.
Boso's Gallant Behaviour against the *Romans*. X. 4. takes *Petreius Cotta*, a *Roman* Commander, Prisoner. *Ibid.*
Brennius quarrels with his Brother *Belinus*. III. 1. marries the King of *Norway*'s Daughter. *Ibid.* invades *Britain* III. 3. is defeated by *Belinus* and flies into *Gaul*. *Ibid.* is made King of the *Allobroges*. III. 6. his Return to *Britain* and Reconciliation with *Belinus*. III. 7. assists *Belinus* in the Conquest of *Gaul*. III. 8. and in the taking of *Rome*. III. 9. his Tyranny in *Italy*. III. 10.
Brian's Speech to *Cadwallo* upon his Treaty with *Edwin*. XII. 2. his strange Entertainment of him in the Island of *Garnereia*. XII. 4. in a Disguise kills *Pellitus Edwin*'s Southsayer. XII. 7.
Britael a King of *Demetia* and Attendant on *Cassibellaun*. IV. 3.
Britain described I. 2. its Inhabitants. *Ibid.* when divided under the Power of five Kings. II. 16. its Grandeur in K. *Arthurs* Time. IX. 13. during a Famine and Pestilence lays desolate for eleven Years. XII. 16.
Britains destroy the Giants that first Inhabited this Island. I. 16. their Valour praised by

Digitized by Google

by *Lucan.* IV. 9. revolt from the *Romans* upon the Death of *Lucius.* V. 1. being diſtreſſed by the *Picts* are relieved by a *Roman* Legion. VI. 1. their Diſtreſs cauſed by the Folly of *Maximian.* VI. 2. they are moſt grievouſly infeſted by *Guanius* and *Melga.* VI. 3. their Letter to *Agitius* a *Roman* Conſul *Ibid.* being relieved by *Conſtantine* they make him King. VI. 5. are betray'd by the *Saxons,* and great Numbers of them maſſacred. VI. 15. make *Aurelius Ambroſius* King. VIII. 2. keep up the Cuſtom of *Troy* at their publick Entertainments. IX. 13. their gallant Behaviour againſt the *Romans.* X. 4, 5. are upbraided for their Degeneracy by the Hiſtorian. XI. 9. retire in great Diſtreſs into *Cornwal, Wales* and *Armorica.* XI. 10. they loſe the Kingdom for a long Time. XI. 11. being puniſhed with Famine and Peſtilence they fly into *Armorica.* XII. 15 the End of their Government in the Iſland. XII. 16. the Time of their Reſtauration foretold by an Angel. XII. 17. the Reaſon of their Name being changed into that of *Welſhmen.* XII. 19.

Brocinail Commander of the *Britains* routed by *Edelfrid.* XI. 13.

Brutus by his Birth cauſes his Mothers Death. I. 3. undeſignedly kills his Father in hunting. *Ibid.* his Baniſhment into *Greece,*

Digitized by Google

and Acquaintance with the baniſhed *Trojans* there. *Ibid.* is made General of the *Trojans*. I. 4. his Letter to *Pandraſus* King of *Greece*. *Ibid.* defeats *Pandraſus* by ſurprize. I. 5. with Menaces obliges *Anacletus* to betray the *Grecian* Camp. I. 7. ſurprizes the Camp, and takes *Pandraſus* Priſoner. I. 9. marries *Ignoge* Daughter of *Pandraſus* and departs from *Greece*. I. 11. conſults the Oracle of *Diana* in the Iſland *Leogecia*. *Ibid.* his Voyage at Sea, and Arrival at *Aquitain*. I. 12. defeats *Goffarius Pictus* King of *Aquitain*. I. 13. deſtroys that Country with Fire and Sword. I. 14. is worſted in a ſecond Engagement by *Goffarius*. I. 15. gains a Victory of the *Gauls*. *Ibid.* arrives in *Britaid*. *Ibid.* calls this Iſland after his Name *Britain*. I. 16. builds *Trinovantum*. I. 17. his Death. II. 1.

Brutus ſurnamed *Greenſhield* ſucceeds *Ebraucus* in the Kingdom. II. 9.

Budec King of *Armorica* gives a princely Education to *Aurelius Ambroſius* and *Uther Pendragon*. VI. 8.

C.

CADOR Duke of *Cornwal* by a ſudden Aſſault defeats *Baldulf*. IX. 1. purſues the *Saxons* after the Battle of *Badon*, and forces them to ſurrender. IX. 5. his Speech to

Digitized by Google

to *Arthur* upon the *Romans* demanding Tribute. IX. 15.

Caduan being made King, by a Treaty with *Edelfrid* poſſeſſes all *Britain* on this Side the *Humber*. XII. 1.

Cadwallader after a peaceable Enjoyment of the Crown falls into a Fit of Sickneſs. XII. 14. his Lamentation in his Voyage to *Armorica*. XII. 15. is forbid by an Angel to return to *Britain*. XII. 17. goes to *Rome* to be confirmed, and there dies. XII. 18.

Cadwallo is educated by *Salomon* K. of *Armorica*. XII. 1. upon *Brians* Repreſentation breaks off a Treaty with *Edwin*. XII. 3. being routed by *Edwin* he flies into *Ireland*. XII. 4. meets with a grievous Storm at Sea in his Voyage to *Armorica*. *Ibid.* his ſtrange Repaſt in the Iſland of *Garnareia*. *Ibid.* his Speech to *Salomon*. XII. 6. returns with Forces from *Salomon* and defeats *Peanda*. XII. 8. his great Succeſs againſt *Edwin* and other Kings of the *Angles*. XII. 8, 9. celebrates the Feaſt of Pentecoſt with great Pomp. XII. 11. his Death and Interment in a Brazen Statue. XII. 13.

Julius Cæſar's Speech concerning the *Britains*. IV. 1. his firſt Invaſion of *Britain* and Defeat by *Caſſibellaun*. IV. 3. his Encounter with *Nennius*. *Ibid.* his abject Behaviour to the *Gauls*. IV. 5. the Diſtreſs of

Digitized by Google

of his Fleet, and his second Defeat by *Cassibellaun*. IV. 7. his Advantage over *Cassibellaun* by the Conspiracy of *Androgeus*. IV. 9. is compelled by the Menaces of *Androgeus* to a Reconciliation with *Cassibellaun*. III. 10. his return to *Rome*. *Ibid.*

Caius is by *Arthur* made Governour of *Andegavia*. IX. 11. performs the Office of Sewer at *Arthurs* Solemnity at *Legions*. IX. 13. is mortally wounded in Battle with the *Romans*. X. 9.

Caliburn, the Name of *Arthurs* Sword. IX. 4.

Cap, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Capoir, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Caradoc D. of *Cornwal*, his Advice to *Octavius* about a Successor to the Crown. V. 9. recommends *Maximian* to *Octavius*. V. 7.

Carausius by wicked Practices gains the Kingdom of *Britain*. V. 3. is killed by *Allectus*. V. 4.

Careticus K. of *Britain* is driven into *Wales* by *Gormund* K. of the *Africans*. XI. 8.

Cassibellaun made K. of *Britain* on Account of the Minority of his Nephews. III. 20. his Letter to *Julius Cæsar*. IV. 2. gains a Victory of *Cæsar*. IV. 3. by a Stratagem drowns *Cæsar*'s Ships. IV. 6. defeats and repulses *Cæsar* a second Time. IV. 7. makes a great Sacrifice to his Gods for his Success. IV. 8. quarrels with *Androgeus*

Digitized by Google

Androgeus D. of *Trinovantum*. *Ibid.* is by Reaſon of the Revolt of *Androgeus* defeated by *Cæſar*. IV. 9. his Meſſage to *Androgeus* in his Diſtreſs. *Ibid.* his Reconciliation with *Cæſar*. *Ibid.*

Catellus, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Catigern and *Horſus* in an Encounter kill each other. VI. 13.

Cheldric brings over a vaſt Fleet from *Germany*. IX. 1. is killed by *Cador*. D. of *Cornwal*. IX. 5.

Cheldric a *Saxon* Leader aſſiſts *Modred* againſt *Arthur*. XI. 1. is killed in Battle with him. XI. 2.

Cherin one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Cheulphus General of the *Morines* repulſed by *Brennius*. III. 1.

Claudius Cæſar invades *Britain*. IV. 12. is defeated by *Arviragus*. IV. 13. beſieges *Wincheſter*. IV. 14. is reconciled to *Arviragus*. *Ibid.* conquers the *Orkney* and other Iſlands. *Ibid.* builds *Glouceſter*. IV. 15. returns to *Rome*. *Ibid.*

Cledaucus one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Cletonus, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Cligueillus K. of *Britain*, his good Character. III. 19.

Cloten K. of *Cornwal* Father of *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17.

Coel

Digitized by Google

Coel makes Insurrection against *Asclepiodotus*. 5. 6. his Submission to *Constantius* and Death. *Ibid.*

Coillus one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Coillus K. of *Britain* his Amity with the *Romans*, and good Character. IV. 18.

Colgrin a *Saxon* Commander defeated by *Arthur* and besieged in *York*. IX. 1. killed at the Battle of *Badon*. IX. 4.

A Comet of wonderful Magnitude and Brightness appears at the Death of *Aurelius Ambrosius*. VIII. 14.

Conan kills *Constantine*, and succeeds to the Crown X. 5.

Conan Meriadoc being ready to fight *Maximian*, grants him Peace at the Instance of *Caradoc*. V. 10. his War with *Maximian*, and Reconciliation with him. V. 11. is made K. of *Armorica* by *Maximian*. V. 12. vanquishes the *Gauls* and *Aquitans*. V. 15.

Constans a Monk is by *Vortegirn* made K. of *Britain*. VI. 6. his Incapacity for Government makes him the Instrument of *Vortegirn*'s Ambition. VI. 7. is by *Vortegirn*'s Contrivance assassinated by some *Pictish* Soldiers. VI. 8.

Constantine the Great, K. of *Britain*, his noble Character. V. 6. is desired by the *Romans* to assist them against the Tyranny of *Maxentius*. V. 7. gains the *Roman* Empire. V. 8. sends *Trahern* to reduce *Britain*. *Ibid.*

Constantine

Digitized by Google

Conſtantine the *Armorican* having routed the Enemies of the *Britains* is made King. VI. 5. is aſſaſſinated by a *Pict*. *Ibid.*

Conſtantine Arthurs Succeſſor is diſturbed by *Modreds* Sons. XI. 3. he puts them to Death in their Sanctuaries. XI. 4. is killed by *Conan*. *Ibid.*

Conſtantius made King of *Britain* by the Marriage of *Helena*. V. 6.

Conwenna's Speech to her Son *Brennius*. III. 7.

Cordeilla loſes her Father *Leirs* Affection for her Sincerity. II. 11. is married to *Aganippus* K. of the *Franks*. *Ibid.* her great Kindneſs to her Father in his Diſtreſs. II. 12, 13. ſucceeds him in the Kingdom. II. 14. for Grief at the Loſs of her Kingdom kills her ſelf. II. 15.

Corineus his Character. I. 12. kills *Imbertas* the Ambaſſador of *Goffarius Pictus*. *Ibid.* his great Bravery againſt the *Aquitans*. *Ibid.* kills *Subardus* and many others. I. 13. his Stratagem againſt the *Gauls*. I. 15. chuſes *Cornwal* for his Share of the Iſland. I. 16. his Encounter with *Goemagot* a monſtrous Giant. *Ibid.* his Reſentment againſt *Locrin* for Breach of Covenant. II. 3.

Corniſh People ſo called from *Corineus* their Leader. I. 12.

Cridious, K. of *Albania* and Attendant on *Caſſibellaun*. IV. 3.

Digitized by Google

Corcea mors, the Name of *J. Cæsars* Sword. IV. 4.
Cunedagius kills his Brother *Margan*, and gains the Monarchy of the whole Island. II. 15.

D.

DABUTIUS reproaches *Merlin* with her Birth. VI. 17.
Dacia made Tributary to *Belinus*. III. 4.
Danius one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 14.
David Arthurs Unkle, made Archbishop of *Legions*. IX. 15. his Death. XI. 3.
Diana's Answer to *Brutus*. I. 11.
Dianotus K. of *Cornwal* sends *Ursula* and her Virgins for Wives to the *Armoritan Britains*. V. 16.
Diocleſian's Persecution of the *Christians*. V. 5.
Dinoot Abbot of *Bangor*, his Answer to *Augustin* the Apostle of the *English*. XI. 12. occasions great Troubles to the *Britains* by it. XI. 13.
Doldavius K. of *Godland* makes his Submission to *Arthur*. IX. 9.
Dubricius is made Archbishop of *Legions*. VIII. 12. at the Instance of the *British* Nobility Crowns *Arthur*. IX. 1. his Speech to the *British* Army before the Battle of *Bedon*. IX. 4. the Efficacy of his Prayers towards

Digitized by Google

towards curing the Sick. IX. 12. has the Ordering of *Arthurs* Solemnity at *Legions*. IX. 13. resigns his Archbishoprick and turns Hermit. IX. 15.
Dunwallo Molmutius kills *Imner* K. of *Loegria*. II. 17. by a Stratagem defeats the Kings of *Kambria* and *Albania*. *Ibid.* makes himself a Golden Crown, and reduces the Island again to a Monarchy. *Ibid.* institutes the famous *Molmutine* Laws. *Ibid.*
Duvanus sent with *Faganus* to preach the *Christian* Faith to the *Britains*. IV. 19.

E.

AN Eagle is said to have spoken at the Building of the Walls of *Shaftsbury*. II. 9.
Ebraucus K. of *Britain* his Conquests in *Gaul*. II. 7. builds several Towns. *Ibid.* his twenty Sons and thirty Daughters. II. 8.
Edelfrid K. of *Northumberland* having routed the *Britains* kills two hundred Monks at *Legeceſter*. XI. 13. is in another Battle defeated and wounded by the *Britains*. *Ibid.* by a Treaty with *Caduan* poſſeſſes all *Britain* beyond the *Humber*. XII. 1. divorces his Wife and marries another. *Ibid.*
Edwin is educated by *Salomon* K. of *Armorica*. XII. 1. desires leave of *Cadwallo* to wear a Crown. XII. 1. upon his Refusal joins Battle with him and routs him.

Digitized by Google

XII. 4. is killed in the Battle of *Hevefeld.* XII. 8.

Eldad Biſhop of *Glouceſter* buries the *Britiſh* Nobility maſſacred by the *Saxons.* VI. 15. adviſes the *Britains* to kill *Hengiſt* when taken Priſoner, VIII. 7. and to ſhew Mercy to *Octa* upon his ſurrendring himſelf, VIII. 8.

Eldadus one of the ancient Kings of *Britain.* III. 19.

Eldol D. of *Glouceſter,* his noble Exploit againſt the *Saxons* upon their maſſacring the *Britains.* VI. 16. his Speech to *Aurelius Ambroſius* before the Battle with *Hengiſt.* VIII. 5. after a ſharp Encounter with *Hengiſt* takes him Priſoner. VIII. 6. and after Conſultation beheads him. VIII. 7.

Eldol one of the ancient Kings of *Britain.* III. 19.

Eleutherius (Pope) at the Requeſt of *Lucius,* ſends *Faganus* and *Duvanus* into *Britain* to preach the *Chriſtian* Faith. IV. 19.

Elidure ſurnamed the *Pious* reſigns the Crown to his depoſed Brother *Arthgallo.* III. 17. is a ſecond Time made K. of *Britain,* and then Impriſoned by his Brothers. III. 18. his Advancement to the Throne the third Time. *Ibid.*

Eliud one of the ancient Kings of *Britain.* III. 19.

Elſingius K. of *Norway,* his Daughter married to *Brennius.* III. 1. *Enniaunus*

Digitized by Google

Enniaunus K. of *Britain* depoſed for Tyranny. III. 19.
Eſtrildis Concubine of *Locrin*, her great Beauty. II. 2. is with her Daughter *Sabre* drowned in the *Severn* by *Guendolena*'s Command. II. 5.
Evander K. of *Syria* is killed in Battle by the *Britains*. X. 5.
Evelinus Nephew of *Androgeus* kills *Hirelglas*. IV. 8.
Eventus ſucceeds *Auguſel* in the Kingdom of *Albania*. XI. 1.

F.

FAGANUS is ſent with *Duvanus* to convert *Britain* to the *Chriſtian* Faith. IV. 19.
Ferrex is killed by his Brother *Porrex*. II. 16.
Flamens in *Britain* made Biſhops. IV. 19.
Flollo a *Roman* Tribune beſieged in *Paris* by *Arthur*. IX. 11. he challenges *Arthur* to a ſingle Combat, and is killed by him. *Ibid.*
Friday ſo called from the *Saxon* Goddeſs *Frea*. VI. 19.
Fulgenius one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
Fulgenius carries on a War againſt *Severus*. V. 2. goes to *Scythia* to raiſe Forces. *Ibid.* is mortally wounded in a Battle with *Severus*. *Ibid.*

Digitized by Google

G.

GABIUS a *Roman* Consul taken Prisoner by *Belinus* and *Brennius*. III. 9.
Livius Gallus and the *Romans* besieged in *London* by the *Britains*, and killed without Quarter to any. V. 4.
Genuissa Daughter of *Claudius* married to *Arviragus*. IV. 15. procures a Reconciliation between *Arviragus* and *Vespasian*. IV. 16.
Gerion the Augur that attended *Brutus*. I. 11.
St. *German* and *Lupus* restore the *Christian* Faith that had been corrupted in *Britain*. VI. 13.
Gerontius one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
Geta Son of *Severus* killed by his Brother *Bassianus*. V. 2.
A Giant from *Spain* having stolen *Helena* is killed by *Arthur*. X. 3.
Gillomanius K. of *Ireland* is defeated by *Uther Pendragon*. VIII. 12. enters into Confederacy with *Pascentius* and invades *Britain*. VIII. 14. but is a Second Time defeated by *Uther Pendragon*. VIII. 16.
Gloucester by whom built and on what Occasion. IV. 15.
Godbold K. of the *Orkneys* killed at the Battle of *Hevefeld*. XII. 8.

Digitized by Google

Goemagot a monſtrous Giant killed in an Encounter with *Corineas*. I. 16.

Goffarius Pictus K. of *Aquitain* makes War againſt the *Trojans*. I. 12. is routed by them. I. 13. his Second and third Battle with them. I. 15.

Gombert K. of *Norway*. V. 18.

Gonorilla flattering Anſwer to her Father *Leir*. II. 11. her barbarous Ingratitude to him. II. 12.

Gorbogudo one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. II. 16.

Gorrbonian a very juſt King of *Britain*. III. 16.

Gorlois D. of *Cornwal* adviſes the *Britains* to fall upon the *Saxon* Camp by ſurprize. VIII. 18. upon *Uthers* falling in Love with his Wife retires from Court, and prepares for War. VIII. 19. is killed by *Uthers* Men at the Siege of *Dimilioc*. VIII. 20.

Gormund K. of the *Africans* drives *Caretitus* into *Wales*, and grievouſly nfeſts *Britain*. XI. 8. gives *Loegria* to the *Saxons*. XI. 10.

Gratian Municeps forces *Gadrius* and *Melga* to fly over to *Ireland*. V. 16. ſeizes the Crown of *Britain*, and is for his Tyranny murdered by the common People. VI. 1.

Guanhumara the Wife of *Arthur*. IX. 9. has in Conjunction with *Modred* the Government of *Britain* in *Arthurs* Abſence. XI. 20.

Digitized by Google

20. her wicked Marriage with *Modred*. X. 13. upon *Modreds* Defeat retires into a Monaſtery. XI. 1.

Guanius K. of the *Huns* and *Melga*, their Cruelty to the Virgins that accompanied *Vrſula*. V. 16. they invade and grievouſly oppreſs *Britain*. *Ibid.* are forced by *Gratian Municeps* to fly over to *Ireland*. *Ibid.* they a ſecond Time oppreſs *Britain*, and are driven out by a *Roman* Legion. VI. 1. they a third Time moſt grievouſly oppreſs *Britain*. VI. 3.

Guendolæna Wife of *Locrin* being divorced, makes War againſt him and kills him. II. 5. her Cruelty to *Eſtrildis*, *Ibid.*

Guerthaeth K. of *Venedotia*, an Attendant on *Caſſibellaun*. IV. 3.

Guethelin Archbiſhop of *London*, his Speech to the *Britains*. VI. 2. deſires Succours for the *Britains* of *Aldroen* K. of *Armorica*. VI. 4. his Expreſſions of Joy upon his Succeſs. *Ibid.*

Guicthlac K. of *Dacia* in a Sea-Fight ſeizes the Wife of *Brennius*. III. 2. is taken Priſoner by *Belinus*. *Ibid.* his Releaſe. III. 4.

Guiderius refuſing to pay Tribute to the *Romans* occaſions the Invaſion of *Claudius Cæſar*. IV. 12. is killed in Battle by the Treachery of *L. Hamo*. IV. 13.

Guillamurius K. of *Ireland* attempting to relieve the *Scots* and *Picts* is repulſed by *Arthur*.

Digitized by Google

Arthur. IX. 6. is again Defeated by him and taken Priſoner. IX. 10.
Guitard, Commander of the *Pictavians*, is Defeated by *Hoel.* IX. 11. ſuſtains the *Britains* againſt the *Romans.* X. 5.
Guithelin one of the ancient Kings of *Britain.* III. 13.
Gunfaſius K. of the *Orkneys* makes his Submiſſion to *Arthur.* IX. 10.
Gurgintius, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain.* III. 19.
Gurgiunt Brabtruc K. of *Britain*, his Character. III. 11. he reduces *Dacia* that had refuſed to pay him Tribute. *Ibid.* his Kindneſs to *Partholoim* and other *Spaniards.* III. 12.
Gurguſtius one of the ancient Kings of *Britain.* II. 16.

H.

L. *Hamo* Commander of *Claudius Cæſar's* Army beſieges *Portceſtre.* IV. 12. treacherouſly Kills *Guiderius.* IV. 13. is killed by *Arviragus* at *Hamo's* Port. *Ibid.*
Hedelbert K. of *Kent* ſtirs up the *Saxon* Kings againſt the *Britains.* XI. 13.
Helena a moſt accompliſhed *Britiſh* Lady, Wife of *Conſtantius* and Mother of *Conſtantine* the Great. V. 6.
Helena Neice of *Hoel* is ſtolen away by a *Spaniſh*

Digitized by Google

niſh Giant. X. 3. has a Mauſoleum erected for her upon M. *Michael. Ibid.*

Heli K. of *Britain* Father of *Lud*, *Caſſibellaun* and *Nennius*. III. 20.

Hengiſt and *Horſus* arrive with the *Saxons* in *Britain*. VI. 10. *Hengiſt* gives *Vortegirn* an Account of the Occaſion of their coming, and of the Religion of their Countrymen. *Ibid.* by a crafty Petition gets Leave of *Vortegirn* to build a Caſtle. VI. 11. in Conſideration of giving him his Daughter *Rowen*, obtains the Province of *Kent*. *Ibid.* by his Authority over him invites over more and more *Saxons*, to the Terrour of the *Britains*. VI. 13. brings from *Germany* a vaſt Army of them. VI. 15. by his Treachery cauſes a Maſſacre of the *Britains*. *Ibid.* encourages his Men to ſtand a Battle with *Aurelius Ambroſius*. VIII. 4. being overthrown by him he flies to *Kaerconan*, where he loſes a ſecond Battle, and is taken Priſoner by *Eldol*. VIII. 5, 6. is beheaded by *Eldol*. VIII. 7.

Henuinus D. of *Cornwal* joins with *Maglaunus* to Depoſe *Leir* their Father in Law. II. 12.

Hider ſuſtains the *Britains* when purſued by the *Romans*. X. 4.

Hirelgas Bedver's Nephew revenges his Death on *Boccus* K. of the *Medes*. X. 9.

Digitized by Google

Hirelglas Nephew of *Caſſibellaun* killed by *Evelinus*. IV. 8.

Hoel K. of *Armorica* brings Forces to aſſiſt *Arthur* againſt the *Saxons*. IX. 2. by *Arthur*'s Command reduces *Aquitain* and *Gaſcony*. IX. 11. his Speech to *Arthur* upon the *Romans* demanding Tribute. IX. 17. Suſtains the *Britains* when near vanquiſhed by the *Romans*. X. 9.

Holdin K. of the *Ruteni* killed in Battle by the *Romans*. X. 9.

Horſus Brother of *Hengiſt* killed by *Catigern* in an Encounter. VI. 13.

Hudibras K. of *Britain* compoſes a civil Diſſention, and builds ſeveral Towns. II. 9.

Humber K. of the *Huns* kills *Albanact*. II. 1. is defeated by *Locrin* and drowned in the River that bears his Name. II. 2.

I.

JAGO one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. II. 16.

Idwallo a juſt K. of *Britain*. III. 19.

Jeffrey of *Monmouth*'s Epiſtle Dedicatory to *Robert* Earl of *Glouceſter*. I. 1. his Preface to *Merlin*'s Propheſy. VII. 1. his Letter to *Alexander* Biſhop of *Lincoln*. VII. 2. his Concluſion of the Hiſtory. XII. 20.

Digitized by Google

Igerna a Wife of *Gorlois*, her Beauty captivates *Uther Pendragon*. VIII. 19. being deceived by the falſe ſhape he put on, ſhe admits him to her Embraces. *Ibid.* Marries him after the Death of *Gorlois*. VIII. 20.

Ignoge Daughter of *Pandraſus* is married to *Brutus*. II. 11. her ſorrow at departing from *Greece*. *Ibid.*

Imbertus Ambaſſador of *Goſſarius Pictus* is killed by *Corineus*. I. 12.

Inbaltus Commander of the *Gauls* killed in Battle with *Maximian*. V. 12.

Iſembard joins with *Gormund* and renounces the *Chriſtian* Faith to gain the Kingdom of *Gaul*. XI. 8.

Julius a *Britiſh* Martyr in *Diocleſian*'s Perſecution. V. 5.

Ivor and *Ini* in vain attempt the Reſtauration of the *Britains*. XII. 19.

K.

KAERBADUS built by *Bladud*, its Baths and wonderful Fire. II. 9.

Kamber Son of *Brutus* gives Name to *Kambria*. II. 1.

Kimarus, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 14.

Kinmarcus, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. II. 16.

Digitized by Google

Kinocus is made Archbiſhop of *Legions*. XI. 3.
Kymbelinus K. of *Britain* maintains Friendſhip with the *Romans*. IV. 11. in his Time our Bleſſed Saviour was Born. *Ibid.*

L.

LABIENUS a *Roman* Tribune killed by *Nennius*. IV. 3.
Legions made an *Archiepiſcopal* See. IV. 19. the great Magnificence of that City. IX. 12. it is choſen by *Arthur* for the Place of his great Solemnity. *Ibid.*
Leil a good K. of *Britain* builds *Kaerleil*. II. 9.
Leir K. of *Britain* builds *Kaerleir*. II. 11. having no Male Iſſue he divides his Kingdom between his two Eldeſt Daughters. *Ibid.* his Reſentment of his Daughter *Cordeilla*'s plain Dealing. *Ibid.* is depoſed by his two Sons in Law, and ungratefully uſed by his Eldeſt Daughters. II. 12. his grievous Diſtreſs and Complaint. *Ibid.* he is honourably received by *Cordeilla*. II. 13. regains his Kingdom. II. 14.
Marius Lepidus, a *Roman* Senator killed in Battle with *Arthur*. X. 10.
Linligwan, the Wonders of that Pond. IX. 6.

Digitized by Google

Locrin Eldeſt Son of *Brutus* gives Name to *Loegria*. II. 1. defeats *Humber* K. of the *Huns*. II. 2. falls in Love with *Eſtrildis* his Beautiful Captive. *Ibid.* Marries *Guendolæna*, but carries on a private Amour with *Eſtrildis*. II. 4. is killed in Battle with *Guendolæna*. I. 5.

London ſo called from *Lud* by whom it was Beautified. III. 20. is made an Archiepiſcopal See. IV. 19.

Lot commands the *Britiſh* Army againſt the *Saxons* with various Succeſs. VIII. 21. is made Conſul of *Londoneſia* by *Arthur*. IX. 9. is advanced by him to the Kingdom of *Norway*. IX. 11.

Lucius the firſt K. of *Britain* that embraced the *Chriſtian* Faith IV. 19. is a Benefactor to Churches. V. 1.

Lucius Tiberius's Letter to *Arthur*. IX. 15. Summons all the Eaſtern Kings to his Aſſiſtance againſt *Arthur*. X. 1. for Fear of *Arthur* enters *Lengriæ* with his Army. X. 6. his Speech to his Commanders before his Battle with *Arthur*. X. 8. draws out his Army in Order of Battle. *Ibid.* his Encounter with *Walgan*. X. 11. is ſlain in a great Battle with *Arthur*, by an unknown Hand. *Ibid.*

Lud Beautifier of *London*, and Builder of other Cities, is Buried at *Ludgate*. III. 20.

Lumond, the Wonders of that Lake. IX. 6.

Lupus

Digitized by Google

Lupus Biſhop of *Troyes* reſtores the Purity of Faith when corrupted in *Britain.* VI. 13.

M.

MADDAN is advanced to the Throne by his Mother *Guendolæna.* II. 6.
Magicians foretel the Birth and Succeſs of *Brutus.* I. 3. adviſe *Vortegirn* to build a Tower for his Security. VI. 17.
Maglaunus Duke of *Cornwal* aſſiſts in depoſing *Leir* his Father in Law. II. 12.
Malgo a K. of *Britain* of great accompliſhments, but guilty of *Sodomy.* XI. 7.
Malim is Treacherouſly Murdered by his Brother *Menpricius.* II. 6.
Marcellus Mutius killed by *Walgan.* X. 4.
Margadud K. of *Demetia*, his Advice to *Cadwallo.* XII. 12.
Margan and *Cunedagius* take *Cordeilla* Priſoner. II. 5. they divide the Kingdom between them. *Ibid. Margan* is routed and killed by *Cunedagius. Ibid.*
Margan K. of *Britain*, his good Reign. III. 19.
Marius K. of *Britain* defeats and kills *Rodric* K. of the *Picts.* IV. 17. his good Character. *Ibid.*
Martia Queen of *Britain*, Author of the *Martian* Law. III. 13.

Digitized by Google

Maugantius a Philoſopher, his Speech to *Vortegirn* concerning *Merlin*'s Birth. VI. 18.

Mauricius is ſent to *Maximian* to offer him the Kingdom. V. 9. his Advice to *Maximian* when in Fear of the *Britains*. V. 10. his Apology for *Mauricius* to *Conan Meriadoc*. *Ibid.*

Maxentius's Tyranny over the *Romans*. V. 7.

Maximian is invited to take the Crown of *Britain*. V. 9. his Policy to prevent a War with the *Britains*. V. 10. is made K. of *Britain*. V. 11. his War and Reconciliation with *Conan Meriadoc*. *Ibid.* conquers *Armorica* and gives it to *Conan*. V. 12. ſubdues *Gaul* and *Germany* and gains the Empire from *Gratian* and *Valentinian*. V. 14. is killed at *Rome* by *Gratian*'s Friends. V. 16.

Maximianus Herculius a Perſecutor of the *Chriſtians* in *Britain*. V. 5.

Mempricius adviſes the *Trojans* to depart from *Greece*. I. 10.

Mempricius Murders his Brother *Malim* and obtains the Government. II. 6. his Tyrannical Reign and untimely End. *Ibid.*

Merianus one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Merlin's wonderful Birth. VI. 17, 18. his Conference with *Vortegirn* and his Magicians.

Digitized by Google

gicians. VI. 18. he discovers the Reason why *Vortegirn*'s Tower would not stand. *Ibid.* his Prophesy. VII. 3, 4. he foretells *Vortegirn* his sad Fate. VIII. 1. his Discourse with *Aurelius Ambrosius* concerning the *Giants Dance* in *Ireland*. VIII. 10, 11. by his wonderful Skill in Mechanicks, he removes and brings to *Britain* the *Giant's Dance*. VIII. 12. prognosticates *Uther*'s Success by the Appearance of a Comet. VIII. 15. transforms *Uther Pendragon* into the Shape of *Gorlois* to gain him Access to *Igerna*. VIII. 19.

Micipsa K. of *Babylon* killed in Battle with *Arthur*. X. 9.

Quintus Milvius a *Roman* Senator killed in Battle with *Arthur*. X. 9.

Modred Arthur's Nephew is made Governour of *Britain* by him, during his Wars with the *Romans*. IX. 20. he usurps the Crown and marries *Guanhumara* in *Arthur*'s Absence. X. 13. being defeated by *Arthur* he flies to *Wincheſter*. XI. 1. he is a second Time defeated by him and flies into *Cornwal*. XI. 2. loses a third Battle and is killed. *Ibid.*

Molmutine Laws first instituted by *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17. are revived by *Belinus*. III. 5. are translated into *Engliſh* by K. *Alfred*. *Ibid.*

Digitized by Google

Morvid Conſul of *Gloucester*, his great Service to *Arthur* towards the total Defeat of the *Romans*. X. 11.

Morvidus a moſt cruel Tyrant of *Britain* is devoured by a Monſter. III. 15.

N.

NENNIUS quarrels with *Lud* for changing the Name of *Trinovantum*. I. 17. encounters with *J. Ceſar* and wreſts his Sword from him. IV. 3. kills *Labienus* and many others. *Ibid.* his Death and pompous Funeral. IV. 4.

O.

OCTA Son of *Hengiſt*, after his Fathers Defeat retires to *York*. VIII. 6. being beſieged there he ſurrenders himſelf to the Mercy of *Aurelius*. VIII. 8. raiſes freſh Diſturbances and beſieges *York*, where he gains a Victory over the *Britains*. VIII. 18. is afterwards defeated by a Stratagem of *Uther Pendragon*, and taken Priſoner. *Ibid.* He and *Eoſa* eſcaping out of Priſon, they renew the War with the *Britains*. VIII. 21. by their Contempt of the *Britains*. they let them gain great Advantages over them. VIII. 23. are at laſt totally defeated and killed by *Uther Pendragon*. *Ibid.*

Octavius

Digitized by Google

Octavius rebels against the *Roman* Proconsuls, and gains the Kingdom. V. 8. his War with *Trahern. Ibid.* consults about his Successor in the Kingdom. V. 9. bestows his Kingdom and Daughter on *Maximian.* V. 11.

Oenus, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain.* III. 19.

Olbrict K. of *Norway* killed in Battle with *Modred.* XI. 2.

Ofric K. of *Northumberland* killed in Battle with *Cadwallo.* XII. 9.

Ofwald K. of *Northumberland* routs *Peanda* at the second Battle of *Hevefeld.* XII. 10. but is afterwards killed by him in a Battle with *Cadwallo. Ibid.*

Ofwin Successor of *Ofwald* makes his Submission to *Cadwallo.* XII. 11. kills *Peanda* in Battle. XII. 13.

P.

PANDRASUS K. of *Greece* is by Surprize routed by *Brutus.* I. 5. besieges *Sparatinum.* I. 6. is taken Prisoner by *Brutus.* I. 5. his Speech to the *Trojans.* I. 11. Furnishes them with Necessaries for their Voyage, and is set at Liberty. *Ibid.*

Partholoim a *Spaniard* by Leave of *Gurgiunt Brabtruc* settles in *Ireland* III. 12.

Digitized by Google

Paſcentius Son of *Vortegirn* brings in the *Saxons* and is defeated. VIII. 13. enters into Alliance with *Gillomanius* K. of *Ireland*, and again infeſts *Britain*. VIII. 14. encourages *Eopa* to Poiſon *Aurelius Ambroſius*. *Ibid.* is routed by *Uther Pendragon* and killed. VIII. 16.

St. *Patrick* Founder of an Abbey at *Menevia*. XI. 3.

Peanda K. of the *Mercians* beſieges *Exeter*. XII. 7. being routed by *Cadwallo* he becomes his Auxiliary. XII. 8. is defeated by *Oſwald* in the Battle of *Hevefeld*, but kills him in another Battle. XII. 10. endeavours to incenſe *Cadwallo* againſt *Oſwin*. XII. 11. is Slain in Battle by *Oſwin*. XII. 13.

Pelagian Hereſy deſtroy'd in *Britain* by the Preaching and Miracles of *German* and *Lupus*. VI. 13.

Pellitus a Southſayer gives *Edwin* Notice of *Cadwallo*'s Attempts againſt him. XII. 4. is killed by *Brian* in the Habit of a Beggar. XII. 7.

Peredure and *Vigenius* depoſe *Elidure*, and divide the Kingdom between them. III. 18. by the Death of *Vigenius*, *Peredure* gains the whole Kingdom. *Ibid.*

Petreius Cotta forces the *Britains* to retreat when in Purſuit of the *Romans*. X. 4. is taken Priſoner by *Boſo*. *Ibid.*

Digitized by Google

Picts by Permiſſion of *Marius* inhabit *Albania*. IV. 17. their Treachery to *Baſſianus*. V. 3. they endeavour to revenge the Injury of their Countrymen on *Vortegirn*. VI. 9. they are defeated by him. VI. 10.

Pir one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Polytetes K. of *Bithynia* killed in Battle by *Arthur*'s own Hand. X. 11.

Porrex K. of *Britain* procures Aid of *Suard* and kills his Brother *Ferrex*. II. 16. is tore to Pieces by his Mother *Widen*. *Ibid*.

Porrex, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Porſena a *Roman* Conſul killed in Battle with *Belinus* and *Brennius*. III. 9.

Princes, their Names that attended at *Arthur*'s Solemnity at *Legions*. IX. 12.

Priwen, the Name of *Arthur*'s Shield. IX. 4.

Pyramus Arthur's Chaplain made Archbiſhop of *York*. IX. 8.

Q.

C. *Quintilianus* for reflecting on the *Britains* is killed by *Walgan*. X. 4.

Digitized by Google

R.

Rederchius, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
Redion, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.
Redonum, taken by *Maximian*. V. 13.
Regau's flattering Anſwer to her Father *Leir*. II. 11. her Barbarous Ingratitude to him. II. 12.
Riculf K. of *Norway* defeated and ſlain by *Arthur*. IX. 11.
Ritho the Giant, a ridiculous Story of his Encounter with *Arthur*. X. 3.
Rivallo K. of *Britain*, a great Mortality happened in his Reign. II. 16.
Robert Earl of *Gloucester*, his Praiſe. I. 1.
Rodric K. of the *Picts* invades *Britain*, and is defeated and killed by *Merius*. IV. 17.
Romans pay Tribute to *Belinus* and *Brennius*. III. 9. are twice defeated by them. *Ibid.* take their Farewel of the *Britains*. VI. 2. after a total Overthrow by *Arthur*, ſurrender themſelves for Slaves. X. 12.
Rome taken by *Belinus* and *Brennius*. III. 9.
Ron, the Name of *Arthur*'s Lance. IX. 4.
Rowen Daughter of *Hengiſt*, having captivated *Vortegirn* with her Beauty, is married to him. VI. 12. poiſons *Vortimer* her Son

Digitized by Google

Son in Law. VI. 14. ſends Intelligence to her Father of the Deſigns of the *Britains* VI. 15.

Rudaucus K. of *Kambria* killed in Battle by the Policy of *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17.

Ruuno one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

S.

SABRE Daughter of *Eſtrildis* being thrown into the *Severn* gives Name to that River. II. 5.

Salomon K. of *Armorica*, his Speech to *Cadwallo*. XII. 5.

Samuilpeniſſel, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Sanxo made Archbiſhop of *York*. VIII. 12.

Saxons, their firſt Arrival in *Britain* and Reception by *Vortegirn*. VI. 10. they aſſiſt him in the Conqueſt of his Enemies. *Ibid.* more of them come over upon *Vortegirn*'s Invitation. VI. 12, 13. after Loſs of four Battles they are driven back by *Vortimer* into *Germany*. VI. 13. their Maſſacre of the *Britains*. VI. 15. they ſeize the Fortifications in *Britain*. VI. 16. retire beyond the *Humber* for Fear of *Aurelius Ambroſius*. VIII. 3. Treacherouſly Poiſon *Uther Pendragon* and many others. VIII. 24. are reduced to be

Digitized by Google

be Tributaries to *Arthur*: IX. 3. break Treaty with him, and cruelly infeſt the *Britains*. *Ibid.* are overthrown by *Arthur* at *Badon*. IX. 4. are defeated by *Wortiporius*. XI. 6. invite over *Gormund* K. of the *Africans* againſt the *Britains*. XI. 8. gain the Poſſeſſion of *Loegria*. XI. 10. poſſeſs themſelves of the Iſland when it was deſerted by the *Britains*. XII. 16. their full Eſtabliſhment in the Iſland. XII. 10.

Scæva Son of *Androgeus* ſent Hoſtage to *J. Cæſar*. IV. 9.

Seginus D. of the *Allobroges*, his Kindneſs to *Brennius*. III. 6.

Sertorius K. of *Libya* killed by *Arthur*'s own Hand. X. 11.

Severus is ſent to reduce *Britain* under the *Roman* Power. V. 2. his War with *Fulgenius*. *Ibid.* builds a Wall between *Deira* and *Albania*. *Ibid.* is killed in Battle with *Fulgenius*. *Ibid.*

Siſilius, three of this Name Kings of *Britain*. II. 16. III. 14. III. 19.

Sparatinum a Town in *Greece* beſieged by *Pandraſus*. I. 6.

Staterius K. of *Albania* killed in Battle by the Policy of *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17.

Suard K. of the *Franks* aſſiſts *Porrex* againſt his Brother *Ferrex*. II. 16.

Sylvius.

Digitized by Google

Sylvius Father of *Brutus* marries a Neice of *Lavinia*. I. 3. is accidentally Slain by *Brutus* in hunting. *Ibid.*

Syrens Surround the *Trojan* Ships. I. 12.

T.

TENUANTIUS made D. of *Cornwal* by *Cassibellaun*. III. 20. Succeeds *Cassibellaun* in the Kingdom. IV. 11.

Thong-Castle in *Lincolnshire*, whence so called. VI. 11.

Tintagol in *Cornwal*, the great Strength of that Place. VIII. 19.

Totnes the Place of *Brutus*'s Arrival. I. 15.

Tours in *France* built by *Brutus*. I. 14. whence so called. I. 15.

Trahern Uncle of *Helena* sent by *Constantine* to reduce *Octavius*. V. 8. is killed by a Conspiracy. *Ibid.*

Tremounus Archbishop of *Legions* recommends *Merlin* to *Aurelius Ambrosius*. VIII. 10.

Triers made the Imperial Seat of *Maximian*. V. 14.

Trinovantum, the ancient Name of *London*, built by *Brutus*. I. 17.

Digitized by Google

Turonus, Nephew of *Brutus*, kills in one Day six hundred Men with his own Hand. I. 15.

V.

VENEDOTIANS make a general Slaughter of the *Romans* in *London*. V. 4.

Vespasian is sent to *Britain* against *Arviragus*. IV. 16. his Reconciliation with him. *Ibid.*

Vigenius and *Peredure* imprison their Brother *Elidure*, and divide the Kingdom between them. III. 17.

Ulfin of *Ricaradoch's* Advice to *Uther Pendragon* upon his Love to *Igerna*. VIII. 19.

Vortegirn promotes *Constans* the Monk to be K. of *Britain*. VI. 6. his Management of him when King. VI. 7. with a Treasonable Design invites some *Picts* into his Service. *Ibid.* his crafty Speech to incense them against *Constans*. *Ibid.* is suspected to be the Contriver of his Assassination. VI. 8. upon the Murder of *Constans* he usurps the Crown, and is distressed with Fears on every Side. VI. 9. his Discourse with *Hengist* and the *Saxons* at their first Landing. VI. 10. defeats the *Picts* by

Digitized by Google

by the Assistance of the *Saxons*. *Ibid.* after a Conference with *Hengist* gives him Leave to build a Castle. VI. 11. being entertained at a Banquet by *Hengist* he falls in Love with his Daughter *Rowen*. VI. 12. displeases his Sons and Nobility by Marrying her. *Ibid.* for adhering too much to the *Saxons* is deserted by the *Britains*. VI. 13. being restored again to his Kingdom he invites *Hengist* and the *Saxons* to return to *Britain*. VI. 15. is in a Treaty with *Hengist* betray'd and taken Prisoner. *Ibid.* retires into *Cambria*. VI. 16. by the Advice of Magicians builds a Tower for his Defence. VI. 17. discourses with *Merlin*'s Mother concerning the Birth of her Son. VI. 18. enquires of *Merlin* the Time of his own Death. VIII. 1. is burnt in a Tower by *Aurelius Ambrosius*. VIII. 2.

Vortimer Son of *Vortegirn* gains four Victories of the *Saxons*, and forces them back to *Germany*. VI. 13. is Poisoned by his Stepmother *Rowen*. VI. 14. his Magnanimity at his Death. *Ibid.*

Urian is honoured by *Arthur* with the Sceptre of *Mureif*. IX. 9.

Urianus, one of the ancient Kings of *Britain*. III. 19.

Digitized by Google

Ursula and the Virgins with her, in their Voyage to *Armorica*, are all Drowned, Murdered, or made Slaves. V. 16.

Uther Pendragon routs *Gillomanius* and brings to *Britain* the Giants Dance. VIII. 12. gains a complete Victory over *Gillomanius* and *Pascentius*. VIII. 16. is advanced to the Kingdom. VIII. 17. the Reason of his being Surnamed *Pendragon*. *Ibid.* after being defeated by *Octa* and *Eosa*, he gains a Victory of them by surprizing their Camp. VIII. 18. his Severe Administration of Justice among the *Scots*. VIII. 19. he summons his Nobility to a Festival at *London*, where he falls in Love with *Igerna*. *Ibid.* his Resentment at *Gorlois* her Husband, and Invasion of his Provinces. *Ibid.* by *Merlin*'s magical Operations he is transformed into the Shape of *Gorlois*, and enjoys *Igerna*. *Ibid.* resumes his former Shape and returns to his Army. VIII. 20. Marries *Igerna* by whom he has *Arthur*. *Ibid.* falls into a lingring Distemper. VIII. 21. reproves his Nobility for their Pride and Cowardice. VIII. 22. is carried in a Horse-Litter to fight the *Saxons*. VIII. 23. besieges them in *Verolam*. *Ibid.* entirely

Digitized by Google

ly defeats them and kills *Otta* and *Eosa*. *Ibid.* dies upon drinking Spring-Water Poiſoned by the *Saxons*. VIII. 24.

Vulteius Catellus a *Roman* Commander killed in Battle by the *Britains*. X. 5.

W.

WALGAN Arthur's Nephew by killing *C. Quintilianus* occaſions a Skirmiſh between the *Britains* and *Romans*. X. 4. kills *Marcellus Mutius*. *Ibid.* his noble Exploits againſt the *Romans*. X. 9, 10. his Encounter with *Lucius Tiberius*. X. 11. is ſlain in Battle with *Modred*. XI. 1.

A Wall built between *Deira* and *Albania* for the Defence of the *Britains*. VI. 1.

Walter Archdeacon of *Oxford* deſires *Jeffrey* of *Monmouth* to tranſlate the *Britiſh* Hiſtory. I. 1. brought over this Hiſtory from *Armorica*. XII. 20.

Wedneſday, ſo called from the *Saxon* God *Woden*. VI. 10.

Weſtmarland whence ſo called. IV. 17.

Widen tears to Pieces her Son *Porrex*. II. 16.

Wulfred K. of the *Mercians* by *Cadwallo*'s Command makes Peace with *Oſwin*. XII. 13.

Wor-

Digitized by Google

Wortiporius K. of *Britain* conquers the *Saxons*. XI. 6.

Y.

YMNER K. of *Loegria* killed in Battle by *Dunwallo Molmutius*. II. 17.
York is made an Archiepiscopal See. IV. 19.

Digitized by Google

Errata.

In the Preface.

PAGE VIII: line 26. read *decisively*. p. XXIII. l. 9. *Huntington*. p. XXX. l. 26. *Jeffrey's*. p. XXXI. l. 15. *Guillim*\Bach. l. 19. *Repulse*. p. XLIV. l. 13. *their*. p. LXXIX. l. 24. *reasonably*.

In the History.

PAGE 4. line 17. read *Vengeance*. p. 10. l. 19. Fight. p. 25. l. 9. *to the Philenean*. p. 121. l. 2. *Claudius*. p. 127. l. 22. *Receipt*. p. 175. l. 1. for *was* r. *were*. p. 181. l. 1. *Place*. p. 229. l. 5, 6, 7. dele ". p. 236. l. 29. *marshalling*. p. 272. l. 8. *self without the*. p. 301. l. 8. *Legecester*. p. 335. l. 14. *Legecester*. p. 377. l. 23. *Pellitus*. p. 401. l. ult. *Princes, I have*.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google